MEDIEVAL LATIN SERIES · VOLUME 84

The Journey Through Wales

Gerald of Wales

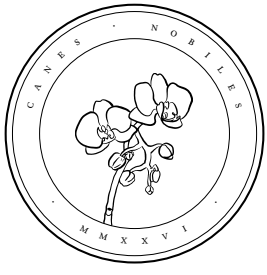
Itinerarium Kambriæ
Descriptio Kambriæ

The Journey Through Wales
With the Description of Wales

---

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation

preserving the original word order

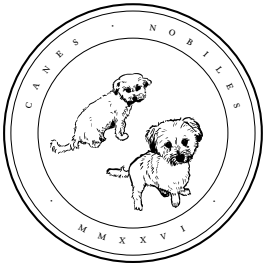


CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hench
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles
canesnobiles.com

The source text is in the public domain



Volume 84 of the Canes Nobiles Medieval Latin interlinear texts

The Medieval Latin text follows James F. Dimock's
text (Giraldi Cambrensis Opera VI, London, 1868)

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hench
Artwork by Esther Steves

CONTENTS

ITINERARIUM KAMBRIÆ

The First Preface, to Stephen Langton 9
The Second Preface: Hereford and Radnor 20
Relics and the Lords of Brecknock 33
Brecknock and Its Lake 50
Llanthony and the Monks' Wealth 62
Abergavenny 80
Usk and Caerleon 92
Newport and Cardiff 105
Llandaff, Margam, and the Dogs 115
Elidyr and the Little People 123
Kidwelly, Carmarthen, and Whitland 135
Haverford and the Flemings 142
Pembroke, Manorbier, and Newgale 154
Book Two · St Davids 174

ITINERARIUM KAMBRIÆ

(continued)

Cemais and Cardigan 190
The Teifi and Its Beavers 197
Strata Florida, Llanbadarn, and Merioneth 206
Nefyn, Bardsey, and Bangor 214
Anglesey 219
Dinas Emrys, Snowdon, and Coleshill 231
The Dee, Chester, Oswestry, and Shrewsbury 242
Wenlock, Hereford, and Baldwin 252

DESCRIPTIO KAMBRIÆ

The First Preface 265
The Second Preface 270
The Size and Divisions of Wales 277
The Rivers of Wales 285
Wales, Its Names, and Its Arms 297
Supper, Hospitality, Grooming, and Wit 306
Singing, Jests, and Boldness 317
On Prophecy 326
Lineage, Living, and Faith 336
Book Two · Inconstancy, Perjury, and Flight 344
Land, Greed, Incest, and Hope 354
How Wales May Be Conquered 366
How Wales May Be Governed and May Resist 375

GERALD OF WALES

Itinerarium Kambriæ

The Journey Through Wales

Stephano Cantuariensi archiepiscopo. In odoporion Giraldi præfatio prima

THE FIRST PREFACE, TO STEPHEN LANGTON

As men's characters differ, so do their pursuits: soldiers love arms, advocates the courts, others wealth, and few now honor poets. Marius' swords have rusted while Virgil's fame lives, and Jerome outshines Croesus' gold, for writings outlast death. The court, like logic, is easy to enter and hard to leave, and like the dice it falls on worthy and unworthy alike. Gerald writes for posterity: he gave his Topography *to Henry II and his* Prophetic History *to Richard, now sends Stephen this account of Wales in two parts, and promises him a book on the instruction of a prince, praising Stephen, who rewards merit, not blood.*

Sicut variis rerum motibus et mutationibus tempora
as by-various of-things motions and changes the-times
moventur, sic diversis morum curriculis temporalium hominum
are-moved so by-different of-manners courses of-temporal men
animi trahuntur. Satyricus clamat;
the-minds are-drawn the-Satirist cries

"Mille hominum species, et rerum discolor usus:
"A-thousand of-men kinds, and of-things varied the-use:
Velle suum cuique est, nec voto vivitur uno."
To-will its-own to-each is, nor by-wish is-lived one."

Et illud comicum;
and that comic-saying

"Quot capita, tot sententiæ: suus cuique mos"
"As-many heads, so-many opinions: its-own to-each the-custom"

est. Unde et quoniam dispares mores disparia studia sequuntur,
is whence also since unequal manners unequal studies follow
armata militia tirones exultant, togata vero causarum patroni
in-armed warfare recruits exult in-gowned however of-cases the-advocates
delectantur: alii cumulandis divitiis anxie suspirant, et
delight others for-heaping riches anxiously sigh and
summum bonum opulentiam putant: hi Galienum approbant,
the-highest good opulence think these Galen approve
illi Justinianum amplectuntur: honorum cupidi curiam
those Justinian embrace of-honors greedy the-court
sequuntur, et rediviva fame cruciatos graviter sauciat nec
follow and with-reviving hunger the-tormented gravely wounds nor
satiat ambitio: liberalibus artibus nonnulli, sed hodie pauci et
satisfies ambition to-the-liberal arts some but today few and
parvi indulgent; inter quos et Logices alumnos admiramur,
small devote-themselves among whom also of-Logic the-pupils we-wonder-at
qui cum aliquantulum provecti fuerint, tanta studii sui
who when somewhat advanced they-shall-have-been with-so-great of-study their
voluptate trahuntur, ut in illis Dialecticæ gyris atque mæandris
pleasure are-drawn that in those of-Dialectic circles and meanders
plerosque videamus, tanquam ad Sireneos scopulos, consenescere.
very-many we-see as-if at the-Sirens' rocks to-grow-old
Sed inter tot hominum species, ubi divini poetæ; ubi
but among so-many of-men kinds where the-divine poets where
nobiles morum assertores; ubi linguæ Latinæ moderatores?
the-noble of-morals asserters where of-the-tongue Latin the-governors
Quis hodie scriptis, sive poeticis seu historicis, literatam
who today in-writings whether poetic or historical lettered
adornat eloquentiam? Quis, inquam, nostri temporis, vel
adorns eloquence who I-say of-our time either
mores astruit, vel inclite gesta perpetuis literarum
the-manners builds or gloriously done-things in-perpetual of-letters

vinculis æternitati ascribit? Adeo literarum honor, in summis
bonds to-eternity ascribes so-much of-letters the-honor in the-highest
olim gradibus constitutus, quia
once steps placed because

"Sic omnia fato
"So all-things by-fate
In pejus ruere, et retro sublapsa referri,"
Into the-worse to-rush, and back slipped to-be-borne,"

jam proclivis in ruinam, ad ima devolvi videtur, ut earum
now inclined to ruin to the-depths to-be-rolled seems that of-them
addicti studiis non solum hodie non imitabiles, non venerabiles,
devoted to-studies not only today not imitable not venerable
verum etiam odibiles reperiantur. "Felices quippe," ut ait Fabius,
but also hateful be-found happy indeed as says Fabius
"essent artes, si de illis soli artifices judicarent." "Naturaliter
would-be the-arts if about them alone the-craftsmen judged naturally
enim," ut ait Sydonius, "fixum est radicatumque pectoribus
for as says Sidonius fixed it-is and-rooted in-breasts
humanis, ut qui ignorant artes contemnant artifices."
human that those-who know-not the-arts despise the-craftsmen
Ceterum, ut ad priora revertamur, quæ mundo
but that to the-former-things we-may-return which to-the-world
plus contulerint, quæso, an arma Mariana, an carmina
more have-contributed I-ask whether the-arms of-Marius or the-songs
Maroniana? Sed olim Marii gladios rubigo consumpsit:
of-Maro but once of-Marius the-swords rust consumed
qui vero scripsit Eneida, perpetua Maronis extat gloria.
he-who however wrote the-Aeneid perpetual of-Maro stands the-glory

Et tamen, quanquam literatis sub principibus literæ tunc
and nevertheless although lettered under princes letters then
in honore fuissent, ab ipso scriptum invenies;
in honor had-been by him-himself written you-will-find

"Tantum
"So-much
Carmina nostra valent, arma inter martia, quantum
Songs our avail, arms among martial, as-much-as
Caonias dicunt aquila veniente columbas."
Chaonian they-say with-the-eagle coming doves."

Ad hæc etiam utra fecundior ac fructuosior extiterit
to these-things also which more-fruitful and more-profitable has-been
hæsitas, opera Ieronimi, an opulentia Cresi? Sed ubi
do-you-hesitate the-works of-Jerome or the-wealth of-Croesus but where
hodie Cresi vel nitet argentum, vel rutilat aurum, ubi
today of-Croesus either shines the-silver or glows the-gold where
cœnobitæ pauperis orbem et irradiat studium, et illustrat
of-the-monk poor the-world both illumines the-study and illustrates
exemplum? Et tamen, cum tantus fuisset, Romæ per
the-example and nevertheless though so-great he-had-been at-Rome through
invidiam contumelias et verbera passus, ac demum trans
envy insults and blows having-suffered and at-last across
mare pulsus, Bethleemiticam studio suo solitudinem elegit.
the-sea driven the-Bethlehem for-study his solitude he-chose
Inter hæc ergo, quæ contulimus, hoc distare potest;
among these-things therefore which we-have-compared this to-differ can
quod aurum et arma vitam hanc fulcire videntur, post
that gold and arms life this to-prop seem after
mortem nil valitura; verum e diverso scripta parum
death nothing about-to-avail but on the-contrary writings little

in vita propter invidiam prosunt, perpetuum a morte
in life on-account-of envy profit a-perpetual from death
sortita valorem. Sicut igitur testamenti, sic et scripti
having-obtained value as therefore of-a-testament so also of-a-writing
auctoritas mortis atramento confirmatur; juxta illud poetæ,
the-authority of-death by-the-ink is-confirmed according-to that of-the-poet

"Pascitur in vivis livor, post fata quiescit;
"Feeds on the-living envy, after fates it-rests;
Cum suus ex merito quemque tuetur honor;"
When its-own from merit each-one protects honor;"

et illud;
and that

"Denique si quis adhuc prætendit nubila livor
"At-last if anyone still holds-before clouds envy
Occidet, et meriti post me referentur honores."
It-will-fall, and of-merit after me will-be-paid honors."

Præterea qui facultates, qui sanitates suis artificiis
moreover those-who means who healths by-their arts
vel conferre vel conservare nituntur, dum alienis tantum
either to-confer or to-preserve strive while with-others' only
scaturiunt verbis, propriis parum gloriantur inventis.
they-teem words in-their-own little they-glory inventions
Compositores quippe tam ornati sermonis, quo tam varii
the-composers indeed of-so ornate speech by-which so various
casus in tanto juris corpore tam eleganti stilo complectuntur,
cases in so-great of-law a-body with-so elegant style are-embraced
perpetuis efferendi præconiis extant. Auctores siquidem
with-perpetual to-be-extolled praises stand the-authors indeed

elegantium verborum, non auditores tantum, repertores non
of-elegant words not the-hearers only the-finders not
recitatores, dixerim laude dignissimos.
the-reciters I-would-say of-praise most-worthy
Curiam autem, et Logicam, tam in alliciendo, quam in
the-court however and Logic as-much in alluring as in
vix deserendo persimiles invenies. Dialecticæ tamen notitiam,
scarcely deserting very-like you-will-find of-Dialectic however the-knowledge
tanquam aliarum omnium tam scientiarum quam artium
as-if of-other all as-much sciences as arts
acumen, cum moderamine moræ inculpatæ, certum est esse
the-sharpening with moderation of-delay blameless certain it-is to-be
perutilem: curiam vero, nisi blandis solum palponibus et
very-useful the-court however except for-flattering only fawners and
ambitiosis, non necessariam. Nempe si quæstum facis in
the-ambitious not necessary surely if gain you-make at
curia, te tanto fortius allicit et annectit ambitio, non
court you so-much more-strongly allures and attaches ambition not
missura cutem, non curiam, nisi plena. Sin autem labor
about-to-let-go the-skin not the-court unless full if however the-labor
in damno est, adhuc tamen annum apponis, et iterum
at loss is still nevertheless a-year you-add and again
annum anno, et sic in infinitum, ne una cum censu
a-year to-a-year and so into the-infinite lest together with the-wealth
tempora perdideris, jacturam temporis, quæ irreparabilis est
the-times you-shall-have-lost the-loss of-time which irreparable is

et omnium major, incurris. Curiam igitur et aleam quadam
and of-all greatest you-incur the-court therefore and the-dice by-a-certain
videas proprietate conformes. Quoniam, ut ait poeta,
you-may-see property alike since as says the-poet

"Sic ne perdiderit, non cessat perdere lusor,
"So lest he-should-have-lost, not ceases to-lose the-player,
Dum revocat cupidas alea blanda manus."
While recalls the-greedy the-dice coaxing hands."

Levi namque mutatione haud dissimiliter dicas;
by-slight for change not unlike you-may-say

"Sic ne perdiderit, non cessat perdere lusus,
"So lest he-should-have-lost, not ceases to-lose the-gamester,
Dum revocat cupidas curia blanda manus."
While recalls the-greedy the-court coaxing hands."

Hoc etiam adjiciendum puto, quod sicut aleæ, sic et
this also to-be-added I-think that as of-the-dice so also
curiæ casus, delectu carens, dignis et indignis
of-the-court the-chance discrimination lacking to-the-worthy and to-the-unworthy
æque respondet.
equally answers

Inter tot igitur hominum species, quoniam
among so-many therefore of-men kinds since

"Trahit sua quemque voluptas,"
"Draws its-own each-one pleasure,"

et quoniam
and since

"Variis vexantur pectora votis,"
"By-various are-vexed breasts wishes,"

me quidem scribendi studium eligere posteritatis cura coegit.
me indeed of-writing the-study to-choose of-posterity the-care compelled
Et quia momentanea et fluxa est præsens hæc vita, juvat
and because momentary and fleeting is present this life it-pleases
saltem in futuro memoria vivere, et perpetuis famæ titulis
at-least in the-future in-memory to-live and by-perpetual of-fame titles
laudis honore celebrari. Egregiæ mentis indicium
of-praise with-the-honor to-be-celebrated of-a-remarkable mind a-sign
est, ad illud emittendum elaborare, quo sibi invidiam
it-is for that to-be-sent-forth to-labor by-which for-oneself envy
in vita, gloriam post fata comparaverit. Perpetuum est
in life glory after death one-may-gain perpetual is
itaque quod auctores, quodque poetæ principaliter affectant;
therefore what authors and-what poets principally aim-at

temporale commodum, si forte accesserit, non recusantes.
temporal advantage if perhaps it-shall-have-come not refusing
Quoniam, ut ait poeta,
since as says the-poet

"Quis locus ingenio est, nisi cum se carmine solo
"What place for-genius is, unless when themselves with-song alone
Vexant, et dominis Cyrræ Nisæque feruntur
Vex, and by-the-lords of-Cirrha and-of-Nysa are-borne
Pectora nostra, duas non admittentia curas?"
Breasts our, two not admitting cares?"

Sed quia principibus parum literatis et multum occupatis,
but because for-princes little lettered and much occupied
Hibernicam Anglorum regi Henrico secundo Topographiam,
the-Irish of-the-English to-the-king Henry second Topography
ejusdemque filio, et utinam vitiorum non succedaneo,
and-to-his son and would-that of-vices not successor
Pictavensium comiti Ricardo Vaticinalem Historiam,
of-the-Poitevins to-the-count Richard the-Prophetic History
vacuo quondam quoad accessorium illud et infructuoso
with-empty once as-to accessory that and fruitless
labore peregi; tibi, vir inclite, Stephane Cantuariensis
labor I-have-completed to-you man renowned Stephen of-Canterbury
archiepiscope, quem religio pariter et literatura commendant,
archbishop whom religion equally and learning commend
laborem nostrum per horridos Kambriæ fines non
the-labor our through the-rough of-Wales bounds not
illaudabilem, in duabus particulis scholastico stilo tam
unpraiseworthy in two little-parts in-scholastic style as-much
digerere quam destinare curavi. Virtus enimvero quia
to-arrange as to-destine I-have-taken-care virtue for-indeed because

sese diligit, aspernaturque contraria, quæcunque in hoc libello
itself loves and-spurns contraries whatever-things in this little-book
decessoris vestri penultimi, viri venerabilis et metropolitani
of-predecessor your next-to-last a-man venerable and metropolitan
antistitis, veris laudum titulis ascripta repereris, te non
prelate to-true of-praises titles ascribed you-shall-have-found you with-no
minori affectu quam si propria fuissent credimus amplexurum.
lesser affection than if your-own they-had-been we-believe about-to-embrace
Quibus expletis, Deo duce, vitaque comite, libellum tibi
which completed with-God leading and-life as-companion a-little-book to-you
De Principis Instructione promitto; si, sopitis interdum
On of-the-Prince the-Instruction I-promise if with-lulled sometimes
tam orationum instantiis quam occupationum curis, lectioni
as-much of-prayers the-urgencies as of-business the-cares to-reading
quandoque vacare potueris, munus acceptum. Hos
at-some-time to-attend you-shall-have-been-able a-gift accepted these
igitur et alios nostræ diligentiæ fructus, tuæ degustandos
therefore and others of-our diligence fruits for-your to-be-tasted
discretioni, suis singulos temporibus destinare proposui,
discretion in-their-own each times to-destine I-have-proposed
ut te nostra si forte movere nequeunt opera, moveant
that you our if perhaps to-move cannot works may-move
vel opuscula; moveant, inquam, et tam gratiam reddant,
at-least little-works may-move I-say and as-much favor render
quam gratum efficiant.
as favorable make
Qui carnali minime motus affectu, in largiendis dextra
who by-carnal not-at-all moved affection in bestowing with-the-right-hand
munifica quibus excelles beneficiis, non sanguinem, non
munificent with-which you-will-excel benefits not blood not
sobolem, sed literas potius et merita pensas: quem in
offspring but letters rather and merits weigh whom in

tanta tam continua regni sacerdotiique disceptatione, paucis
so-great so continuous of-kingdom and-of-priesthood dispute by-few
comitatum, Anglicana ecclesia firmum invenit ac fidelem: in
accompanied the-English church firm found and faithful on
quem hodie fere solum et fideliter electum, illa episcopalis
whom today almost alone and faithfully chosen that episcopal
viri canonica descriptio cadere videretur et concordare.
of-a-man canonical description to-fall seemed and to-agree
Non itaque pileum sustinendo, non pulvillum supponendo, non
not therefore the-cap holding not the-cushion placing-under not
plumam extrahendo, non pulverem, etsi nullus fuerit,
the-feather drawing-out not the-dust even-if none there-shall-have-been
excutiendo, sed inter alios palpones tibi scribendo placere
shaking-off but among other fawners to-you by-writing to-please
constitui: tibi, inquam, vir præcluis, vir insignis, vir
I-have-decided to-you I-say man most-renowned man distinguished man
virorum perpaucorum; vir in quem quicquid fere in terris
of-men very-few a-man on whom whatever almost on earth
antistitem decet, incomparabili gratia tam industria quam
a-prelate befits with-incomparable grace as-much industry as
natura congessit. Et si forte nec tibi in hunc modum
nature has-heaped and if perhaps not-even to-you in this manner
placere prævaleam, tum quia lectionis horam tam oratio
to-please I-may-prevail both because of-reading the-hour as-much prayer
suffocat quam occupatio, tum etiam quia literarum olim
stifles as business and also because of-letters once
honor evanuit; saltem, si quandoque resurgat, posteritati.
the-honor has-vanished at-least if sometime it-rise-again to-posterity

Incipit itinerarium Giraldi Kambrensis; et laboriosa Cantuariensis archiepiscopi Baldewini per Walliam legatio. Præfatio secunda

THE SECOND PREFACE: HEREFORD AND RADNOR

Gerald records Archbishop Baldwin's preaching of the cross through Wales. In 1188, the year Saladin took Jerusalem, Baldwin came by Hereford to Radnor, where the prince Rhys met him; Gerald took the cross first, Rhys was turned from it by his wife, and canons of St Davids urged him in vain to bar the archbishop from their see. A lord of Radnor who kept hounds in a church went blind, a man who shot an antlered hind lost an eye, and the staff of St Cyricius heals. The handbell Bangu burned the castle that kept it, and two pools in Elfael burst the night Henry I died.

Quoniam ea, quæ laudabili devotione gesta noscuntur,
since those-things which with-praiseworthy devotion done are-known
debitis non indigne præconiis efferuntur; animus quoque
with-due not unworthily praises are-extolled the-mind also
quia si remittitur amittitur, et desidiæ torpor vires
because if it-is-loosened it-is-lost and of-idleness the-torpor the-powers
enervat ingenii; ferrum nempe situ rubiginem ducit,
enervates of-genius iron truly by-disuse rust draws

"Et capiunt vitium, ni moveantur aquæ;"
"And take-on fault, unless be-moved the-waters;"

ne stilum otiosum ærugo consumat, devotam Cantuariensis
lest the-pen idle rust consume the-devout of-Canterbury
archiepiscopi Baldewini per Kambriæ fines legationem
archbishop Baldwin through of-Wales the-bounds legation
literarum munimentis dignum duxi commendare. Loca
of-letters by-the-defenses worthy I-thought to-commend the-places
igitur invia per quæ transivimus, et tam fontium
therefore pathless through which we-passed and as-much of-springs

quam torrentum flumina nominatim expressa, verba faceta,
as of-torrents the-streams by-name expressed words witty
viæque labores et casus varios, notabiles quoque tam
and-of-the-way the-labors and the-chances various notable also as-much
moderni temporis quam antiqui partium illarum eventus,
of-modern time as of-ancient of-parts those events
patriæ naturam, naturæque mirandos interdum excursus,
of-the-country the-nature and-of-nature the-wonderful sometimes excursions
patriæ quoque descriptionem, hoc opusculo quasi speculo
of-the-country also the-description in-this little-work as-if in-a-mirror
quodam dilucido, per te, vir inclite, Stephane Cantuariensis
a-certain clear through you man renowned Stephen of-Canterbury
archiepiscope, posteritati præsentavi; ne vel studium otio
archbishop to-posterity I-have-presented lest either study by-leisure
depereat, vel laus silentio delitescat.
perish or praise in-silence lie-hidden
De transitu per Herefordiam, et Radenouram; cum
about the-passage through Hereford and Radnor with
notabilibus suis.
notable-things its
Anno igitur ab Incarnatione Domini millesimo centesimo
in-the-year therefore from the-Incarnation of-the-Lord thousandth hundredth
octogesimo octavo, apostolatus apicem regente Urbano
eightieth eighth of-the-apostolate the-summit with-ruling Urban
tertio, imperante Romæ Alemannorum rege Frederico,
third with-ruling at-Rome of-the-Germans with-king Frederick
Constantinopolis Ysaakio, regnante in Francia Philippo
of-Constantinople with-Isaac reigning in France with-Philip
Ludovici filio, in Anglia Henrico secundo, in Sicilia Willelmo,
of-Louis son in England with-Henry second in Sicily with-William
in Ungaria rege Bela, in Palestina Gwidone, anno scilicet
in Hungary with-king Bela in Palestine with-Guy in-the-year namely

quo Saladinus, tam Egyptiorum quam Damascenorum
in-which Saladin as-much of-the-Egyptians as of-the-Damascenes
princeps, occulto Dei judicio sed nunquam injusto, publico
prince by-hidden of-God judgment but never unjust in-public
belli certamine victoria potitus, Ierosolimorum regnum
of-war combat with-victory gained of-the-Jerusalemites the-kingdom
obtinuit, vir venerabilis, et tam literatura quam religione
obtained a-man venerable and as-much in-learning as in-religion
conspicuus, Cantuariorum archipræsul Baldewinus, in
conspicuous of-the-Canterbury-men archprelate Baldwin in
salutiferæ crucis obsequium ab Anglia in Walliam tendens,
of-the-saving cross the-service from England into Wales heading
apud Herefordiæ fines Kambriam intravit.
at of-Hereford the-bounds Wales entered
Accedens itaque Radenouram, circa jejunii caput, viro
approaching therefore Radnor about of-the-fast the-head with-the-man
magnifico Ranulfo Glanvillensi, præcipuo regis tunc
magnificent Ranulf of-Glanville chief of-the-king then
consiliario, regnique totius justitiario, eo usque comitatus,
counselor and-of-the-kingdom whole justiciar thus far accompanied
Resum Griffini filium, australis Kambriæ principem, cum
Rhys of-Gruffydd son of-southern Wales prince with
aliis partium illarum viris nobilibus ibidem obvios habuit.
other of-parts those men noble there meeting he-had
Ubi sermone statim super negotio crucis ab archipræsule
where with-a-sermon at-once upon the-business of-the-cross by the-archprelate
publice facto, et per interpretem Walensibus exposito,
publicly made and through an-interpreter to-the-Welsh expounded
primus omnium, ad importunam quæ præcesserat regis
first of-all at the-importunate which had-preceded of-the-king
instantiam, et pollicitis plenam tam archiepiscopi quam
urgency and with-promises full as-much of-the-archbishop as

justitiarii toties ex parte regis commonitionem, qui
of-the-justiciar so-often on behalf of-the-king admonition he-who
scripsit hæc, aliis exemplum præbens, se primus erexit,
wrote these-things to-others an-example offering himself first raised
et ad validissimam quoque omnium inductionem, præmissis
and to the-most-powerful also of-all persuasion with-the-preceding
quidem occasionaliter adjutam, post crebras et anxias secum
indeed occasionally helped after frequent and anxious with-himself
disputationes, ob temporis demum injuriam et crucis
disputations on-account-of of-the-time at-last the-injury and of-the-cross
Christi contumeliam, propriæ rationis persuasione, ad pedes
of-Christ the-insult by-own of-reason persuasion at the-feet
viri sancti provolutus crucis signaculum devote suscepit.
of-the-man holy thrown-forward of-the-cross the-badge devoutly took
Quem illico Petrus Menevensis episcopus, et Cluniacensis
whom at-once Peter of-St-Davids bishop and of-Cluny
monachus, tam imitatus est quam secutus. Deinde Eneas
monk as-much imitated has as followed then Einion
Eneæ Claudii filius, Elevemiæ princeps, cum aliis multis.
of-Einion Clud son of-Elfael prince with others many
Qui statim exsurgens, et coram Reso cujus filiam uxorem
who at-once rising and before Rhys whose daughter as-wife
habebat assistens, “Vestra, mi pater,” inquit, “et domine,
he-had standing your my father he-says and lord
licentia, summi patris injuriam vindicare depropero.” Resus
with-leave of-the-highest father the-injury to-avenge I-hasten Rhys
autem cum certissimo sanctæ peregrinationis proposito, quam
however with most-certain of-holy pilgrimage purpose as
cito archiepiscopus terram suam intraverit, reversus est.
soon the-archbishop land his should-have-entered returned has
Adeo ut per quindecim fere dies de clitellis et sagmariis,
so that through fifteen almost days about saddlebags and packhorses

de sumptibus perquirendis et clientibus, ceterisque tanto
about expenses to-be-sought-out and retainers and-the-rest for-so-great
itineri necessariis, cum multa solicitudine disposuisset, donec
a-journey necessary with much solicitude he-had-arranged until
uxor ejus, et communi patriæ vitio in quarto gradu
the-wife his and by-common of-the-country vice in the-fourth degree
cognata, Gwendoloena scilicet Maidoci Powisensis filia,
kinswoman Gwenllian namely of-Madog of-Powys daughter
ipsum a nobili proposito, peccatis exigentibus, muliebriter
him from noble purpose with-sins demanding womanishly
instans penitus avertit. Quoniam, ut ait Salomon, "Cor
urging wholly turned-aside since as says Solomon the-heart
hominis disponit viam suam, sed Domini est dirigere gressus
of-man disposes way his but of-the-Lord it-is to-direct the-steps
ejus." In ipso vero discessu Resi, cum super his
his in the-very however departure of-Rhys when about these-things
quæ audierat suos conveniret, juvenis quidam egregius de
which he-had-heard his-men he-consulted a-youth certain excellent of
familia ipsius, cui nomen Griffinus, qui et postea crucem
household his to-whom the-name Gruffydd who also afterward the-cross
suscepit, respondisse memoratur; "Quis," inquam, "animi virilis
took to-have-answered is-recorded who I-say of-mind manly
peregrinationis hujus iter abhorreat, cum inter universa
of-pilgrimage this the-journey would-shrink-from since among all
quæ excogitari poterunt ejus incommoda, nihil incommodius
which to-be-devised will-be-able its discomforts nothing more-discomforting
cuiquam, nihil deterius accidere possit quam redire?"
to-anyone nothing worse befall can than to-return
Accesserunt autem ad Resum in reditu suo quidam canonici
approached however to Rhys on return his certain canons
Menevenses zelo ecclesiæ suæ, majores curiæ quos
of-St-Davids with-zeal of-church their the-greater-men of-the-court whom

sibi allexerant complices habentes et fautores: qui
to-themselves they-had-enticed accomplices having and abettors who
ei suggerere modis omnibus nitebantur, ut archiepiscopum
to-him to-suggest by-means all strove that the-archbishop
Cantuariensem, quoniam inauditum hoc hactenus fuerat,
of-Canterbury since unheard-of this hitherto it-had-been
ad penitiores Walliarum partes, præcipue sedem Menevensem
to the-inner of-Wales parts especially the-see of-St-Davids
quæ caput est Walliæ, accedere nullatenus sustineret; dicentes
which the-head is of-Wales to-approach by-no-means he-should-allow saying
et asserentes eo ipso, si processerit, præjudicium
and asserting by-that itself if he-shall-have-proceeded prejudice
magnum et gravamen in posterum antiquæ dignitati suæ
great and burden for the-future to-ancient dignity their
recuperandæ, et metropolitanæ sedis honori, posse procul
to-be-recovered and of-the-metropolitan see to-the-honor could far-from
dubio provenire. Hæc, inquam, principi toto conamine
doubt to-come these-things I-say to-the-prince with-whole effort
suadentes, ob innatam tamen ejusdem mansuetudinem
urging on-account-of the-inborn however his gentleness
et liberalitatem, ne confusionem viro sancto repulsa
and liberality lest confusion for-the-man holy the-rebuff
generaret, persuadere non valebant.
should-beget to-persuade not they-could
In crastino vero, mane, post missæ celebrationem, et
on the-morrow however in-the-morning after of-mass the-celebration and
Ranulfi Glanvillensis in Angliam reversionem, cum apud
of-Ranulf of-Glanville into England the-return when to
castrum Crukeri, quod quasi duobus a Radenoura passuum
the-castle of-Cruker which about two from Radnor of-paces
millibus distat, proficisceremur, juvenis quidam robustus
thousands is-distant we-were-setting-out a-youth certain robust

et validus, cui nomen Hector, ab archiepiscopo super
and strong to-whom the-name Hector by the-archbishop about
crucis susceptione conventus; “Si haberem,” inquit, “unde
of-the-cross the-taking addressed if I-had he-says whence
uno die in via comederem, et altero jejunarem,
on-one day on the-way I-might-eat and on-the-second fast
monitis acquiescerem.” Die tamen sequente idem
to-the-admonitions I-would-assent on-the-day however following the-same
ab archiepiscopo crucem suscepit. Circa vesperam vero venit
from the-archbishop the-cross took toward evening however came
Mailgo Cadwallani filius, princeps Maileniæ; qui statim, ad
Maelgwn of-Cadwallon son prince of-Maelienydd who at-once at
brevem archiepiscopi monitionem sed efficacem, non absque
the-brief of-the-archbishop admonition but effective not without
suorum lacrimis et luctu, crucis signaculo est insignitus.
of-his-men tears and mourning of-the-cross with-the-badge was marked
Hic autem quasi præ foribus mihi notandum occurrit, quod
here however as-if before the-doors to-me to-be-noted occurs that
dominatori castri ejusdem de Radenoura tempore Anglorum
to-the-lord of-the-castle same of Radnor in-the-time of-the-English
regis Henrici primi contigit in terra de Bueld, non procul
of-king Henry first it-happened in the-land of Builth not far
abhinc distante, et eidem honori a primo conquestu
hence distant and to-the-same honor from the-first conquest
adjacente. Cum enim ecclesiam Sancti Avani, quæ Britannice
adjoining when for the-church of-Saint Afan which in-British
Lanavan dicitur, intrasset, et minus caute in eadem cum
Llanafan is-called he-had-entered and less cautiously in it with
canibus venatoriis atque irreverenter pernoctasset, venantium
dogs hunting and irreverently had-spent-the-night of-hunters
more summo diluculo surgens, canes omnes invenit
in-the-manner at-highest dawn rising the-dogs all he-found

rabie percussos; ipse quoque cæcus effectus, nihil
with-madness struck he-himself also blind made nothing
omnino videns, ad manum extractus est. Et cum diu postea
at-all seeing by hand drawn-out he-was and when for-long afterward
vivendo tenebrosam semper et tædiosam vitam duxisset,
by-living a-dark always and wearisome life he-had-led
demum se Ierosolimam duci faciens, ne et interior ei
at-last himself to-Jerusalem to-be-led causing lest also the-inner for-him
lucerna similiter extingueretur feliciter procuravit. Cum aliis
lamp likewise be-extinguished happily be-procured with others
igitur armatus ibidem, et ad bellicum conflictum vice
therefore armed there and to warlike conflict on-occasion
quadam a suis perductus, forti residens equo, animosum
a-certain by his-men led on-a-strong sitting horse a-spirited
inter primos in hostes fidei impetum fecit; ubi et
among the-first against the-enemies of-the-faith charge made where also
statim ferro confossus diem cum honore clausit extremum.
at-once by-the-sword pierced the-day with honor he-closed last
In provincia quoque de Warthrenniaun, quæ paucis abhinc
in the-province also of Gwrthrynion which a-few hence
stadiis distat, his nostris diebus res accidit non indigna
furlongs is-distant in-these our days a-thing happened not unworthy
memoratu. Dominator enimvero loci ejusdem, Eneas scilicet
of-remembrance the-lord for-indeed of-place same Einion namely
filius Resi, cum die quodam excire saltibus feras
son of-Rhys when on-day a-certain to-rouse from-the-glades the-beasts
intenderet, puta qui venationis studio valde addictus
he-intended as-being who of-hunting to-the-study very given
fuerat, quidam ex suis arcum tenens cervam exsilientem
had-been a-certain-one of his-men a-bow holding a-hind leaping-out
sagitta perforavit. Quæ quidem, contra sexus illius
with-an-arrow pierced which indeed against of-sex that

naturam, inventa est duodecim ramorum cornua præferens,
the-nature found was of-twelve tines antlers displaying
et præterea tam in cauda quam alibi plusquam cervi
and moreover as-much in the-tail as elsewhere more-than of-a-stag
pinguedinem habens. Unde et ob tanti prodigii
fatness having whence also on-account-of of-so-great prodigy
novitatem, Anglorum regi Henrico secundo monstri
the-novelty of-the-English to-the-king Henry second of-monster
ejusdem caput et cornua sunt destinata. Illud etiam hoc
same the-head and antlers were sent that also this
in casu magis stupore dignum occurrit, quod vir ille,
in case more of-wonder worthy occurs that man that
qui feram præscriptam sagittavit, mirum quo fato quove
who the-beast aforesaid shot wonderful by-what fate or-by-what
infortunio, subita passione percussus, dextrum illico lumen
misfortune by-sudden affliction struck the-right at-once eye
amisit; et eadem hora paralitico morbo correptus, usque
he-lost and in-the-same hour by-paralytic disease seized up-to
ad mortem inutilis omnino et imbecillis permansit.
to death useless wholly and feeble he-remained
In hac eadem provincia de Warthrenniaun, in ecclesia videlicet
in this same province of Gwrthrynion in the-church namely
Sancti Germani, baculus qui Sancti Cyricii dicitur invenitur,
of-Saint Germanus the-staff which of-Saint Cyricius is-called is-found
superius in crucis modum paulisper utrinque protensus, auro
at-the-top in of-a-cross the-manner a-little on-both-sides extended with-gold
et argento undique contectus. Qui quanquam virtuosissimus
and silver everywhere covered which although most-powerful
in omni negotio comprobetur, longe plus tamen ad
in every business it-be-proved far more however for
glandiculas, gibbosasque strumas, quæ in humanis corporibus
glands and-humped swellings which in human bodies

excrescere solent, evacuandas penitus et delendas, speciali
to-grow are-wont to-be-emptied wholly and to-be-destroyed by-a-special
quadam virtute præpollet; adeo quidem ut omnes passim,
certain power is-strong so-much indeed that all everywhere
qui hujuscemodi vexantur incommodis, si baculum devote
who of-this-kind are-vexed with-discomforts if the-staff devoutly
cum unius denarii oblatione petierint, optatam recipiant
with of-one penny the-offering shall-have-sought the-longed-for receive
sanitatem. Contigit autem his nostris diebus, strumosum
health it-happened however in-these our days a-scrofulous
quemdam solum obolum baculo præsentasse; cui per
certain-man only a-halfpenny to-the-staff to-have-presented for-whom through
medium illico residens strumosus ille tumor evanuit. Et post
the-middle at-once settling scrofulous that swelling vanished and after
pusillum, postquam alterius oboli relatione debita est oblatio
a-little after of-the-other halfpenny by-the-return due was the-offering
redintegrata, et integra quoque statim curatio est subsecuta.
restored and whole also at-once the-cure was followed
Item alius ad baculum accedens, cum certa denarii promissione,
likewise another to the-staff approaching with certain of-a-penny promise
curatus est: qui tamen die statuto promissa non complens,
cured was who however on-the-day appointed the-promises not fulfilling
pristinum statim incommodum cum confusione recepit: sed
the-former at-once discomfort with confusion received but
ut delicti veniam facilius impetraret, cum trium denariorum
that of-the-fault pardon more-easily he-might-obtain with of-three pennies
oblatione, non absque timore magno et devotione, beneficium
the-offering not without fear great and devotion the-benefit
triplicasset, continuo stabilis curationis gaudia recuperavit.
he-had-tripled immediately of-stable cure the-joys he-recovered

Apud Elvail autem, in ecclesia de Glascum, est campana
at Elfael moreover in the-church of Glasgwm is a-bell
bajula virtuosissima, quam proprio vocabulo Bangu vocant,
portable most-powerful which by-its-own name Bangu they-call
quæ et Sancti David fuisse perhibetur. Hanc mulier
which also of-Saint David to-have-been is-reported this a-woman
quædam viro suo, qui in castello de Raidergoe juxta
certain to-husband her who in the-castle of Rhaiadr-gwy near
Warthrenniaun, quod Resus filius Griffini nostris diebus
Gwrthrynion which Rhys son of-Gruffydd in-our days
construxerat, in vinculis tenebatur, ut eum vel sic liberaret,
had-built in chains was-held that him even so she-might-free
clam allatam superposuit. Sed quoniam castellani non solum
secretly brought placed-on but since the-castellans not only
ob hoc virum non liberarunt, verum etiam campanam
on-account-of this the-husband not freed but also the-bell
ipsam violenter captivam quoque tenuerunt, nocte eadem,
itself violently captive also held on-the-night same
ultione divina, totum oppidum, præter parietem unum ubi
by-vengeance divine the-whole town except wall one where
campana pendebat, igne proprio consumptum est.
the-bell hung by-fire own consumed was
Apud Luel quoque, partibus de Brecheniauc, nostro similiter
at Llywel also in-the-parts of Brecknock in-our likewise
tempore contigit, ecclesia ejusdem loci hostiliter combusta,
time it-happened with-the-church of-the-same place hostilely burned
omnia prorsus intus et extra, præter pixidem unam in qua
all-things wholly within and without except pyx one in which
hostia consecrata reposita fuerat, consumpta fuisse.
the-host consecrated laid-away had-been consumed to-have-been

Contigit autem in Elvemiæ provincia, quam solum ab Haia
it-happened moreover in of-Elfael the-province which only from Hay
flumen Waiense disterminat, duo stagna non modica, nocte
the-river Wye divides two pools not small on-the-night
quam Anglorum rex Henricus primus duxit extremam, a
which of-the-English king Henry first led last from
claustris, alteri a natura, et alteri humano labore collatis,
the-barriers to-the-one by nature and to-the-other by-human labor conferred
subito erupisse: artificiali longius per devexa dilapso,
suddenly to-have-burst-out the-artificial further down the-slopes having-slipped
cursuque præcipiti demum, ut mos est, evacuato; naturali
and-in-course headlong at-last as the-custom is emptied the-natural
vero non ultra duo passuum millia, in valle quadam, cum
however not beyond two of-paces thousands in a-valley certain with
piscibus prioribus et accidentibus, non absque multorum
the-fishes former and the-incidental not without of-many
admiratione, perpetua stabilitate statum sortito.
wonder perpetual stability a-state having-obtained
Contigit etiam hac tempestate in Normanniæ partibus, paucis
it-happened also at-this time in of-Normandy the-parts few
ante obitum Henrici secundi diebus, ut in stagno quodam
before the-death of-Henry second days that in a-pool certain
non procul a Sagio, quasi per quinque miliaria distante,
not far from Sées as-if by five miles distant
apud Oximense castrum, pisces omnes, quibus abundabat,
at the-Exmes castle the-fishes all with-which it-abounded
tanto conflictu, tam in aqua ipsa quam extra
with-so-great conflict as-much in the-water itself as outside
exsilientes, nocte quadam congrederentur, ut vicinorum
leaping on-a-night certain clashed that of-the-neighboring
hominum multitudinem ipso collisionis strepitu ad
men a-multitude by-the-very of-the-collision din to

spectaculum evocarent. Tanto nempe, tamque letali certamine
the-spectacle they-called so-great truly and-so deadly a-combat
congressi sunt, ut in toto vivario vix unus mane
engaged they-have that in the-whole fishpond scarcely one in-the-morning
vita superstes inveniretur; miro et inaudito prognostico,
in-life surviving was-found by-a-wonderful and unheard-of prognostic
multorum morte, mortem unius præsagientes.
of-many by-the-death the-death of-one foreshowing
Quanti vero et quam enormes excessus, super fratrum
how-many however and how enormous excesses over of-brothers
et consobrinorum exoculationibus, ob miseras terrarum
and of-cousins the-blindings for wretched of-lands
ambitiones, in his inter Waiam et Sabrinam, Mailenith
ambitions in these between the-Wye and the-Severn of-Maelienydd
scilicet, Elvail, et Warthrenniaun finibus, his nostris diebus
namely of-Elfael and of-Gwrthrynion bounds in-these our days
acciderint, satis Walliæ fines memoriter tenent et abhorrent.
have-happened enough of-Wales the-bounds by-memory hold and abhor

At Hay men left their cloaks in the hands of wives and friends to run to the archbishop, and at Llanddew Gerald gave Baldwin his Topography of Ireland. *A lake turned green before the war of Iestyn's sons, and a chaplain dreamed three times of Augustine's warning against William de Braose, a man who put God before every word. A boy's hand stuck to the stone where he robbed pigeons, and the psalter of Kenelm's sister to a sinning monk's hands. Gerald tells of St Cynog's torque, St Patrick's horn, and strange births, then how Bernard de Neufmarché won Brecknock: when Mahel maimed his mother's lover she swore he was not Bernard's, and the land went with her daughter to Milo, whose five sons all died untimely.*

De transitu per Haiam et Brecheniauc, cum notabilibus
about the-passage through Hay and Brecknock with notable-things
suis.
its
Transeuntes inde versus Brecheniauc, flumine Waiensi
passing thence toward Brecknock with-the-river Wye
transcurso, statim apud Haiam sermone facto, inter multos
crossed at-once at Hay with-a-sermon made among many
ibidem crucesignandos, quosdam vidimus qui relictis
there to-be-signed-with-the-cross certain-men we-saw who with-left
vestibus, quibus alii ab amicis, alii ab uxoribus retinebantur,
garments by-which some by friends others by wives were-held-back
usque in castrum ipsum cursim ad archiepiscopum evaserunt.
up-to into the-castle itself running to the-archbishop escaped
Mane vero versus Aberhotheni iter arripuimus: et
in-the-morning however toward Aberhonddu the-journey we-took and
verbo Domini apud Landu seminato, ibidem pernoctavimus.
with-the-word of-the-Lord at Llanddew sown there we-spent-the-night
Dicitur autem Aberhotheni castrum et provinciæ caput, ibi
is-called however Aberhonddu the-castle and of-the-province the-head there

situm ubi rivus Hotheni in aquam Oschæ devolvitur.
situated where the-stream Honddu into the-water of-the-Usk rolls
Aber enim lingua Britannica dicitur locus omnis ubi
aber for in-the-tongue British is-called a-place every where
fluvius in fluvium cadit. Landu vero Ecclesia Dei sonat.
a-river into a-river falls Llanddew however Church of-God sounds
Archidiaconus quoque loci ejusdem opus suum non ignobile,
the-archdeacon also of-place same work his not ignoble
Hibernicam ibidem Topographiam archiepiscopo præsentavit.
the-Irish there Topography to-the-archbishop presented
Quod ipse gratanter accipiens, singulisque diebus obiter
which he gratefully accepting and-on-each days on-the-way
inde vel legens vel audiens attente, tandem in Angliam
thence either reading or hearing attentively at-length into England
reversus, lectionem una cum legatione complevit.
returned the-reading together with the-legation completed
Ea igitur quæ nostris temporibus, his in partibus,
those-things therefore which in-our times in-these in parts
notabilia contigere, prætereunda non putavi. Accidit itaque
notable have-happened to-be-passed-over not I-thought it-happened therefore
parum ante guerram illam grandem, qua tota fere
a-little before war that great in-which the-whole almost
provincia illa per filios Iestini in exterminium data
province that by the-sons of-Iestyn to extermination given
fuerat, ut lacus ille magnus, qui fluvium Leveni ex se
had-been that lake that great which the-river Llynfi from itself
transmittit, simul cum ipso fluvio in Waiæ flumen
sends together with the-very river into of-the-Wye the-river
contra Glasbiriam ab ipso descendente, viridissimi coloris
opposite Glasbury from it descending of-the-greenest color
inveniretur. Consulti autem super hoc terræ illius seniores
was-found consulted however about this of-land that the-elders

quidnam portendere potuisset, responderunt parum ante
what to-portend it-could answered a-little before
magnam illam desolationem, per Hoelum filium Moreduci
great that desolation by Hywel son of-Maredudd
factam, similis coloris aquam inventam fuisse.
made of-like color water found to-have-been
Contigit quoque eadem tempestate, capellanum quemdam,
it-happened also at-the-same time a-chaplain certain
cui nomen Hugo, capellæ Sancti Nicholai in castello
to-whom the-name Hugh of-the-chapel of-Saint Nicholas in the-castle
de Aberhotheni deservientem, in somnis vidisse virum
of Aberhonddu serving in sleep to-have-seen a-man
quemdam venerabilem ei assistentem et dicentem; "Dic
certain venerable to-him standing-by and saying tell
domino tuo Willielmo de Breusa, qui prædium capellæ
to-lord your William of Braose who the-estate of-the-chapel
Sancti Nicholai olim in elemosynam datum detinere præsumit,
of-Saint Nicholas once in alms given to-withhold presumes
verbum istud, 'Hoc aufert fiscus quod non accipit
word this this takes-away the-treasury what not receives
Christus: dabis impio militi quod dare non vis
Christ you-will-give to-an-impious soldier what to-give not you-wish
sacerdoti.'" Cum hoc itaque semel, secundo, et tertio ei
to-the-priest when this therefore once a-second and a-third to-him
accidisset, veniens ad loci illius archidiaconum apud Landu
had-happened coming to of-place that the-archdeacon at Llanddew
qui scripsit hæc, tam visionem, quam verba memoriter
he-who wrote these-things as-much the-vision as the-words by-memory
retenta, quæ nunquam tamen antea audierat, ei proposuit.
retained which never however before he-had-heard to-him set-forth
Ipse vero, Augustini statim hæc esse verba dignoscens,
he however of-Augustine at-once these to-be the-words recognizing

locumque scripturæ ubi reperiuntur ostendens, casum quoque
and-the-place of-scripture where they-are-found showing the-case also
in quo Augustinus ibi loquitur aperuit. Invehitur enim
in which Augustine there speaks opened he-inveighs for
in decimarum et obventionum, seu rerum quarumlibet
against of-tithes and of-offerings or of-things any
ecclesiasticarum detentores. Et quod eis ibi minatur, infra
ecclesiastical the-withholders and what to-them there he-threatens within
brevissimum tempus huic certum est contigisse detentori.
very-short time to-this certain it-is to-have-happened to-the-withholder
Vidimus quippe nostris diebus, et indubitata veritate
we-have-seen indeed in-our days and with-undoubted truth
comperimus, principes ecclesiasticarum possessionum
we-have-found princes of-ecclesiastical possessions
usurpatores, præcipue vero Anglorum regem Henricum
usurpers especially however of-the-English king Henry
secundum, nostris diebus regnantem, et hoc vitio præ aliis
second in-our days reigning and in-this vice beyond others
laborantem, modico fermento massa corrupta, novis semper
laboring by-a-little leaven the-mass corrupted with-new always
ea occasione emersis incommodis, thesauros universos
on-that occasion emerged discomforts treasures all
profudisse, stipendiario dantes militi quæ dari debuerant
to-have-poured-out to-the-mercenary giving soldier what to-be-given ought
sacerdoti.
to-the-priest

De viro tamen prædicto, Willielmo videlicet de Breusa,
about the-man however aforesaid William namely of Braose
quanquam in hoc et similibus plurimum offenderit; quia nihil
although in this and like-things very-much he-offended because nothing
humanum omnino perfectum, omniumque habere notitiam, ut
human wholly perfect and-of-all to-have knowledge as

ait Imperator, et in nullo peccare, potius divinitatis est quam
says the-Emperor and in nothing to-sin rather of-divinity is than
humanitatis; hoc equidem memoria dignum censui, quod
of-humanity this indeed of-memory worthy I-have-judged that
in omni sermone suo semper Deum anteponere consuevit,
in every speech his always God to-put-first he-was-accustomed
dicens, "In nomine Domini fiat hoc," "Ex parte Dei
saying in the-name of-the-Lord let-be-done this from part of-God
fiat illud," item "Si Deo placuerit," vel "Si Deus
let-be-done that likewise if to-God it-shall-have-pleased or if God
annuerit," vel "Per Dei gratiam futurum est ita."
shall-have-nodded or by of-God the-grace about-to-be it-is so
Quod autem in hunc modum Deo sit semper totum
that however in this manner to-God be always all
committendum, ejusque voluntati commendandum, habemus
to-be-committed and-to-his will to-be-commended we-have
ex Paulo; qui, sicut in Actibus Apostolorum legitur,
from Paul who as in the-Acts of-the-Apostles is-read
valefaciens fratribus dixit, "Iterum revertar ad vos, Deo
bidding-farewell to-the-brothers said again I-shall-return to you with-God
volente." Similiter et Jacobus, in epistola sua, adjectiones
willing likewise also James in epistle his additions
hujusmodi, "Si Deus voluerit, si vixerimus," singulis de
of-this-kind if God shall-have-willed if we-shall-have-lived to-each about
futuro promissionibus faciendas ostendit, divinæ voluntati et
future promises to-be-made shows to-divine will and
dispositioni cuncta relinquendo.
disposition all-things by-leaving
Literas quoque, quas varias ad partes veluti dives et præpotens
letters also which to-various to parts as-being rich and very-powerful
mittere solebat, adeo gratiosis hujuscemodi divinæ
to-send he-was-accustomed so with-gracious of-this-kind of-divine

indulgentiæ verbis onerare sed verius honorare consueverat, ut
indulgence words to-burden but more-truly to-honor he-was-accustomed that
in tædium plerumque maximum, non solum notariis, verum
into tedium mostly greatest not only for-the-notaries but
etiam auditoribus vergi soleat. Singulis autem notariorum,
also for-the-hearers to-turn it-was-wont to-each however of-the-notaries
ut literas omnes divini auxilii verbo concluderent, præter
that letters all of-divine of-help with-the-word they-should-close besides
communia stipendia aureum annuatim denarium dabat.
the-common wages a-golden yearly penny he-gave
Ad hæc etiam, ex devotionis abundantia, quoties iter
to these-things also from of-devotion abundance whenever a-journey
agendo vel in ecclesiam, vel in crucem aliquam oculos
making either toward a-church or toward a-cross some the-eyes
convertit, quanquam in cursu sermonis cum quocunque, seu
he-turned although in the-course of-speech with whomever whether
plebeio seu potente, verbum fieret, statim se transtulit ad
commoner or powerful a-word was-made at-once himself he-betook to
orationes: quibus expletis, a diverticulo repetiit orationem.
prayers which completed from the-digression he-resumed the-speech
Præterea quoties pueros in via obvios habebat, eos illico
moreover whenever boys on the-way meeting he-had them at-once
salutatione præveniens ad reciprocam invitabat salutationem; ut
with-a-greeting anticipating to a-reciprocal he-invited greeting that
sic innocentium ei benedictio vel extorta, cum salutationis
thus of-the-innocent to-him the-blessing even extorted with of-greeting
eulogio refunderetur. Horum etiam omnium et sponsa
the-good-word might-be-poured-back of-these also all and the-wife
ejusdem, Matildis de Sancto Walerico, consuetudinem habuit;
his Matilda of Saint Valery the-custom had
mulier, inquam, prudens et pudica, mulier domui suæ bene
a-woman I-say prudent and chaste a-woman over-house her well

præposita, mulier non tantum intus conservando, verum
set a-woman not only within by-preserving but
etiam extra multiplicando providentissima. Qui utinam ambo
also outside by-multiplying most-provident who would-that both
tam finalem in tempore felicitatem et gratiam, quam
as-much final in time happiness and grace as
æternitatis gloriam fuerint ex devotione consecuti.
of-eternity glory had out-of devotion attained
Accidit etiam eisdem in partibus, pueri cujusdam, pullos
it-happened also in-the-same in parts of-a-boy certain the-chicks
columbinos in ecclesia Sancti David de Lanmays a nido
of-doves in the-church of-Saint David of Llanfaes from the-nest
surripere volentis, lapidi supposito manum adhæsisse;
to-snatch wishing on-the-stone placed-beneath the-hand to-have-stuck
miraculosa forte sancti illius vindicta, avium ecclesiæ suæ
by-miraculous perhaps of-saint that vengeance of-the-birds of-church his
indemnitatem procurantis. Cumque diebus tribus et noctibus
the-safety procuring and-when for-days three and nights
puer, cum parentibus et amicis, in ipsa ecclesia coram
the-boy with parents and friends in the-very church before
altari, vigiliis, jejuniis, et orationibus institissent, tandem
the-altar on-vigils fasts and prayers had-pressed at-length
die tertio, vinculo divinitus relaxato, manum a lapide
on-day the-third with-the-bond divinely loosened the-hand from the-stone
virtus quæ ligavit absolvit.
the-power which had-bound released
Vidimus eundem, apud Niweburiam in Anglia manentem, se
we-saw the-same at Newbury in England dwelling himself
Menevensi episcopo David secundo ibidem præsentantem, et
to-the-St-Davids bishop David second there presenting and
transactis ætatum gradibus jam senem ex puero factum,
with-passed of-ages the-steps now an-old-man from a-boy made

quoniam in episcopi illius diocesi ista contigerant, sibi
since in of-bishop that the-diocese these-things had-happened to-himself
hæc accidisse certissima relatione confitentem. Lapis
these-things to-have-happened by-most-certain account confessing the-stone
vero in ecclesia prædicta quasi pro reliquiis usque in
however in the-church aforesaid as-if for relics up-to into
hodiernum reservatur, digitorum vestigiis tanquam in cera
today is-kept of-the-fingers with-the-traces as-if in wax
pressorum in silice comparentibus.
pressed in the-flint appearing
Miraculum autem haud longe dissimile his nostris diebus
a-miracle however not far unlike in-these our days
accidit apud Sanctum Edmundum. Mulier miserrima, ad
happened at Saint Edmund's a-woman most-wretched to
scrinium viri sancti quasi sub devotionis obtentu accedere
the-shrine of-the-man holy as-if under of-devotion the-pretext to-approach
consueta, non tamen afferre quicquam sed auferre parata,
accustomed not however to-bring anything but to-carry-off ready
argentum et aurum ab aliis oblatum, exquisito furti genere,
the-silver and gold by others offered by-an-exquisite of-theft kind
deosculando ablambere solebat, et ore reconditum
by-kissing to-lick-off was-wont and in-the-mouth hidden
asportare. Quæ cum semel, ut sæpius consueverat,
to-carry-away who when once as more-often she-had-been-accustomed
id fecisset, labiis et lingua feretro firmiter adhæsit,
this she-had-done with-the-lips and tongue to-the-bier firmly stuck
argentumque ingestum divinitus deprehensa palam evomuit.
and-the-silver swallowed divinely caught openly vomited
Accurrentibus quoque multis et admirantibus, tam Judæis
with-running-up also many and wondering as-much Jews
quam Christianis, majori diei parte, ut amplior virtus
as Christians for-the-greater of-the-day part that the-ampler power

elucesceret et nulli dubium foret, ibi immota remansit
might-shine-out and to-none doubtful it-might-be there unmoved she-remained
et inconvulsa.
and unshaken
Item in borealibus Angliæ trans Humbriam finibus, in
likewise in the-northern of-England beyond the-Humber bounds in
ecclesia de Hovedene, personæ ejusdem ecclesiæ concubina
the-church of Howden of-the-parson of-the-same church the-concubine
tumbæ Sanctæ Osanæ sororis regis Osredi ligneæ, in sedilis
on-the-tomb of-Saint Osana sister of-king Osred wooden in of-a-seat
modum super aream eminenti, minus caute insedit. Quæ
the-manner above the-floor projecting less cautiously sat who
cum inde recedere vellet, fixis ligno natibus, avelli
when thence to-withdraw she-wished with-fixed to-the-wood buttocks to-be-torn-away
non potuit, donec accurrente populo, scissis vestibus, et
not could until with-the-running-up people with-torn garments and
corpore nudato, et crebris disciplinis usque ad sanguinis
with-body bared and with-frequent disciplines up-to to of-blood
profluvium acriter afflicto, cum lacrimis quoque multis et
the-flow sharply afflicted with tears also many and
supplicationibus, compunctione secuta et pœnitentia injuncta,
supplications with-compunction following and penance enjoined
divinitus laxata recessit.
divinely loosed she-withdrew
De psalterio quoque Quenredæ, sororis Sancti Kenelmi, cujus
about the-psalter also of-Quendrida sister of-Saint Kenelm at-whose
instinctu interfectus erat, virtus magna nostris diebus
instigation killed he-had-been a-power great in-our days
emicuit; cum subcelerarius, vigilia Sancti Kenelmi sero, apud
shone-out when the-sub-cellarer on-the-vigil of-Saint Kenelm late at
Winchelecumbe, adventantibus mulierum turbis de vicinia
Winchcombe with-arriving of-women crowds from the-neighborhood

et notitia monachorum ad festum, ut solent, cum quadam
and acquaintance of-the-monks for the-feast as they-are-wont with a-certain
illarum inter septa monasterii fornicationem incurrit. Qui
of-them within the-enclosures of-the-monastery fornication incurred who
die crastino, ad processionem, psalterium prædictum inter
on-the-day next for the-procession the-psalter aforesaid among
reliquias sanctorum ferre præsumens, completa processionis
the-relics of-the-saints to-carry presuming with-completed of-the-procession
solemnitate reversus in chorum, idem manibus suis firmiter
solemnity returned into the-choir the-same to-hands his firmly
adhærens deponere non prævaluit. Qui stupefactus plurimum
clinging to-lay-down not was-able who stupefied very-much
et confusus, tandem delictum hesternum ad mentem revocans,
and confounded at-length the-fault of-yesterday to mind recalling
confessione facta et pœnitentia injuncta, fratrum orationibus
with-confession made and penance enjoined of-the-brothers by-prayers
adjutus, et propria compunctione contritus, a vinculo
helped and by-own compunction contrite from the-bond
divinitus dato demum absolvi meruit et laxari. Liber
divinely given at-last to-be-absolved deserved and to-be-loosed the-book
autem ille ideo in veneratione magna ibi tenetur, quia cum
however that therefore in veneration great there is-held because when
corpus Kenelmi exanime deferretur, et clamarunt turbæ,
the-body of-Kenelm lifeless was-carried and cried the-crowds
"Martyr Dei est; est vere; martyr Dei est," respondit
a-martyr of-God he-is he-is truly a-martyr of-God he-is answered
Quenreda, fratricidii rea et conscia, "Adeo vere martyr est,
Quendrida of-fratricide guilty and conscious so truly a-martyr he-is
sicut verum est quod oculi mei super psalterium istud eruti
as true it-is that the-eyes my upon psalter this torn-out
jacent:" ea enim hora psalterium forte legebat. Et
lie at-that for hour the-psalter perhaps she-was-reading and

statim oculi ejus ambo a capite divinitus avulsi in librum
at-once eyes her both from the-head divinely torn-out onto the-book
apertum, ubi et vestigia sanguinis adhuc apparent, ceciderunt.
open where also the-traces of-blood still appear fell
Præterea de torque, quam Sancti Kanauci dicunt, tacendum
moreover about the-torque which of-Saint Cynog they-call to-be-kept-silent
non censui. Est etenim auro tam pondere et natura quam
not I-judged is for to-gold as-much in-weight and nature as
colore simillima; ex quatuor frustis, sicut ex rimulis
color most-like from four pieces as from the-little-cracks
patet, orbiculariter in invicem insitis artificiose conserta, et
is-plain in-a-circle into each-other inserted skillfully joined and
capite quasi canino, rictuosis hinc inde dentibus extante,
with-a-head as-if canine with-gaping here there teeth standing-out
per medium complexa. Hanc autem pro reliquiis habent
through the-middle joined this however for relics hold
indigenæ virtuosissimis, adeo ut, hac coram posita, nemo
the-natives most-powerful so that this before placed no-one
pejerare præsumat. Apparet autem ictus in torque magnus,
to-swear-falsely would-presume appears however a-blow on the-torque great
quasi ferreo marculo factus. Quidam enim, ut fertur, auri
as-if by-an-iron hammer made a-certain-one for as is-reported of-gold
cupidine ductus, cum annulum infringere niteretur, vindictam
by-greed led when the-ring to-break strove the-vengeance
divinitus sentiens, oculo est statim orbatus utroque; et sic,
divinely feeling of-eye was at-once deprived each and so
quamdiu postea vixit, tædiosam in tenebris vitam perduxit.
as-long-as afterward he-lived a-wearisome in darkness life he-led
De cornu quoque Sancti Patricii, non aureo quidem sed
about the-horn also of-Saint Patrick not golden indeed but
æneo, quod in partes istas ab Hibernia nuper advenit,
of-bronze which into parts these from Ireland lately came

haud dissimiliter obstupendum. Cujus virtus, ex fatua et
not unlike to-be-marveled-at whose power from the-foolish and
inepta Bernardi presbyteri cornicatione, terribili exemplo in
inept of-Bernard the-priest horn-blowing by-a-terrible example in
finibus istis primum emicuit. Sicut in Hibernica Topographia
bounds these first shone-forth as in the-Irish Topography
nostra propalatur his verbis:
our is-made-known in-these words
"Vidimus quoque et in Gwallia, unde et vehementer
we-saw also even in Wales whence also vehemently
admiramur, bajulum quemdam cornu quoddam æneum,
we-wonder a-porter certain a-horn certain of-bronze
quod Sancti Patricii fuisse dicebat, pro reliquiis in collo
which of-Saint Patrick to-have-been he-said for relics on the-neck
gestantem. Dicebat autem, ob reverentiam sancti illius
carrying he-said moreover for reverence of-saint that
neminem ausum hoc sonare. Cum igitur, Hibernico
no-one to-have-dared this to-sound when therefore in-Irish
more, circumstanti populo cornu porrigeret osculandum,
manner to-the-standing-around people the-horn he-held-out to-be-kissed
sacerdos quidam, Bernardus nomine, de manibus ejus illud
a-priest certain Bernard by-name from the-hands his it
abripuit; et oris apponens angulo, aeremque impellens,
snatched and of-the-mouth putting-it to-the-corner and-the-air driving
sonare cœpit. Qui et eadem hora, multis astantibus,
to-sound began who also in-the-same hour with-many standing-by
ore quidem auretenus paralytice retorto, duplici passione
with-mouth indeed up-to-the-ear paralytically twisted by-double affliction
percussus est. Cum enim torrentis eloquii prius extitisset, et
struck was since for of-torrential eloquence before he-had-been and
delatoris linguam detractor habuisset, sermonis cujuslibet
of-an-informer the-tongue a-detractor he-had-had of-speech any

usum statim amisit. Unde et in hac parte sic læsus est,
the-use at-once he-lost whence also in this part so injured he-was
ut semper hactenus linguæ fuerit impeditæ. Præterea,
that always hitherto of-tongue he-has-been impeded moreover
lethargum patiens, sic statim oblivioni cuncta tradiderat,
lethargy suffering so at-once to-oblivion all-things he-had-handed
ut vix etiam se nomen habuisse meminisset. Enimvero
that scarcely even himself a-name to-have-had he-remembered for-indeed
tam enormiter in memoria læsus fuerat, ut psalmos, quos
so enormously in memory injured he-had-been that psalms which
antea cordetenus optime noverat, multis abinde diebus
before by-heart excellently he-had-known for-many thence days
quasi de novo recordantem videremus: et literas etiam,
as-if from new recalling we-saw and letters also
quarum notitiam copiose satis habuerat, denuo mendicantem
of-which knowledge copiously enough he-had-had anew begging
tanquam elementarium senem miraremur. Cui tandem in
as-if an-elementary old-man we-wondered to-whom at-length into
Hiberniam, ad Sanctum Patricium, excessus hujus causa
Ireland to Saint Patrick of-excess this for-the-sake
peregre profecto, plenior valetudo rediit, sed non plena."
abroad having-set-out fuller health returned but not full
Campanas namque bajulas, baculos quoque in superiori parte
bells for portable staffs also in the-upper part
cameratos, auro et argento vel ære contectos, aliasque
crooked with-gold and silver or bronze covered and-other
hujusmodi sanctorum reliquias, in magna reverentia tam
of-this-kind of-saints relics in great reverence as-much
Hiberniæ et Scotiæ, quam et Gwalliæ populus et clerus
of-Ireland and of-Scotland as also of-Wales the-people and clergy
habere solent: adeo ut sacramenta super hæc longe magis
to-hold are-wont so that oaths upon these far more

quam super evangelia et præstare vereantur et pejerare.
than upon the-gospels both to-take they-fear and to-swear-falsely
Quippe ex vi quadam occulta, et his quasi divinitus
indeed from force a-certain hidden and in-these as-if divinely
insita, necnon et vindicta, cujus præcipue sancti illi
implanted and-also also vengeance of-which especially saints those
appetibiles esse videntur, plerumque puniuntur contemptores,
desirous to-be seem mostly are-punished the-despisers
et graviter animadvertitur in transgressores.
and heavily it-is-punished on the-transgressors
De cornu quoque Patricii hoc equidem notabile censui, quod
about the-horn also of-Patrick this indeed notable I-judged that
ad aurem apposito capite foraminis ampliore, dulcisonam
to the-ear with-placed the-end of-the-opening wider a-sweet-sounding
audias per se sonoritatem emitti; qualis ex cithara
you-may-hear by itself sonority to-be-emitted such-as from a-harp
nudata, aura leniter impulsa, melodia solet educi.
bared by-a-breeze gently struck a-melody is-wont to-be-drawn-out
Contigit autem his nostris diebus, eisdem in finibus, quod
it-happened moreover in-these our days in-the-same in bounds which
et notabile censui, suillam silvestrem, quia canem forte
also notable I-judged a-sow wild because a-dog perhaps
lactuerat odoris naribus sagacem, cujus mamillis apposita
had-sucked of-scent in-the-nostrils keen to-whose teats placed
fuerat, adultam in ferarum persecutione ad miraculum
it-had-been grown in of-beasts the-pursuit to miracle
usque fuisse pervalidam, adeo quidem ut molossis, ad
even to-have-been very-strong so-much indeed that than-hounds for
hoc natura juvante tam institutis quam instructis, odora
this with-nature helping as-much trained as instructed in-scenting
sagacitate longe præstantior inveniretur. Argumentum tam
keenness far more-excellent it-was-found a-proof as-much

hominem, quam animal quodlibet, ab illa, cujus lacte
man as animal any from her by-whose milk
nutritur, naturam contrahere.
it-is-nourished the-nature to-take-on
In eisdem quoque finibus, et eodem fere tempore, res
in the-same also bounds and at-the-same almost time a-thing
accidit prodigiosa. Miles enim, cui nomen Gillebertus,
happened prodigious a-knight for to-whom the-name Gilbert
cognomen vero Hagurnellus, post diutinos continuosque fere
the-surname however Hagurnell after long and-continuous almost
triennii languores, et gravissimas tanquam parturientis
of-three-years languors and most-severe as-if of-a-woman-in-labor
angustias, demum, videntibus multis, per egestionis
pangs at-last with-seeing many through of-evacuation
fenestram vitulum edidit: novi alicujus et inusitati futuri
the-window a-calf brought-forth of-a-new some and unusual future
casus ostentum, aut potius nefandi criminis ultricem
event a-portent or rather of-unspeakable crime the-avenging
declarans indignationem.
declaring indignation
Præterea, ex antiquis et authenticis partium istarum
moreover from ancient and authentic of-parts those
scriptis colligitur, tempore quo Sanctus Eltutus heremiticam
writings it-is-gathered at-the-time when Saint Illtud the-hermit's
apud Lanhamelach vitam exegit, jumentum ejusdem, quo
at Llanhamlach life passed the-mare of-the-same by-which
cibaria ipsius deferri consueverant, cervo emissario
the-provisions his to-be-carried had-been-wont by-a-stag stallion
pregnans effectum esse: ex quo et miræ velocitatis
pregnant made to-have-been from which also of-wonderful speed

equus prodiit, anteriori parte equi naturam præferens,
a-horse came-forth in-the-front part of-a-horse the-nature displaying
posterius vero in cervum descendens.
behind however into a-stag descending
Primus Normannorum hanc provinciam, quæ tribus cantaredis
the-first of-the-Normans this province which by-three cantreds
distincta conseritur, Bernardus de Novo Mercatu nova contra
distinguished is-composed Bernard of New Market by-new against
Kambriæ fines conquisitione possedit. Hic filiam Nestæ,
of-Wales the-bounds conquest possessed he the-daughter of-Nest
filiæ Griffini filii Lewelini, cujus tyrannis totam aliquamdiu
daughter of-Gruffydd son of-Llywelyn whose tyranny the-whole for-a-while
Gualliam oppresserat, materno Nestam nomine, quam et
Wales had-oppressed by-the-maternal Nest name whom also
Angli vertendo Anneis vocavere, sibi matrimonio copulavit:
the-English by-turning Agnes called to-himself in-marriage joined
ex qua et prolem suscepit, in qua miles egregius, cui
from whom also offspring he-received in which a-knight excellent to-whom
nomen Mahel, hac paternum injuria conquestum amisit. Mater
the-name Mahel by-this the-paternal injury conquest lost the-mother
ejusdem, contra jugale vinculum, adulterinis amplexibus
of-the-same against the-conjugal bond with-adulterous embraces
militem quemdam adamavit. Quo comperto, militem noctu
a-knight certain loved which learned the-knight by-night
a matre redeuntem filius offendens, flagellatum graviter
from the-mother returning the-son meeting flogged severely
mutilatumque cum dedecore remisit magno. Mater vero,
and-mutilated with disgrace sent-back great the-mother however
mira facti confusione percussa, muliebrique dolore
with-wonderful of-the-deed confusion struck and-with-womanly grief
anxie concussa, totum in vindictam virus evomuit. Accedens
anxiously shaken all into vengeance the-venom vomited approaching

igitur ad Anglorum regem Henricum primum, assertione
therefore to of-the-English king Henry first with-assertion
vindice magis quam vera proposuit, et coram curia publice
avenging more than true set-forth and before the-court publicly
sacramento corporaliter præstito confirmavit, filium suum
with-oath bodily taken confirmed son her
Mahelem non a Bernardo, sed ab alio quodam, quem secretis
Mahel not by Bernard but by another certain whom with-secret
et illicitis adamaverat amplexibus, fuisse progenitum. Cujus
and illicit she-had-loved embraces to-have-been begotten of-which
juramenti vel potius perjurii causa, rex Henricus, voluntate
oath or rather perjury for-the-sake king Henry by-will
magis quam ratione permotus, primævam prædictæ mulieris
more than by-reason moved the-eldest of-the-aforesaid woman
filiam, quam ex Bernardi semine professa est vere fuisse
daughter whom from of-Bernard the-seed she-professed has truly to-have-been
susceptam, juveni de familia sua et militi insigni, Miloni
conceived to-a-youth of household his and knight distinguished Milo
scilicet filio Walteri constabularii Gloverniæ, cum honore de
namely son of-Walter constable of-Gloucester with the-honor of
Brecheniauc nuptui dedit. Qui postmodum, a regis ejusdem
Brecknock in-marriage gave who afterward by of-king the-same
filia et imperatrice Romana Matillide, comes Herefordiæ
daughter and empress Roman Matilda earl of-Hereford
creatus est. Hic prolem egregiam ex eadem uxore suscepit;
created was he offspring excellent from the-same wife received
in qua filii quinque, milites insignes, Rogerus, Gualterus,
in which the-sons five knights distinguished Roger Walter
Henricus, Guillelmus, et Mahel, nescio qua vindicta,
Henry William and Mahel I-know-not by-what vengeance
quave fatalitate sinistra, intempestiva nece rebus humanis
or-by-what fate sinister by-untimely death from-things human

exempti sunt. Et tamen omnes, præter Guillelmum, sibi
removed were and nevertheless all except William to-each
invicem sine prole paternam in hereditatem successerunt.
other without offspring into-the-paternal into inheritance succeeded

BRECKNOCK AND ITS LAKE

So the woman disinherited her son at the cost of her own shame, for a woman's malice knows no limit, and Mahel, who persecuted Bishop David, was killed by a stone falling from the tower at Bronllys. Brychan, father of twenty-four holy daughters, gave the land its name; on the feast of his daughter Eluned the people fall into a trance and mime their holy-day work. Brecknock is rich in grain and fish, and the birds of Llangorse sang at the command of Gruffydd son of Rhys, as of the true prince. Mountains ring it, Arthur's Chair among them, and the men of Talgarth and Ewyas keep up endless feuds.

Sic igitur hæc mulier, muliebri non degenerans a natura,
so therefore this woman from-womanly not degenerating from nature
ut vindici satisfaceret iracundiæ, cum gravi pudicitiæ
that to-avenging she-might-satisfy anger with heavy of-chastity
jactura, cum damno dedecoris atque pudoris, uno eodemque
loss with harm of-disgrace and of-shame by-one and-the-same
facinore et filium patrimonio, et se privavit honore.
deed both the-son of-patrimony and herself deprived of-honor
Nec mirum si mulier innatæ malitiæ morem gerat. Legitur enim
nor wonderful if a-woman to-inborn malice the-custom bear it-is-read for
in Ecclesiaste; "Virum de mille unum reperi; mulierem non
in Ecclesiastes a-man of a-thousand one I-found a-woman not
inveni." Et in Ecclesiastico; "Non est caput nequius super caput
I-found and in Ecclesiasticus not is a-head more-wicked above the-head
colubri, et non est ira super iram mulieris." Item in eodem;
of-the-serpent and not is anger above the-anger of-a-woman likewise in the-same

"Brevis est hominis malitia super malitiam mulieris." Et ut de
short is of-man the-malice above the-malice of-woman and that from
spinis uvas, de tribulis ficus colligamus, muliebrem describens
thorns grapes from thistles figs we-may-gather the-womanly describing
naturam Tullius ait; "Viri forte, unius alicujus commodi causa,
nature Tully says men perhaps of-one some advantage for-the-sake
unum aliquando scelus perpetrabunt: feminæ vero, unius
one sometimes crime will-commit women however of-one
explendæ voluntatis causa, omnia simul scelera perpetrare non
to-be-fulfilled will for-the-sake all at-once crimes to-commit not
formidabunt." Item Juvenalis loquens de mulieribus inquit;
will-dread likewise Juvenal speaking about women says

"Nihil est audacius illis
"Nothing is bolder than-they
Deprensis: iram atque animos a crimine sumunt."
Caught: anger and spirits from the-crime they-take."

Et alibi;
and elsewhere

"Mulier sævissima tunc est,
"A-woman most-savage then is,
Cum stimulos odio pudor admovet."
When goads to-hatred shame applies."

Et alibi; vindicta quia
and elsewhere in-vengeance because

"Nemo magis quam femina gaudet."
"No-one more than a-woman rejoices."

Prædictorum autem fratrum quinque, et filiorum comitis
of-the-aforesaid however brothers five and sons of-earl
Milonis, penultimus ille, et postremus hereditatis possessor,
Milo the-next-to-last that and last of-the-inheritance possessor
inhumana præ ceteris crudelitate notabilis, adeo in
for-inhuman beyond the-others cruelty notable so against
Menevensem episcopum David secundum, suasque tam
the-St-Davids bishop David second and-his as-much
possessiones, quam terras et homines, desævire statuerat, ut
possessions as lands and men to-rage had-resolved that
a finibus de Brecheniauc non præsul jam, sed tanquam
from the-bounds of Brecknock not a-prelate now but as-if
exul existens, tam Angliam quam alias diocesis suæ
an-exile being as-much England as other of-diocese his
partes frequentaret. Contigit autem interea ut in castro de
parts he-frequented it-happened however meanwhile that in the-castle of
Broynles cum Waltero de Cliffordia Mahel hospitio susceptus,
Bronllys with Walter of Clifford Mahel in-hospitality received
ædibus casuali incendio consumptis, lapide a
with-the-buildings by-accidental fire consumed by-a-stone from
principali turre deorsum cadente percussus in capite letaliter
the-principal tower down falling struck on the-head fatally
obrueretur. Et statim missis nunciis, prædicto loci episcopo
he-was-overwhelmed and at-once with-sent messengers the-aforesaid of-place bishop
cum festinatione revocato, voce miserabili proclamavit; "O
with haste recalled with-voice wretched he-cried-out O
pater et pontifex noster, crudelem nimis in me vindictam
father and pontiff our a-cruel very on me vengeance
sanctus vester exercuit, non conversionem peccatoris exspectans,
saint your has-exercised not the-conversion of-the-sinner awaiting
sed mortem magis et eversionem accelerans." Et cum
but the-death rather and overthrow hastening and when

hujusmodi verba lugubri lamentatione sæpius ingeminasset,
of-this-kind words with-mournful lamentation often he-had-repeated
anno dominationis suæ nondum completo, vitam pariter et
with-the-year of-lordship his not-yet completed life equally and
tyrannidem terminavit, et propriæ præco confusionis expiravit.
tyranny he-ended and of-own herald confusion expired
Erat autem antiquitus regionis illius, quæ Brecheniauc
there-was moreover anciently of-region that which Brecknock
dicitur, dominator vir potens et nobilis, cui nomen
is-called the-lord a-man powerful and noble to-whom the-name
Brechanus; a quo et terra Brecheniauc denominata. De
Brychan from whom also the-land Brecknock named about
quo mihi notabile videtur, quod ipsum viginti quatuor habuisse
whom to-me notable it-seems that he twenty four to-have-had
filias historiæ Britannicæ testantur, omnes a pueritia
daughters the-histories British testify all from childhood
divinis deditas obsequiis, et in sanctitatis assumptæ proposito
to-divine devoted services and in of-holiness assumed the-purpose
vitam feliciter terminasse. Extant autem basilicæ adhuc per
life happily to-have-ended stand moreover churches still through
Kambriam multæ, earum nominibus illustratæ: quarum una
Wales many by-their names made-illustrious of-which one
in provincia de Brecheniauc, non procul a castro principali
in the-province of Brecknock not far from the-castle principal
de Aberhotheni, in collis cujusdam vertice sita, quæ
of Aberhonddu on of-a-hill certain the-summit situated which
Sanctæ Aelivedhæ ecclesia dicitur: hoc etenim virginis sanctæ
of-Saint Eluned the-church is-called this for of-the-virgin holy
nomen extiterat, quæ et ibidem terreni regis nuptias
the-name had-been who also there of-an-earthly king the-marriage
respuens, æterno nubens regi, felici martyrio triumphavit.
rejecting to-the-eternal marrying king by-happy martyrdom triumphed

Celebratur autem solemnis ejusdem dies, eodem in loco,
is-celebrated moreover the-solemn of-the-same day in-the-same in place
singulis annis in capite kalendarum Augusti: ubi et eodem
in-each year on the-head of-the-kalends of-August where also on-the-same
die multi de plebe longinquis ex partibus convenire
day many of the-common-people from-distant from parts to-gather
solent; et variis languentes infirmitatibus, meritis beatæ
are-wont and with-various languishing infirmities by-the-merits of-the-blessed
virginis, optatam recipere sanitatem consueverant. Illud
virgin the-longed-for to-receive health have-been-accustomed that
autem hoc in loco mihi notabile videtur, quod in omni fere
however in-this in place to-me notable it-seems that in every almost
solemnitate hujus virginis accidere consuevit. Videas enim hic
solemnity of-this virgin to-happen has-been-wont you-may-see for here
homines seu puellas, nunc in ecclesia, nunc in cœmiterio, nunc
men or girls now in the-church now in the-cemetery now
in chorea quæ circa cœmiterium cum cantilena circumfertur,
in the-dance which around the-cemetery with song is-carried-around
subito in terram corruere, et primo tanquam in extasim
suddenly to the-ground fall and first as-if into a-trance
ductos et quietos, deinde statim tanquam in phrenesim
led and quiet then at-once as-if into frenzy
raptos exsilientes, opera quæcunque festis diebus illicite
seized leaping-up the-works whatever on-feast days unlawfully
perpetrare consueverant, tam manibus quam pedibus coram
to-perform they-had-been-wont as-much with-hands as with-feet before
populo repræsentantes. Videas hunc aratro manus aptare,
the-people representing you-may-see this-one to-the-plow the-hands fit
illum quasi stimulo boves excitare; et utrumque, quasi
that-one as-if with-a-goad the-oxen rouse and each as-if
laborem mitigando, solitas barbaræ modulationis voces efferre.
the-labor easing the-wonted of-barbarous measure the-cries utter

Videas hunc artem sutoriam, illum pellipariam imitari.
you-may-see this-one the-art of-the-shoemaker that-one of-the-furrier imitate
Item videas hanc, quasi colum bajulando, nunc filum
likewise you-may-see this-woman as-if the-distaff carrying now the-thread
manibus et brachiis in longum extrahere, nunc extractum
with-hands and arms into length draw-out now the-drawn-out
occando tanquam in fusum revocare; istam deambulando
by-winding as-if onto the-spindle recall that-woman by-walking-about
productis filis quasi telam ordiri; illam sedendo quasi
with-stretched threads as-if the-web to-warp that-woman by-sitting as-if
jam orditam oppositis lanceolæ jactibus, et alternis
the-already warped with-opposed of-the-shuttle throws and with-alternate
calamistræ cominus ictibus, texere mireris. Demum vero
of-the-comb close strokes to-weave you-may-wonder at-last however
intra ecclesiam cum oblationibus ad altare perductos, tanquam
within the-church with offerings to the-altar led as-if
experrectos et ad se redeuntes obstupescas.
awakened and to themselves returning you-may-be-astonished
Sic itaque divina miseratione, quæ peccantium conversione
so therefore by-divine mercy which of-sinners in-the-conversion
magis gaudet quam eversione, multos, ultionem hujusmodi
more rejoices than in-the-overthrow many the-vengeance of-this-kind
tam videndo quam sentiendo, festis de cetero feriando
as-much by-seeing as by-feeling the-feast for the-rest by-keeping
diebus, corrigi constat et emendari.
days to-be-corrected it-is-agreed and to-be-amended
Est igitur hæc terra satis abundans grano: et si quis est
is therefore this land quite abounding in-grain and if any is
defectus innato, ex Anglicanæ vicinitatis copia affatim
a-lack in-the-native from of-the-English neighborhood plenty amply
suppletur allato. Pascuis et silvis, feris et
it-is-supplied with-what-is-brought in-pastures and woods in-wild-beasts and

armentis terra fecunda. Fluvialibus quoque piscibus abundat,
herds the-land fertile in-river also fishes it-abounds
quos hinc Oscha, inde Waia ministrat. Salmonibus enim
which here the-Usk there the-Wye supplies in-salmon for
et turtris utraque; sed plus illis Waia, plus istis Oscha
and trout each but more in-those the-Wye more in-these the-Usk
fecunda est. Hiemali quoque tempore Waiæ salmones,
fertile is in-winter also time of-the-Wye the-salmon
æstivo vero Oschæ tempestivi reperiuntur. Egregiis vero,
in-summer however of-the-Usk in-season are-found in-the-excellent however
quas et Umbras vocant, sola thymallis Waia fecunda est.
which also Umbers they-call alone graylings the-Wye fertile is
In quorum laudem, quoniam et Mediolani abundant, in
in whose praise since also at-Milan they-abound in
Ambrosii libris reperitur. "Quid," inquit, "aspectu pulchrius,
of-Ambrose the-books it-is-found what he-says in-look more-beautiful
quid odore suavius, quid gustu jocundius?"
what in-smell sweeter what in-taste more-pleasant
Luciis quoque et perchiis, turtrisque peroptimis, et tenchis,
with-pikes also and perches and-trout very-good and tenches
anguillisque lutosis, lacus ille de Brecheniauc magnus
and-eels muddy lake that of Brecknock great
et famosus, quem et Clamosum dicunt, patriam replet.
and famous which also the-Noisy they-call the-country fills
De quo, quod parum ante hæc nostra tempora contigit,
about which what a-little before these our times happened
prætereundum non putavi.
to-be-passed-over not I-thought
Tempore namque Anglorum regis Henrici primi, Griphino filio
in-the-time for of-the-English king Henry first with-Gruffydd son
Resi, filii Theodori, quanquam unius kemmoti solum, id est,
of-Rhys son of-Tewdwr although of-one commote only that is

quartæ partis cantaredi, de Kaoc scilicet in Cantrefmaur, tunc
of-the-fourth part of-the-cantred of Caeo namely in Cantref-Mawr then
domino, nomine tamen et nobilitate tenus in Sudwallia, quam
lord in-name however and nobility as-far in South-Wales which
Kambri Deheubarth, id est, dextralem Walliæ partem vocant,
the-Welsh Deheubarth that is the-right-hand of-Wales part call
sub rege principante, cum idem Griphinus a curia regis
under the-king ruling when the-same Gruffydd from the-court of-the-king
per lacum prædictum, fluvialibus diversorum generum aviculis
by the-lake aforesaid with-river of-various kinds little-birds
hiemali algore redundantem, reverteretur, duces habens et
in-winter cold overflowing was-returning leaders having and
deductores Milonem, Herefordiæ comitem et de Brecheniauc
guides Milo of-Hereford earl and of Brecknock
dominatorem, necnon et Paganum filium Johannis, in cujus
lord and-also also Payn son of-John in whose
manu tunc Ewias fuerat; qui duo tunc temporis inter regis
hand then Ewias had-been who two at-that time among of-the-king
secretarios et præcipuos consiliarios pro magnis habebantur;
the-secretaries and chief counselors for great were-held
comes Milo, ut aliquem a Griphino nobilitatis innatæ
earl Milo that some from Gruffydd of-nobility inborn
sermonem eliceret, in hæc verba ludicro magis quam
speech he-might-draw-out into these words in-jest more than
serio prorupit. "Antiquum," inquit, "verbum, et ab antiquo
in-earnest broke-out an-ancient he-says saying and from of-old
in Wallia retentum est, quod si naturalis Walliæ princeps,
in Wales kept is that if the-natural of-Wales prince
ad hunc lacum veniens, avibus ejusdem præceperit ut
to this lake coming to-the-birds of-the-same shall-have-commanded that
canant, statim omnes canent." Ad quod Griphinus, plus animo
they-sing at-once all will-sing at which Gruffydd more in-mind

dives quam auro, ob hereditatis namque diminutionem nihil
rich than in-gold for of-inheritance indeed diminution nothing
unquam animositatis, nihil dignitatis imminuens, subjecit:
ever of-spirit nothing of-dignity diminishing added
"Tu itaque, qui te terræ istius nunc dominum geris,
you therefore who yourself of-land this now lord bear
primo præcipias." At illo frustra præcipiente, sicut et
first command but with-him in-vain commanding as also
præcepto Griphini postea quoque Pagano, videns Griphinus
with-the-command of-Gruffydd afterward also with-Payn seeing Gruffydd
ad eorundem instantiam sibi jam præcipiendi lege
at their insistence on-himself now of-commanding by-the-law
consortii necessitatem incumbere, statim ab equo descendens,
of-partnership the-necessity to-press at-once from the-horse descending
et in orientem genua ponens, tanquam duelli conflictum
and toward the-east knees placing as-if of-a-duel the-conflict
ibidem ingressurus, nunc cernuus in terram et humiliter
there about-to-enter now bowed toward the-ground and humbly
prostratus, nunc oculis ac manibus in cœlum intentus,
prostrate now with-eyes and hands toward heaven intent
devotas ad Deum fudit orationes. Tandem itaque se ab
devout to God poured prayers at-length therefore himself from
orationibus erigens, et crucis signaculo frontem ac faciem
prayers raising and of-the-cross with-the-sign the-forehead and face
signans, palam ac publice proclamavit; "Deus omnipotens et
signing openly and publicly cried-out God almighty and
omnia sciens, Domine Jesu Christe, tuam hic hodie declara
all-things knowing Lord Jesus Christ your here today declare
virtutem. Quoniam si ex naturalibus Walliæ principibus
power since if from the-natural of-Wales princes
me linealiter descendere fecisti, avibus istis ut hoc
me lineally to-descend you-have-made to-birds these that this

denuncient in nomine tuo præcipio." Et continuo aviculæ
they-may-announce in name your I-command and immediately the-little-birds
cunctæ, quælibet in suo genere, alis expansis aquam
all each in its-own kind with-wings spread the-water
verberando, canere una et proclamare cœperunt. Cunctis
beating to-sing together and to-proclaim began with-all
autem qui aderant stupidis effectis et consternatis, comes et
however who were-present astonished made and dismayed the-earl and
Paganus ad curiam statim cum festinatione reversi, cuncta per
Payn to the-court at-once with haste returned all-things in
ordinem regi cum admiratione maxima retulerunt. Quibus
order to-the-king with wonder greatest reported which
auditis, rex respondisse memoratur; "Per mortem," inquit,
heard the-king to-have-answered is-recorded by the-death he-says
"Christi," quoniam hoc juramento uti consueverat, "non
of-Christ since this oath to-use he-was-wont not
adeo est admirandum. Quia licet gentibus illis per vires
so-much it-is to-be-wondered-at because although on-peoples those through strength
nostras magnas injuriam et violentiam irrogemus, nihilominus
our great injury and violence we-inflict nevertheless
tamen in terris eisdem jus hereditarium habere noscuntur."
however in lands the-same right hereditary to-have they-are-known
Plurimis quoque, ut accolæ testantur, lacus iste
by-very-many also as the-neighbors testify lake this
miraculis pollet. Quemadmodum enim viridis aliquoties,
miracles is-strong just-as for green sometimes
sicut præscripsimus, coloris, sic et sanguineus aliquando
as we-have-written-above of-color so also bloody sometimes
nostris diebus repertus est; non universaliter tamen, sed
in-our days found it-was not universally however but
quasi per venas quasdam et rivulos sanguinem manare
as-if through veins certain and rivulets blood to-flow

compertus est. Ad hæc etiam totus ædificiis consertus,
found it-was to these-things also wholly with-buildings crowded
culturis egregiis, hortis ornatus et pomeriis, ab accolis
with-tillages excellent with-gardens adorned and orchards by the-neighbors
quandoque conspicitur. Sub bruma quoque glacie constrictus,
sometimes it-is-seen under winter also by-ice bound
et aquarum superficie in lubricam testam frigore concreta,
and of-the-waters with-the-surface into a-slippery shell by-cold congealed
sonum horribilem, tanquam multorum animalium in unum
a-sound horrible as-if of-many animals into one
collectorum mugitum, emittit. Sed hoc forte, glaciali testudine
gathered a-lowing it-emits but this perhaps with-the-icy shell
deorsum residente, aeris inclusi, et per fenestras occultas
downward settling of-the-air enclosed and through openings hidden
sensim exhalantis, subita interdum et violenta facit eruptio.
gradually exhaling sudden sometimes and violent makes the-bursting-out
Præterea montibus excelsis, præterquam a borea, hæc undique
moreover by-mountains lofty except from the-north this on-all-sides
terra concluditur: a zephyro montana de Cantrebochan,
land is-enclosed from the-west the-mountains of Cantref-Bychan
ab austro montes habens meridionales, quorum principalis
from the-south mountains having southern of-which the-principal
Kaerarthur dictus, id est, cathedra Arthuri, propter
Cadair-Arthur called that is the-chair of-Arthur on-account-of
gemina promontorii cacumina in cathedræ modum se
the-twin of-the-promontory summits in of-a-chair the-manner themselves
præferentia. Et quoniam in alto cathedra et in arduo sita
displaying and since on high the-chair and in a-steep-place situated
est, summo et maximo Britonum regi Arthuro vulgari
is to-the-highest and greatest of-the-Britons king Arthur by-common
nuncupatione est assignata. In excelso montis hujus
naming it-has-been assigned on the-lofty of-mountain this

vertice fontis ebullit scaturigo. Est autem fons in putei
summit of-a-spring bubbles a-gushing is moreover the-spring in of-a-well
modum altus, sed quadratus, nullum ex se rivulum faciens,
the-manner deep but square no from itself rivulet making
in quo tamen et turtræ quandoque, ut fertur, sunt repertæ.
in which however also trout sometimes as is-reported have-been found
His igitur obstaculis ad meridiem appositis, a phœbeo
by-these therefore obstacles toward the-south set from the-Phoebean
patriam fervore frigidior aura defendit, et insita aeris
the-country heat the-colder air defends and by-the-inborn of-the-air
salubritate temperatissimam reddit. Ab euro vero de
healthfulness most-temperate renders from the-east however of
Talgarth et Ewyas montana prætendit. Quorum incolæ
Talgarth and Ewias the-mountains stretch-before of-which the-inhabitants
continuis inimicitiis, et odio implacabili, mutuis vulneribus
in-continual enmities and in-hatred implacable with-mutual wounds
sanguinem fundere et cædibus insistere non desistunt.
blood to-shed and on-slaughters to-press not cease
Quanti vero et quam enormes excessus super matrimoniis
how-many however and how enormous excesses over marriages
cruentissimis, protractis tamen potius quam contractis, et
most-bloody protracted however rather than contracted and
sanguinolento divortio præpeditis, ceterisque multis crudeliter
by-bloody divorce hindered and-the-other many cruelly
exactis, hoc nostro tempore finibus istis acciderint, aliis
carried-out in-this our time in-bounds these have-happened to-others
explicare locum damus.
to-unfold place we-give

In the deep valley of Ewyas stands Llanthony, where David's chapel stood. Its misty but mild air restores the brothers worn out at its daughter house at Gloucester, founded by Earl Milo, which grew rich and supplanted the mother; Roger of Salisbury told Henry I that the whole treasury could not build its cloister, meaning its mountains. Every prior who harmed it was punished, and its founders prayed that it never grow wealthy. Both houses keep Augustine's rule, while the Benedictines and the Cistercians have been corrupted by riches, and the Cistercians' hunger for land stains their order with greed. Richard I told Fulk of Neuilly he had married his three daughters, pride to the Templars, lechery to the black monks, and greed to the white, and Gerald closes by setting the Cluniacs, who fail when given riches, beside the Cistercians, who prosper in a wilderness.

De Ewias et Lanthonei, cum notabilibus suis.

about Ewias and Llanthony with notable-things its

Stat autem in valle de Ewias profundissima, quantum

stands however in the-valley of Ewias very-deep as-much-as

sagittæ est jactus arcu ter missæ, montibus æthereis

of-an-arrow is the-throw from-a-bow thrice sent by-mountains ethereal

orbiculariter undique conclusa, ecclesia Sancti Johannis

roundly on-all-sides enclosed the-church of-Saint John

Baptistæ, plumbeis laminis operta, lapideoque tabulatu pro

Baptist with-leaden sheets covered and-with-stone vaulting for

loci natura non indecenter exstructa: in loco videlicet

of-the-place the-nature not unfittingly built in the-place namely

ubi paupercula prius Sancti David archiepiscopi capella steterat,

where a-poor-little before of-Saint David archbishop chapel had-stood

musco silvestri solum et hederæ nexibus adornata. Vere

with-moss of-the-woods only and of-ivy with-the-tendrils adorned truly

religioni locus idoneus, et disciplinæ canonicæ præ cunctis

for-religion a-place suitable and for-discipline canonical beyond all

insulæ Britannicæ cœnobiis competentissimus; a duobus
of-the-island British monasteries most-fitting by two
eremitis in honorem eremitæ primo fundatus, ab omni
hermits in honor of-the-hermit first founded from every
populari strepitu in solitudine quadam longe remotus, super
popular din in solitude a-certain far removed over
fluvium Hotheni per vallis ima labentis situs. Unde et
the-river Honddu through of-the-valley the-depths gliding situated whence also
ab Hotheni Lanthotheni dictus: Lan enim locus ecclesiasticus
from the-Honddu Llanhonddu called llan for a-place ecclesiastical
sonat. Exquisitius tamen dici potest, quod propria loci
sounds more-exquisitely however to-be-said it-can that the-proper of-place
illius nuncupatio Kambrice est Nanthotheni. Nant etenim
that the-naming in-Welsh is Nanthonddu nant for
rivus dicitur aquæ decurrentis: unde et usque hodie ab
a-stream is-called of-water running-down whence also up-to today by
accolis locus iste lingua Kambrica Landewi Nanthotheni
the-neighbors place this in-the-tongue Welsh Llandewi Nanthonddu
vocatur, hoc est, ecclesia David super rivum Hotheni.
is-called that is the-church of-David upon the-stream Honddu
Corrupte igitur Angli Lanthotheni dicunt: ubi vel
corruptly therefore the-English Lanthotheni say where either
Nanthotheni, per N et t, id est, rivus Hotheni, vel
Nanthotheni by N and t that is the-stream Honddu or
Lanhotheni, [scilicet] per L sine t, id est, ecclesia
Lanhotheni namely by L without t that is the-church
Hotheni, dici deberet.
of-Honddu to-be-said it-ought
Pluviæ quas montana creant hic creberrimæ, venti pervalidi,
rains which the-mountains create here very-frequent winds very-strong
nebulæ sub bruma fere continuæ. Et tamen aeris, quanto
mists under winter almost continuous and nevertheless of-the-air by-as-much

obtusioris tanto benignioris et clementioris, salubri
more-dull by-so-much kinder and gentler with-healthful
temperantia, morbi rarissimi.
temperateness diseases most-rare
Adeo quidem ut fratres apud filiam, diutino labore
so-much indeed that the-brothers at the-daughter by-long labor
consumpti et desperabiliter afflicti, tanquam ad salubre
worn-out and desperately afflicted as-if to a-healthful
remedium et unicum sospitatis asylum, ad matris ubera
remedy and the-only of-safety asylum to of-the-mother the-breasts
translati, optatæ sanitati restituantur. Nam sicut Hibernica
transferred to-longed-for health are-restored for as the-Irish
Topographia nostra testatur, quanto ad euri partes
Topography our testifies by-as-much to of-the-east-wind the-parts
magis acceditur, tanto cœli faciem quo purior et
more one-approaches by-so-much of-the-sky the-face by-which purer and
subtilior, tanto penetrabilior et inclementior aer illustrat.
subtler by-so-much more-penetrating and more-inclement the-air lights
Quanto vero ad circii zephyrique fines magis
by-as-much however to of-the-northwest-wind and-of-the-west-wind the-bounds more
vergitur, occiduam temperiem quo nubilosior et obtusior,
one-inclines the-western temperateness by-which cloudier and duller
tanto benignior atque salubrior aura fecundat.
by-so-much kinder and healthier the-breeze makes-fertile
Hic claustrales, in claustro sedentes, cum respirandi gratia
here the-cloistered in the-cloister sitting when of-breathing for-the-sake
forte suspiciunt, ad quascunque partes trans alta tectorum
perhaps they-look-up to whatever parts beyond the-high of-the-roofs
culmina, montium vertices quasi cœlum tangentes, et
ridges of-the-mountains the-summits as-if heaven touching and
ipsas plerumque feras, quarum hic copia, in summo
the-very often wild-beasts of-which here plenty on the-top

pascentes, tanquam in ultimo visus horizonte prospiciunt.
grazing as-if on the-farthest of-sight horizon they-see
Hora vero diei quasi circa primam, vel parum ante,
at-the-hour however of-the-day as-it-were about the-first or a-little before
super montium cacumina vix emergens, etiam sereno
above of-the-mountains the-peaks scarcely emerging even in-calm
tempore, corpus hic solare primo conspicitur.
weather the-body here solar first is-seen
Vere locus contemplationi idoneus, locus felix et amœnus, locus
truly a-place for-contemplation suitable a-place happy and pleasant a-place
a primæva institutione sibi sufficiens et fecundus; nisi
from the-first institution to-itself sufficient and fruitful had-not
ob Anglicani luxus opulentiam, et lautæ mensæ gloriam,
for of-English luxury the-opulence and of-a-sumptuous table the-glory
ambitiosa quadam intemperantia, vitio quoque ingratitudinis
by-ambitious a-certain intemperance with-the-vice also of-ingratitude
invalescente, in servitutem quæ libera fuerat, prælatorum pariter
growing-strong into servitude which free had-been of-the-prelates equally
et patronorum negligentia, jam redacta, non minus invide
and of-the-patrons by-the-negligence already reduced no less enviously
quam invise matrem filia facta privigna supplantasset.
than hatefully the-mother the-daughter made a-stepdaughter supplanted
Hic autem mihi notabile videtur, quod priores omnes,
here however to-me notable it-seems that the-priors all
locum de quo loquimur adversantes, flagellati divinitus
the-place about which we-speak opposing scourged divinely
occubuere. Prior Guillelmus, qui prius armentis et armariis
fell prior William who first of-herds and of-book-chests
locum spoliavit, demum dejectus a fratribus et depositus,
the-place despoiled at-last cast-out by the-brothers and deposed
inter priores sepulturam non meruit. Clemens vero, qui
among the-priors burial not deserved Clement however who

quanquam locum, lectionis et orationis gratia, diligere et
although the-place of-reading and of-prayer for-the-sake to-love and
frequentare videretur, tamen ad exemplum Hely sacerdotis,
to-frequent seemed nevertheless after the-example of-Eli the-priest
quoniam diripientium et delinquentium fratrum errorem nec
since of-the-plundering and offending brothers the-error neither
reprehendit nec repressit, paralytica passione percussus interiit.
he-rebuked nor repressed by-paralytic affliction struck died
Rogerus autem, qui plus ceteris locum infestans, et
Roger however who more than-the-others the-place harassing and
cuncta quæ ab aliis relicta videbantur palam asportans, libris,
all-things which by others left seemed openly carrying-off of-books
ornamentis, et privilegiis ecclesiam ex toto privavit, longe
ornaments and privileges the-church from the-whole deprived long
ante obitum paralysim incurrens, et honori cedens, diutino
before death paralysis incurring and from-office withdrawing by-long
languore consumptus, vitam pariter et valetudinem terminavit.
languor consumed life equally and health ended
Tempore vero Anglorum regis Henrici primi, matre
in-the-time however of-the-English king Henry first with-the-mother
florente tam rerum affluentia quam religione famosissima,
flourishing as-much of-things in-affluence as in-religion most-famous
quæ tamen duo comitantia raro reperies, filia quippe
which however two-things accompanying rarely you-will-find the-daughter indeed
matris æmula nondum genita, utinam et ab ævo non
of-the-mother the-rival not-yet begotten would-that also from the-age not
gignenda, Rogerum Salisburiensem episcopum, principalem
to-be-begotten Roger of-Salisbury bishop the-principal
regni tunc sub rege rectorem, huc fama tantæ
of-the-kingdom then under the-king ruler hither the-fame of-so-great
religionis attraxit. Virtus enimvero est, virtutem diligere vel
religion drew virtue for-indeed it-is virtue to-love even

in altero; et magnum innatæ bonitatis indicium, ipsa quæ
in another and a-great of-inborn goodness sign the-very which
necdum vitaveris vitia animi judicio devovere. Hic,
not-yet you-have-avoided vices of-mind by-the-judgment to-curse he
cum aliquamdiu loci naturam, eremiticam solitudinem,
when for-a-while of-the-place the-nature the-hermit solitude
fratrum ibidem canonice viventium, Deoque servientium
of-the-brothers there canonically living and-to-God serving
sine querela, sanctam et sine murmure conversationem, in
without complaint holy and without murmur conduct in
singulis admirans considerasset, reversus ad regem, relatisque
each-thing wondering-at he-had-considered returned to the-king and-with-reported
quæ ibi repererat relatione dignis, cum maximam
the-things-which there he-had-found of-report worthy when the-greatest
diei partem in loci præscripti titulos expendisset,
of-the-day part on of-the-place aforesaid the-titles he-had-spent
tandem in hoc verbo laudis præconia consummavit: "Quid,"
at-length in this word of-praise the-proclamations he-completed what
inquit, "plura? Totus tam regis quam regni thesaurus
he-says more the-whole as-much of-the-king as of-the-kingdom treasury
soli claustro erigendo non sufficeret." Cum itaque tam
for-the-sole cloister to-be-raised not would-suffice when therefore as-much
regis quam curiæ totius animos in hujus verbi stuporem
of-the-king as of-the-court whole the-minds in of-this word the-amazement
diutius suspendisset, tandem de montium claustris,
for-long he-had-held-suspended at-length about of-the-mountains the-cloisters
quibus undique vallantur, ænigma sermonis exposuit.
by-which on-all-sides they-are-walled the-riddle of-the-saying he-explained
Miles autem, cui nomen Guillelmus, qui primus loci illius
the-knight however to-whom the-name William who first of-place that
inventor fuit et cultor, necnon et presbyter Ernisius, qui se
discoverer was and cultivator and-also also the-priest Ernisius who himself

socium ei statim adjunxerat, quoniam juxta Ieronimi
as-companion to-him at-once had-joined since according-to of-Jerome
sententiam forsitan audierant, sicut et in Vitis Patrum
the-opinion perhaps they-had-heard as also in the-Lives of-the-Fathers
legitur, Christi ecclesiam postquam crevit possessionibus
is-read of-Christ the-church after it-grew in-possessions
decrevisse virtutibus, de vitiis pariter et divitiis incrementa
to-have-decreased in-virtues from vices equally and riches the-increases
sumendo, devotis ad Dominum orationibus in publica
taking with-devout to the-Lord prayers in public
audientia sæpius efflagitare solebant, ut nunquam ad magnas
hearing often to-demand were-wont that never to great
possessionum opulentias locus iste perveniret: quoties imprimis
of-possessions opulences place this should-come whenever at-first
seu domini et patroni sui Hugonis de Lacy primi et primævi,
either of-lord and patron his Hugh of Lacy the-first and eldest
seu aliorum fidelium largitione, tam terris quam beneficiis
or of-other faithful-men by-the-bounty as-much in-lands as in-benefices
ecclesiasticis cœpit locus hic locupletari, dolentes valde.
ecclesiastical began place this to-be-enriched grieving greatly
Plurima quoque, tam in prædiis quam ecclesiis in primis
very-many-things also as-much in estates as churches at first
oblata, paupertatis amore respuerunt. Et in eremo positi,
offered of-poverty for-love they-refused and in the-wilderness placed
ne ab eremitica vita recederent, loci condensa, quibus
lest from the-hermit life they-should-withdraw of-the-place the-thickets by-which
in hispidam silvam vallis excreverat, in planitiem redigi
into a-shaggy wood the-valley had-grown into plain to-be-reduced
et extirpari non permiserunt. Unde et effectum est ut
and to-be-rooted-out not they-allowed whence also brought-about it-was that
quam cito in immensum ditari cœperant et dotari,
as soon into the-immense to-be-enriched they-had-begun and to-be-endowed

statim per Herefordiæ comitem Milonem, hostilitatis tamen
at-once by of-Hereford the-earl Milo of-hostility however
tempore occasionem præstante, filia apud Gloverniam
with-the-time the-occasion furnishing a-daughter at Gloucester
æmula matris emersit; tanquam divina providentia, meritis
rival of-the-mother emerged as-if by-divine providence by-the-merits
quoque sanctorum virorum et precibus, quorum hic corpora
also of-holy men and prayers of-whom here bodies
duo coram principali altari recondita jacent, in superfluis
two before the-principal altar laid-away lie in superfluous
rerum excrementis filia fundaretur, in laudabili quam
of-things excesses the-daughter should-be-founded in praiseworthy which
semper appetiit mediocritate matre manente.
always she-sought moderation with-the-mother remaining
Ibi igitur activi resideant, hic contemplativi. Ibi terrestrium
there therefore let-the-active reside here the-contemplative there of-earthly
ambitus divitiarum, hic cœlestium amor deliciarum. Ibi
the-pursuit of-riches here of-heavenly the-love of-delights there
frequentiam habeant populorum, hic præsentiam appetant
the-throng let-them-have of-peoples here the-presence let-them-seek
angelorum. Ibi mundi potentes suscipiantur, hic Christi
of-angels there of-the-world the-powerful let-be-received here of-Christ
pauperes reficiantur. Ibi, inquam, actiones perstrepant et
the-poor let-be-refreshed there I-say actions let-resound and
declamationes, hic vero lectiones obmurmurent et orationes.
declamations here however readings let-murmur and prayers
Ibi vitiorum nutrix atque creatrix cum curis crescat et
there of-vices the-nurse and creator with cares let-grow also
opulentia; hic virtutis alumna, mediocritas aurea, suppetat,
opulence here of-virtue the-foster-child moderation golden let-suffice
et moderantia.
and moderation

Utrinque tamen, tam hic quam ibi, quæ aliis hodie
on-both-sides however as-much here as there that-which than-other today
cunctis præeminet ordinibus, ab Augustino instituta canonica
all is-preeminent orders by Augustine instituted the-canonical
servatur disciplina. Benedicti namque regulam, in primæva
is-kept discipline of-Benedict for the-rule in the-first
paupertate laudatissimam, rerum opulentia postmodum fervore
poverty most-praised of-things opulence afterward by-the-fervor
caritatis plurimum adaucta, et fidelium largitione multiplicata,
of-charity very-much increased and of-the-faithful by-the-largesse multiplied
sub pravæ dispensationis obtentu crapula jugis et copia
under of-depraved management the-pretext surfeiting continual and plenty
corruperunt. Cisterciensis autem ordo, spontaneo pristinæ
corrupted the-Cistercian however order by-a-spontaneous of-former
paupertatis et sanctitatis desiderio nuper a priore derivatus,
poverty and holiness desire lately from the-former derived
in primis similiter digne laudari meruit et extolli: donec
at first likewise worthily to-be-praised deserved and to-be-extolled until
iterum cæca malorum mater obrepsit ambitio, nescia
again the-blind of-evils mother crept-in ambition not-knowing
successibus modum ponere. Quoniam, ut ait Seneca, “Facit
on-successes a-limit to-set since as says Seneca makes
quidem avidos nimia felicitas: nec tam temperatæ cupiditates
indeed greedy too-much happiness nor so tempered desires
unquam, ut in eo quod contingit desinant. Gradus a magnis
ever as in that which befalls cease a-step from great-things

ad majora fit; et spes improbissimas amplectuntur insperata
to greater is-made and hopes most-shameless they-embrace the-unhoped-for
assecuti." Cui et illud Ovidii concordare videtur;
having-attained with-which also that of-Ovid to-agree seems

"Luxuriant animi rebus plerumque secundis:
"Grow-wanton minds in-things mostly prosperous:
Nec facile est æqua commoda mente pati."
Nor easy is-it with-even good-fortune mind to-bear."

Et illud ejusdem;
and that of-the-same

"Creverunt et opes, et opum furiosa cupido:
"Have-grown both riches, and of-riches furious desire:
Et cum possideant plurima, plura petunt."
And when they-possess very-many-things, more-things they-seek."

Item et illud Horatii in Libro Carminum;
likewise also that of-Horace in the-Book of-Odes

"Scilicet improbæ
"Truly shameless
Crescunt divitiæ: tamen
Grow riches: nevertheless
Curtæ nescio quid semper abest rei."
To-a-scanty I-know-not what always is-lacking thing."

Et in eodem;
and in the-same

"Crescentem sequitur cura pecuniam,
"Growing follows care money,
Majorumque fames."
And-of-greater-things hunger."

"Multa petentibus
"Many-things to-those-seeking
Desunt multa. Bene est, cui Deus obtulit
Are-lacking many-things. Well it-is, to-whom God has-offered
Parca quod satis est manu."
With-sparing what enough is hand."

Unde et Lucanus;
whence also Lucan

"O vitæ tuta facultas
"O of-life safe means
Pauperis, angustique laris. O munera nondum
Of-the-poor, and-of-the-narrow hearth. O gifts not-yet
Intellecta deûm."
Understood of-the-gods."

Petronius;
Petronius

"Non bibit inter aquas, nec poma fugacia carpit
"Not drinks amid waters, nor apples fleeing plucks
Tantalus infelix, quem sua vota premunt.
Tantalus unhappy, whom his wishes press.
Divitis hæc magni facies erit, omnia late
Of-the-rich this great the-appearance will-be, all-things widely
Qui tenet, et sicco concoquit ore famem."
Who holds, and with-dry digests mouth hunger."

Armentis quippe et equitiis montana, porcis silvestria,
for-herds indeed and stud-horses the-mountains for-pigs the-woods
capris nemorosa, ovibus pascua, pecudibus plana, aratris
for-goats the-groves for-sheep the-pastures for-cattle the-plains for-plows
rura, quanquam revera in se largissima, singula tamen,
the-fields although truly in themselves most-ample each nevertheless
vitio mentis insatiabili, videntur angusta. Ideoque terræ
by-the-vice of-mind insatiable seem narrow and-therefore lands
occupantur, termini transponuntur, fines invaduntur: unde
are-occupied the-boundaries are-moved the-borders are-invaded whence
et nundinæ mercimoniis, et fora litigiis, et curiæ
also the-markets with-wares and the-forums with-lawsuits and the-courts
replentur querimoniis. De talibus autem in Isaia legitur; "Væ
are-filled with-complaints about such-men however in Isaiah it-is-read woe
vobis qui conjungitis domum ad domum, et agrum agro
to-you who join house to house and field to-field
copulatis usque ad terminum loci. Numquid habitabitis soli
couple up-to to the-limit of-the-place surely-not will-you-dwell alone
vos in medio terræ?" Si ergo sic invehitur propheta in
you in the-middle of-the-earth if therefore so inveighs the-prophet against
eos qui usque ad terminum, quid in illos dicetur, qui longe
those who up-to to the-limit what against those will-be-said who far
ultra terminos? His igitur ex causis et similibus effectum
beyond the-limits for-these therefore from causes and like-ones brought-about
est, ut veræ religionis color optimus adeo in falsitatis
it-has-been that of-true religion the-color best so-much into of-falseness

fucum sit jam conversus, adeo nigri interius mores candidis
the-dye be now turned so-much black within manners with-white
velantur operimentis, adeo, inquam, interioris olim habitus
are-veiled coverings so-much I-say of-the-inner once habit

"Qui color albus erat nunc est contrarius albo,"
"Which color white was now is contrary to-white,"

ut de his illud evangelicum vere videatur impletum;
that about these that gospel-saying truly may-seem fulfilled
"Attendite ab his qui veniunt ad vos in vestimentis ovium,
beware of these who come to you in garments of-sheep
intrinsecus autem sunt lupi rapaces."
inwardly however are wolves ravening
Tantæ tamen, et tam declamatæ per orbem aviditatis,
of-so-great however and so proclaimed through the-world greed
bona, ut credimus, occasionem præstat intentio. Hospitalitatis
good as we-believe the-occasion furnishes intention of-hospitality
namque gratia, quam hujus ordinis viri, quanquam in se
for for-the-sake which of-this order the-men although in themselves
abstinentissimi, præ aliis cunctis, caritate largiflua in pauperes
most-abstinent beyond others all with-charity flowing to the-poor
et peregrinos infatiganter exercent; et quia non redditibus,
and pilgrims tirelessly exercise and because not on-revenues
ut alii, sed labore solum et providentia vivunt; terras tanto
as others but by-labor alone and providence they-live lands with-so-great
conamine, quibus ad hæc peragenda sufficientiam
effort by-which for these-things to-be-accomplished sufficiency
eliciant, avide perquirunt, prædiaque summopere petunt
they-may-draw-out greedily they-seek-out and-estates very-much seek
et pascua lata. Verumtamen ad reprimendam et removendam
and pastures wide nevertheless for repressing and removing

ab ordine sacro detestandam ambitionis notam, utinam
from the-order holy the-detestable of-ambition stain would-that
illud Salomonis interdum ad animum revocare velint;
that of-Solomon sometimes to mind to-recall they-would-wish
"Qui facit elemosynam de substantia pauperis, tanquam si
he-who makes alms from the-substance of-the-poor as if
filium victimet in conspectu patris." Et illud Gregorii;
the-son he-should-sacrifice in the-sight of-the-father and that of-Gregory
"Bonus usus non justificat male quæsita." [Item et illud
good use not justifies ill the-things-acquired likewise also that
Ambrosii; "Qui male accipit ut bene dispenset, gravatur
of-Ambrose he-who ill receives that well he-may-dispense is-burdened
potius quam juvatur." Tales enim cum Apostolo dicere
rather than is-helped such-men for with the-Apostle to-say
videntur, "Faciamus mala ut veniant bona." Scriptum est
seem let-us-do evil that may-come good written it-is
enim, "Talis debet esse misericordia quæ suscipiatur, non quæ
for such ought to-be mercy which may-be-received not which
repellatur; quæ peccata purget, non quæ reum faciat ante
may-be-rejected which sins may-purge not which guilty may-make before
Dominum; de justis laboribus tuis, non de rebus alienis."
the-Lord from just labors your not from things others'
Audi Salomonem dicentem; "Honora Dominum de tuis justis
hear Solomon saying honor the-Lord from your just
laboribus." Quid dicturi sunt qui aliena rapiunt, et
labors what about-to-say are those-who others'-things seize and
elemosynas fecerunt? O Domine, in nomine tuo misericordias
alms have-made O Lord in name your mercies
fecimus, pauperes pavimus, nudos vestivimus, peregrinos
we-have-done the-poor we-have-fed the-naked we-have-clothed pilgrims
hospitio recepimus. Quibus dicturus est Dominus; Quod
in-hospitality we-have-received to-whom about-to-say is the-Lord what

dedistis dicitis, quod fecistis rapinam non dicitis: quos
you-have-given you-say what you-have-done plunder not you-say whom
pavistis memoratis, et quos necastis non recordamini.]
you-have-fed you-recall and whom you-have-killed not you-remember
Exemplum autem de responso Ricardi regis Anglorum, facto
an-example however of the-answer of-Richard king of-the-English made
magistro Fulconi viro bono et sancto, per quem Deus in
to-master Fulk a-man good and holy through whom God in
Francorum regno nostris diebus multa proculdubio signa fecit,
of-the-Franks the-kingdom in-our days many without-doubt signs did
et hic interserere præter rem non putavi. Cum inter cetera
also here to-insert beside the-point not I-thought when among other-things
vir ille sanctus regi dixisset; "Tres filias habetis, quæ
man that holy to-the-king had-said three daughters you-have which
quamdiu penes vos fuerint, nunquam Dei gratiam habere
as-long-as with you they-shall-have-been never of-God the-grace to-have
poteritis; superbiam scilicet, luxuriam, et cupiditatem." Cui
will-you-be-able pride namely luxury and greed to-whom
rex, post modicam quasi pausationem, "Jam," inquit, "maritavi
the-king after a-little as-if pause already he-says I-have-married
filias istas, et nuptui dedi; Templariis superbiam,
daughters those and in-marriage have-given to-the-Templars pride
nigris monachis luxuriam, albis vero cupiditatem."
to-the-black monks luxury to-the-white however greed
[Id etiam pro valde mirando, de loco præscripto Lanthonei
this also for very wonderful about the-place aforesaid Llanthony
dicto, vel potius quasi pro miraculo duximus, quod in
called or rather as-if for a-miracle we-have-reckoned that on
summis quibus clauditur undique montium verticibus, non
the-highest by-which it-is-enclosed on-all-sides of-the-mountains summits not
petrosis aut saxosis, sed mollibus magis et herbosis, Parii
stony or rocky but soft rather and grassy Parian

lapides reperiri soleant; qui et Liberi vulgo dicuntur, quia
stones to-be-found are-wont which also Free commonly are-called because
secabiles, ferroque quodam modo polibiles, sese quasi
cuttable and-with-iron in-a-certain manner polishable themselves as-if
liberaliter præstant; ex quibus ecclesia ipsorum jam extat
liberally they-offer from which the-church their now stands
egregie constructa. Super quo quidem et hoc mirandum,
excellently built over which indeed also this to-be-wondered-at
quod quæsitis ad unguem per montana lapidibus illis, et
that with-sought to the-nail through the-mountains stones those and
ex toto prorsus abstractis, nullisque relictis qui reperiri
from the-whole wholly drawn-out and-with-none left which to-be-found
ibidem amplius possent, infra tertium aut quartum diem
there further could within the-third or fourth day
iterum requisiti, tanquam dono seipsos offerentes, et se
again sought as-if as-a-gift themselves offering and themselves
quærentibus ostendentes, in copiosa multitudine reperiuntur.]
to-those-seeking showing in copious multitude are-found
De duobus tamen ordinibus istis, Cluniacensi scilicet et
about the-two however orders these the-Cluniac namely and
Cisterciensi, hoc compertum habeas. Locum ædificiis
the-Cistercian this ascertained you-may-hold a-place with-buildings
egregie constructum, redditibus amplis et possessionibus
excellently built with-revenues ample and possessions
locupletatum, istis hodie tradas; inopem in brevi
enriched to-those today you-may-hand-over poor in short
destructumque videbis. Illis e diverso eremum nudam,
and-destroyed you-will-see to-these on the-contrary a-wilderness bare
et hispidam silvam assignes: intra paucos postmodum
and a-shaggy wood you-may-assign within few afterward
annos, non solum ecclesias et ædes insignes, verum etiam
years not only churches and buildings remarkable but also

possessionum copias, et opulentias multas ibidem invenies.
of-possessions abundances and opulences many there you-will-find
Hanc autem diversitatem, ut mihi videtur, morum diversitas
this however diversity as to-me it-seems of-manners diversity
parit et studiorum. Ut enim, salva utrorumque venia,
begets and of-pursuits that for with-saved of-both leave
veritati non parcam, illinc sobrietas juvat, parcimonia pariter
the-truth not I-may-spare there sobriety helps thrift equally
et providentia; hinc vero voracitas obest, ventris ingluvies
and providence here however voracity harms of-the-belly gluttony
et intemperantia. Illi namque, tanquam apes, in unum
and intemperance those for as-if bees into one
congerunt omnes et congregant, unanimitate conspicui; uno
gather all and collect for-unanimity conspicuous with-one
omnium existente loculo, et illo bene disposito. Isti vero
of-all being purse and that well disposed these however
congesta diutius, et devota fidelium largitione collata,
the-things-gathered long and by-devout of-the-faithful largesse conferred
diversis distrahunt animis et diripiunt indesinenter; multis
with-different scatter minds and plunder unceasingly with-many
existentibus et multorum loculis, quibus dum studiosius
being and of-many purses on-which while more-zealously
singuli tanquam propriis indulgent, minus proficitur in
each as-if own they-indulge less it-is-profited in
commune: quoniam, ut ait Salustius, “Concordia parvæ res
common since as says Sallust by-concord small things
crescunt, discordia [vero] maximæ dilabuntur.” Præterea isti, de
grow by-discord however the-greatest fall-apart moreover these of
decem ferculis vel tredecim, quæ sibi de consuetudinis
ten dishes or thirteen which to-themselves from of-custom
solo jure deberi contendunt, ingruente famis inedia,
by-alone right to-be-owed they-contend with-pressing of-famine want

priusquam unum ad tempus intermitterent, terras domus
sooner-than one for a-time they-would-omit the-lands of-house
suæ et prædia magna distrahi penitus et in perpetuum
their and estates great to-be-sold wholly and for ever
alienari permitterent; pauperes quoque catervatim ad januas
to-be-alienated would-allow the-poor also in-crowds at the-gates
occumbere, et fame deficere, non miserendo sustinerent.
to-fall and from-hunger to-fail not by-pitying would-endure
Illi vero, sicut et canonici, priusquam pauperem unum
those however as also the-canons sooner-than a-poor-man one
enormiter egere conspicerent, duorum quibus fere solis
enormously to-be-in-need should-see of-two of-which almost alone
utuntur pulmentariorum altero zelo caritatis abstinerent.
they-make-use relishes from-one by-zeal of-charity would-abstain

ABERGAVENNY

The Cistercians have now forbidden buying land, and Gerald is content with a small place near Brecon. On the way to Abergavenny the party passed the wood where Iorwerth's Welsh killed Richard de Clare, who rode in unarmed behind a fiddler. A noble named Arthen took the cross without asking his wife. Of a massacre at Abergavenny Henry II was the author and Ranulf Poer the contriver; seven years later the sons of the slain took the castle, Ranulf was killed at Llandinegath, though he died confessed, and William de Braose, its executor, escaped. The archers of Gwent shoot through an oak door a palm thick with bows of rough elm.

His autem nostris diebus, ut tanquam a niveo corpore
in-these however our days that as-if from a-snowy body
nævus abstergatur, in Cisterciensi capitulo statutum est,
a-blemish might-be-wiped-off in the-Cistercian chapter decreed it-has-been
ne ab hoc unquam in posterum ordine, pretio quolibet,
that-not by this ever in future order at-price any

prædia vel pascua comparentur; tantum illa de cetero sufficiant,
estates or pastures be-bought only those for the-rest suffice
quæ gratis obveniunt, et absque gravamine conferuntur.
which freely come and without burden are-conferred
Prædictus igitur ordo canonicus, plus aliis mediocritate
the-aforesaid therefore order canonical more than-others with-moderation
contentus atque modestia, etsi non plene, plurimum tamen
content and modesty though not fully very-much nevertheless
ambitioni stringit habenas; et in mundo positus, mundi
to-ambition tightens the-reins and in the-world placed of-the-world
pro posse contagia vitans, nec crapula notabilis nec
according-to ability the-contagions avoiding neither for-surfeit notable nor
temulentia, pro luxu rerum sive libidine publicum in
for-drunkenness for luxury of-things or lust public among
populo scandalum incurrere tam verecundatur quam veretur.
the-people scandal to-incur as-much it-is-ashamed as it-fears
Sicut in libro quem de ecclesiasticis ordinibus, Deo
as in the-book which about ecclesiastical orders with-God
annuente, scripturi sumus, plenius explicabitur.
nodding about-to-write we-are more-fully it-will-be-explained
Præscriptis igitur in finibus temperatissimis, etsi non omen
in-the-aforesaid therefore in bounds most-temperate though not an-omen
quoad gazas grande, tragicasque mundi pompas adeptus,
as-to treasures great and-the-tragic of-the-world pomps having-obtained
juxta usualia tamen vocabula nomen dignitatis obtinui;
according-to usual however words the-name of-dignity I-obtained
collateralem et propinquum principali de Brecheniauc castro
a-collateral and near to-the-principal of Brecknock castle
loculum habens et domicilium, felici quadam mediocritate
little-place having and dwelling by-happy a-certain moderation
studiis idoneum atque labori. Quem suis semper deliciis
for-studies suitable and for-labor which by-its always delights

plenum, et æternitatis amicum, Cresi divitiis longe
full and of-eternity friendly of-Croesus than-riches far
præfero; quinimmo cunctis, quæ perire ac præterire possunt,
I-prefer nay-rather to-all which to-perish and to-pass-away can
incomparabiliter antepono. Sed ad rem revertamur.
incomparably I-set-before but to the-matter let-us-return
De transitu per Coid Wroneu et Abergavenni, cum
about the-passage through Coed Grwyne and Abergavenny with
notabilibus suis.
notable-things its
Transivimus inde versus Abergevenni, per arctum illud
we-passed thence toward Abergavenny through narrow that
silvestre quod malum passum de Coit Wroneu, id est,
woodland which the-bad pass of Coed Grwyne that is
de silva Wroneu vocant, nobile cœnobium de Lanthotheni,
of the-wood Grwyne they-call the-noble monastery of Llanthony
montibus suis inclusum, a latere sinistro relinquentes. Dicitur
by-mountains its enclosed on the-side left leaving is-called
autem Abergevenni castrum eo loco situm, ubi fluvius
however Abergavenny the-castle in-that place situated where the-river
Gevenni in Oscham cadit. Contigit autem, paulo post obitum
Gavenny into the-Usk falls it-happened however a-little after the-death
Anglorum regis Henrici primi, nobilem et magnificum virum
of-the-English king Henry first the-noble and magnificent man
Ricardum Clarensem, qui cum honore de Clara Kereticam
Richard of-Clare who with the-honor of Clare the-Cardigan
regionem in australi Kambria possidebat, ab Anglia in
region in southern Wales possessed from England into
Walliam hac transire. Et cum provinciæ illius tunc dominum,
Wales here to-pass and when of-province that then the-lord
Brienum videlicet Gualinfordensem, cum militibus multis, usque
Brian namely of-Wallingford with knights many up-to

ad passum prædictum socium habuisset et deductorem,
to the-pass aforesaid as-companion he-had-had and guide
tam ipsum, invitum [tamen], in ipso silvæ ingressu
as-much him unwilling however at the-very of-the-wood entry
cum suis remisit, quam contra ejusdem monita silvam
with his-men he-sent-back as against his warnings the-wood
inermis intravit: ex nimia quoque securitatis præsumptione,
unarmed he-entered from too-great also of-security presumption
fidicinem prævium habens, et præcentorem, cantilenæ notulis
a-fiddler going-before having and a-precentor of-song with-notes
alternatim in fidicula respondentem. Nec mora. Gualenses
alternately on the-little-fiddle answering nor delay the-Welsh
qui adventum ejus exploraverant, Iereverdus scilicet Morgani
who the-coming his had-spied-out Iorwerth namely of-Morgan
frater de Kairleon cum eorundem familia, silvosis e
brother of Caerleon with of-them the-household from-wooded from
latebris irruentes in improvisos, statim ipso cum suorum
hiding-places rushing on the-unprepared at-once with-him with of-his-men
multis interempto, præda potiti sunt cruentissima.
many killed of-the-booty possessed-themselves have most-bloody
Ex variis itaque patet rerum eventibus, quoniam incauta
from various therefore it-is-plain of-things events that incautious
est semper nimia præsumptio, et sui negligens. Timor
is always excessive presumption and of-itself neglectful fear
enim prospicere futuris admonet, et diligentiam docet in
for to-look-ahead to-future-things admonishes and diligence teaches in
prosperis: audacia vero præcipitanter obrepit, et inconsulta
prosperity boldness however headlong creeps-on and ill-advised
temeritas nescit consilium ducis exspectare.
rashness knows-not the-counsel of-the-leader to-await

Sermone igitur apud Abergevenni facto, plurimisque ad
with-a-sermon therefore at Abergavenny made and-very-many to
crucem conversis, vir quidam nobilis partium illarum, cui
the-cross converted a-man certain noble of-parts those to-whom
nomen Arthenus, ad archiepiscopum versus castellum Oschæ
the-name Arthen to the-archbishop toward the-castle of-Usk
jam properantem humiliter accessit; quod ei citius non
already hurrying humbly approached that him sooner not
occurrerat veniam petens. Super crucis itaque susceptione
he-had-met pardon seeking about of-the-cross therefore the-taking
conventus, "Absque amicorum," inquit, "consilio res hæc
addressed without of-friends he-says the-counsel thing this
fieri non debet." Cui archiepiscopus; "Numquid ergo
to-be-done not ought to-whom the-archbishop surely-not therefore
cum uxore tua habiturus es inde consilium?" At ille
with wife your about-to-have are-you thence counsel but he
vultu demisso verecunde respondit; "Ad aggrediendum,"
with-face downcast modestly answered for undertaking
inquit, "opus virile, non est expetendum consilium muliebre."
he-says a-work manly not is to-be-sought counsel womanly
Et statim ab archiepiscopo crucem suscepit.
and at-once from the-archbishop the-cross took
Super excessibus autem partium istarum creberrimis et
about the-excesses however of-parts these most-frequent and
cruentissimis, nunc provincialium in castellanos, nunc
most-bloody now of-the-provincials against the-castellans now
vice versa, vindicis animi talionibus, castellanorum in
in-turn reversed by-avenging of-mind retaliations of-the-castellans against
provinciales, quæ nostris accidere temporibus, aliis explicare
the-provincials which in-our to-happen times to-others to-unfold
materiam damus. Ultimi tamen excessus enormis, cædisque
the-matter we-give of-the-last however excess enormous and-of-slaughter

cruentæ, nostris diebus hic perpetratæ, quam præterire tamen,
bloody in-our days here perpetrated which to-pass-over however
ne scelerosis in exemplum trahi possit, satius existimavi,
lest by-the-wicked into an-example to-be-drawn it-can better I-judged
vere auctor extiterat Anglorum rex Henricus secundus;
truly the-author had-been of-the-English king Henry second
vicecomes autem Herefordiæ, Ranulphus Poerius, machinator.
the-sheriff however of-Hereford Ranulf Poer the-contriver
Sed quanquam turpi ex causa temporalis interdum sequi
but although from-foul from cause temporal sometimes to-follow
commoditas videatur, justi tamen judicis libramine,
advantage may-seem of-the-just nevertheless judge by-the-balance
pœna sceleris etsi differtur, vel in tempore vel post
the-penalty of-crime even-if it-is-deferred either in time or after
tempora non evitatur; juxta illud poetæ,
times not is-avoided according-to that of-the-poet

"Non habet eventus sordida præda bonos."
"Not has outcomes foul plunder good."

Cum enim, septennali jam spatio, in partibus illis pax secuta
when for of-seven-years already for-a-space in parts those peace followed
fuisset tranquillissima, tandem interemptorum nepotes et filii,
had most-tranquil at-length of-the-slain the-grandsons and sons
ex pueris adulti, [et] ex parvis interim majores effecti, ira
from boys grown and from small meanwhile greater made with-anger
vindice deferventes, captata domini absentia, intra fruticosa
avenging boiling with-seized of-the-lord the-absence within the-bushy
castri ejusdem fossata, cum manu non invalida, se in insidiis
of-castle the-same ditches with a-band not weak themselves in ambush
nocte contulerunt. Dixerat autem unus eorum, cui nomen
at-night betook had-said moreover one of-them to-whom the-name

Seisillus filius Eudas, constabulario, die præcedente, quasi
Seisyll son of-Eudaf to-the-constable on-the-day preceding as-if
præmuniendo, sub risu tamen et ludicro magis quam serio;
forewarning under laughter however and in-jest more than in-earnest
"Hic," inquit, "hac nocte intrabimus;" ostendens muri ipsius
here he-says on-this night we-shall-enter showing of-the-wall itself
angulum quemdam, ubi demissior esse videbatur. Sed quoniam
an-angle certain where lower to-be it-seemed but since

"Ridendo dicere verum
"Laughing to-tell the-truth
Quis vetat?"
Who forbids?"

et quoniam
and since

"Fas est ab hoste doceri;"
"Right it-is from an-enemy to-be-taught;"

constabularius, cum familia tota, noctem illam in armis et
the-constable with household whole night that in arms and
vigiliis usque ad auroram duxit insomnem. Sed cum demum
vigils up-to to dawn passed sleepless but when at-last
labore fatigati, et imminentis diei beneficio securitatem
with-labor wearied and of-the-coming day by-the-benefit security
adepti, somno se cuncti dedissent, statim hostes, per
having-gained to-sleep themselves all had-given at-once the-enemies by
scalas quas congesserant, loco prænotato se muris
ladders which they-had-gathered at-the-place noted themselves onto-the-walls
ingerentes, captis constabulario et uxore sua cum aliis
thrusting with-captured the-constable and wife his with others

multis, præter turrem principalem et paucos qui in ipsam
many except the-tower principal and few who into it
aufugerant, violenter occupant et incendunt universa: justo
had-fled violently occupy and burn all by-just
Dei judicio, eo quo delictum est loco perpetratum,
of-God judgment in-the-same in-which the-fault was place committed
pœna delicti ex parte secuta.
the-penalty of-the-fault in part following
Præterea, parum post castri prædicti proditionem, cum juxta
moreover a-little after of-castle the-aforesaid the-betrayal when near
Monemutam prædictus Herefordiæ vicecomes, videlicet apud
Monmouth the-aforesaid of-Hereford sheriff namely at
Landinegath, cum exercitu Herefordiæ castrum erigeret,
Llandinegath with the-army of-Hereford a-castle was-raising
nocte quadam, cum adhuc tenuiter tenebras exuere cœpisset
on-night a-certain when still thinly the-darkness to-put-off had-begun

"Titoni croceum linquens Aurora cubile,"
"Of-Tithonus the-saffron leaving Aurora couch,"

summo superveniente diluculo, tam Guintæ quam vicinarum
with-highest coming-on dawn as-much of-Gwent as of-neighboring
gentium juventute, cum interemptorum adulta jam prole,
peoples with-the-youth with of-the-slain grown now offspring
non præoccupati, non desubitati, non adventus hujus ignari,
not forestalled not taken-by-surprise not of-coming this ignorant
quinimmo præscii potius et præmuniti, armati quoque
nay-rather forewarned rather and fore-armed armed also
et in turmas ordinati, statim tamen sunt confecti; et
and into troops ordered at-once nevertheless they-were finished and
inter propria jam fossata repulsi, de potioribus et primis
within own already ditches driven-back of the-stronger and foremost

Herefordensis provinciæ militaribus viris cum ipso novem,
of-the-Hereford province military men with him nine
præter alios multos, lanceis ibidem sunt confossi.
besides others many with-lances there were pierced
De Ranulpho tamen hoc mirandum, quod præter vulnera
about Ranulf however this to-be-wondered-at that besides the-wounds
quæ letaliter in corpore suscepit plurima, cum ferro quoque
which fatally in body he-received very-many with iron also
jugulatus fuisset, venis omnibus et arteriis cum via
throat-cut had-been with-veins all and arteries with the-way
spiritus et halitus organo pariter præcisis, sacerdotem
of-breath and of-the-breath with-the-organ equally cut a-priest
tamen annuens et asciscens, aliquo revera anteactæ vitæ
nevertheless nodding and summoning with-some truly of-former life
merito id exigente, eoque præcipue, ut creditur, quod in
merit this demanding and-by-that especially as is-believed that into
sortem Christi electos præ aliis honorare consueverat et
the-lot of-Christ chosen beyond others to-honor he-had-been-accustomed and
venerari, facta confessione, et viatico devote percepto,
to-venerate with-made confession and the-viaticum devoutly received
statim spiritum exhalavit. Frequens enim est, et creberrimis
at-once the-spirit breathed-out frequent for it-is and by-most-frequent
declaratum experimentis, quod sicut debito clerum honore
declared experiences that as with-due the-clergy honor
dignantes sacerdotali in extremis solatio ex consuetudine
deeming-worthy with-priestly in extremities solace from custom
gaudent, sic, e diverso, cleri derisores et malignos
rejoice so from the-opposite of-the-clergy the-mockers and malicious
delatores eodem solatio frequentissime fraudari videbis optato.
informers of-the-same solace very-often to-be-cheated you-will-see longed-for

Guillelmus autem de Breusa, qui vere non auctor sceleris, quod
William however of Braose who truly not the-author of-the-crime which
potius tacere decrevimus quam exprimere, non machinator
rather to-keep-silent we-have-decided than to-express not the-contriver
extiterat, sed vel executor, vel executionis non impeditor,
had-been but either the-executor or of-execution not the-hinderer
carnificum turbis mandato desuper accepto atrociter
of-butchers with-the-crowds with-command from-above received fiercely
desævientibus, eodem conflictu in imum fossæ præruptæ
raging in-the-same conflict into the-bottom of-the-ditch steep
est præcipitatus, ibique ab hostibus, et viris inimicissimis
was hurled and-there by enemies and men most-hostile
captus et extractus; vivus tamen, divina miseratione, per
captured and drawn-out alive nevertheless by-divine mercy through
impetum subito a suis factum, et omnino illæsus evasit.
a-rush suddenly by his-men made and wholly unharmed escaped
Ex quo patet, quia minus offendit, mitiusque punitur,
from which it-is-plain that less offends and-more-mildly is-punished
invitus qui facit, fierive permittit, quam qui facto
unwilling he-who does or-to-be-done allows than he-who to-the-deed
consilium simul et auctoritatem adhibuit. Quod in Christi
counsel at-once and authority applied which in of-Christ
passione palam fuit; ubi et Judas suspendio, Judæi excidio
the-passion openly was where both Judas by-hanging the-Jews by-destruction
pariter et exterminio, Pylatus exilio pœnas luit.
equally and extermination Pilate by-exile penalties paid
Prædicto vero de rege, qui proditioni assensum præbuit, et
the-aforesaid however about king who to-the-betrayal assent gave and
præceptum fecit, qualiter ob hoc, et alia multa enormis
the-command made how on-account-of this and other many of-enormous
vitæ delicta, sicut in libro De Principis instructione Deo
life the-faults as in the-book On of-the-Prince the-Instruction with-God

duce propalabimus, ad ampliorem ignominiæ cumulum, etiam
leading we-shall-make-known to fuller of-ignominy heap even
in terris pœnas inchoavit, confusione plenus et ærumna,
on earth penalties he-began with-confusion full and misery
finis ejusdem declaravit.
the-end his declared
Hoc autem mihi notabile videtur, quod gens hæc, quæ
this however to-me notable it-seems that people this which
Guintæ gens vocatur, et martiis conflictibus usitatissima,
of-Gwent the-people is-called and in-martial conflicts most-practiced
et strenuitatis opera laudatissima, et arte sagittifera
and of-vigor in-works most-praised and in-the-art of-archery
præ ceteris Walliæ finibus instructissima reperitur. Ad hujus
beyond the-other of-Wales bounds most-skilled is-found for of-this
autem assertionis ultimæ certitudinem, exempla proponere
however assertion last the-certainty examples to-set-forth
pauca non pigeat. In prætaxata castri proditione, militibus
a-few not let-it-irk in the-aforesaid of-the-castle betrayal with-knights
duobus in turrim, cumulato terrarum aggere sitam, per
two into a-tower with-heaped of-earth mound situated over
pontem transfugientibus, Gualenses, ut ipsos a tergo
a-bridge fleeing the-Welsh that them from behind
percuterent, sagittas arcu mittentes, portam turris
they-might-strike arrows from-the-bow sending the-gate of-the-tower
iliceam, palmalis fere spissitudinis, transpenetrarunt;
of-holm-oak of-a-palm-wide almost thickness pierced
ad tantorum ictuum vehementiæ perpetuam memoriam,
for of-so-great blows the-vehemence a-perpetual memory
sagittis in porta ferro repercusso reservatis.
with-the-arrows in the-gate with-the-iron beaten-back kept

Accidit et tempore Guillelmi de Breusa, ipso testante,
it-happened also in-the-time of-William of Braose with-him-himself witnessing
quemdam militem suum, in conflictu contra Gualenses, a
a-certain knight his in conflict against the-Welsh by
quodam ipsorum per mediam coxam, cum panno loricæ
a-certain of-them through the-middle thigh with the-cloth of-the-hauberk
ac ocreali ferro utrinque vestitam, sagitta percussum
and with-the-greave iron on-both-sides clothed by-an-arrow struck
esse; eadem quoque sagitta per partem illam
to-have-been with-the-same also arrow through part that
sellæ, quæ Alva vocatur, usque in ipsum equum letaliter
of-the-saddle which the-alva is-called up-to into the-very horse fatally
transpenetrante. Alia quoque sagitta militis alterius coxam,
piercing another also arrow of-a-knight other the-thigh
ferro similiter utrinque munitam cum panno loricæ,
with-iron likewise on-both-sides fortified with the-cloth of-the-hauberk
usque in sellam perforavit. Et cum miles ille loris equum
up-to into the-saddle pierced and when knight that by-the-reins the-horse
in gyrum flecteret, alia sagitta, eodem contorquente, in
into a-circle be-bent another arrow with-the-same hurling in
opposita coxa similem ictum suscepit, equo ab utraque parte
the-opposite thigh a-similar blow be-received to-the-horse on each side
firmiter affixus. Quod igitur a balista tormentum majus
firmly fixed what therefore from a-crossbow the-engine greater
exspectes? Non autem arcu utuntur corneo, non alburneo,
can-you-expect not however a-bow they-use of-horn not of-alburnum
non taxeo: solum ex ulmellis silvestribus arcus formant,
not of-yew only from elms wild bows they-form
non formosos, non politos, immo rudes prorsus et informes;
not handsome not polished nay rough wholly and shapeless
rigidos tamen et fortes: non tantum ad eminus missilia
stiff however and strong not only for from-afar missiles

mittenda, sed etiam ad graves cominus ictus percutiendo
to-be-sent but also for heavy at-close-quarters blows by-striking
tolerandos. Sed a diverticulo iter iterum aggrediamur.
to-be-borne but from the-digression the-journey again let-us-undertake

USK AND CAERLEON

At Usk notorious criminals took the cross. Caerleon, the City of the Legions, keeps its Roman palaces, baths, and conduits, and the martyrs Julius and Aaron lie there. Goldcliff shines like gold above the Severn. Meilyr, who saw spirits after a demon took the form of his love, knew a lie by the demon on the liar's tongue, and John's Gospel drove the spirits off him while Geoffrey's History drew them on. He knew of Abbot Enoch's flight with a nun the day it happened and foretold Hywel's fortunes and the siege of Rouen; Barnabas healed with Matthew's Gospel. Gerald asks how he saw what bodily eyes cannot.

De transitu per Oschæ castrum, et Legionum urbem,
about the-passage through of-the-Usk the-castle and of-the-Legions the-city
cum notabilibus suis.
with notable-things its
Igitur apud Oschæ castrum, tam ad archiepiscopi
therefore at of-the-Usk the-castle as-much at of-the-archbishop
sermonem, quam ad viri boni et honesti Guillelmi
the-sermon as at of-the-man good and honest William
Landavensis episcopi, qui per suam diocesim nobis fideliter
of-Llandaff bishop who through his diocese to-us faithfully
astitit, persuasionem, Alexandro quoque Bangorensis ecclesiæ
stood-by the-persuasion with-Alexander also of-the-Bangor church
archidiacono ubique ad Gualenses interprete existente,
archdeacon everywhere for the-Welsh interpreter being
multitudo virorum cruce signatur. Ubi et hoc præcipue
a-multitude of-men with-the-cross is-signed where also this especially

notabile occurrit, quod famosissimi partium illarum
notable occurs that the-most-notorious of-parts those
malefactores, homicidæ, prædones, et fures, non absque
evildoers murderers robbers and thieves not without
multorum admiratione sunt conversi.
of-many wonder were converted
Transeuntes inde per Kaerleun, — Munemutæ castrum,
passing thence through Caerleon of-Monmouth the-castle
nobilemque Danubiæ silvam, quæ ferinam ferrique copiam
and-the-noble of-Dean the-forest which of-game and-of-iron plenty
Gloverniæ ministrat, trans Waiam, citraque Sabrinam, longe
to-Gloucester supplies beyond the-Wye and-on-this-side the-Severn far
a læva relinquentes, — in Novoburgo, ter Oscha flumine
on the-left leaving in Newport thrice with-the-Usk river
jam transcurso, pernoctavimus. Dicitur autem Kaerleun
now crossed we-spent-the-night is-called however Caerleon
Legionum urbs. Kaer enim Britannice urbs vel castrum
of-the-Legions the-city caer for in-British a-city or a-castle
dicitur. Solent quippe legiones, a Romanis in insulam missæ,
is-called are-wont indeed the-legions by the-Romans into the-island sent
ibi hiemare; et inde Urbs Legionum dicta est. Erat autem
there to-winter and thence the-City of-the-Legions called it-was was moreover
hæc urbs antiqua et authentica, et a Romanis olim coctilibus
this city ancient and authentic and by the-Romans once with-brick
muris egregie constructa. Videas hic multa pristinæ nobilitatis
walls excellently built you-may-see here many of-former nobility
adhuc vestigia; palatia immensa, aureis olim tectorum fastigiis
still traces palaces immense with-golden once of-roofs gables
Romanos fastus imitantia, eo quod a Romanis principibus
Roman pride imitating on-that because by Roman princes
primo constructa, et ædificiis egregiis illustrata fuissent;
first built and with-buildings remarkable made-illustrious they-had-been

turrim giganteam, thermas insignes, templorum reliquias, et
a-tower gigantic baths remarkable of-temples remains and
loca theatralia; egregiis muris partim adhuc exstantibus
places theatrical with-remarkable walls partly still standing
omnia clausa. Reperies ubique, tam intra murorum ambitum
all enclosed you-will-find everywhere as-much within of-the-walls the-circuit
quam extra, ædificia subterranea, aquarum ductus, hypogeosque
as outside buildings underground of-waters conduits and-underground
meatus. Et quod inter alia notabile censui, stuphas undique
passages and what among other-things notable I-judged stoves on-all-sides
videas miro artificio consertas; lateralibus quibusdam
you-may-see with-wonderful art built by-lateral certain
et præangustis spiraculi viis occulte calorem exhalantibus.
and very-narrow of-vent ways secretly heat breathing-out
Jacent hic duo nobiles, et post Albanum et Amphibalum
lie here two noble and after Alban and Amphibalus
præcipui Britanniæ majoris protomartyres, et ibidem
the-chief of-Britain greater protomartyrs and there
martyrio coronati, Julius scilicet et Aaron: quorum uterque
with-martyrdom crowned Julius namely and Aaron of-whom each
ecclesiam in urbe insignem habebat, suo nomine decoratam.
a-church in the-city remarkable had with-his name adorned
Tres enim egregiæ in hac urbe antiquis temporibus fuerant
three for remarkable in this city in-ancient times had-been
ecclesiæ: una Julii martyris, virgineo Deo dicatarum
churches one of-Julius martyr with-a-virginal to-God of-dedicated-women
choro venustata: altera vero, beati Aaron socii ejusdem
choir graced the-second however of-blessed Aaron companion of-the-same
nomine fundata, et canonicorum ordine præclaro nobilitata:
in-name founded and of-canons with-an-order illustrious ennobled
tertia vero metropolitana sede Kambriæ totius insignita. Fuit
the-third however with-the-metropolitan see of-Wales whole distinguished was

et Amphibalus hinc oriundus, beati Albani doctor, et fidelis
also Amphibalus hence sprung of-blessed Alban the-teacher and faithful
ad fidem informator. Situs urbis egregius, super Oschæ
in the-faith instructor the-site of-the-city excellent above of-the-Usk
flumen; navigio, mari influente, idoneum. Silvis et pratis
the-river for-shipping with-the-sea flowing-in suitable with-woods and meadows
urbs illustrata. Hic magni illius Arthuri famosam curiam
the-city made-illustrious here of-great that Arthur the-famous court
legati adiere Romani. Ubi et Dubritius archiepiscopus David
envoys approached Roman where also Dubricius archbishop to-David
Menevensi cessit honorem; abhinc Meneviam metropolitana
of-St-Davids yielded the-honor thence to-St-Davids with-the-metropolitan
sede translata, juxta illud Merlini Ambrosii, "Menevia
see transferred according-to that of-Merlin Ambrosius St-Davids
pallio Urbis Legionum induetur," et cetera.
with-the-pallium of-the-City of-the-Legions will-be-clothed and so-on
Non procul inde stat rupis marina, Sabrinis supereminens
not far thence stands a-rock of-the-sea over-the-Severn rising-above
fluctibus, quæ Anglorum lingua Goldclive vocatur, hoc
waves which of-the-English in-the-tongue Goldcliff is-called that
est, rupis aurea; eo quod aurei coloris saxa præferat
is the-rock golden on-that because of-golden color stones it-displays
sole repercussa, miro fulgore rutulantia.
by-the-sun struck-back with-wonderful brilliance glowing

"Nec mihi de facili fieri persuasio posset,
"Nor to-me with ease to-be-made persuasion could,
Quod frustra tantum dederit natura nitorem
That in-vain so-much would-have-given nature brilliance
Saxis, quodque suo fuerit flos hic sine fructu;"
To-stones, and-that its would-have-been flower this without fruit;"

si foret, qui venas ibidem, et penitima terræ viscera,
if there-were one-who the-veins there and the-inmost of-the-earth bowels
arte prævia transpenetraret; si foret, inquam, qui de
by-art going-before would-penetrate if there-were I-say one-who from
petra mel eliceret, et oleum de saxo. Multa nimirum
the-rock honey would-draw and oil from the-stone many truly
occulta latent naturæ beneficia, quæ, per incuriam
hidden lie-concealed of-nature benefits which through carelessness
hactenus incognita, posterorum educet cura propensior et
hitherto unknown of-posterity will-bring-out the-care more-inclined and
diligentia. Nam sicut antiquos in humanæ vitæ commodis
diligence for as the-ancients in of-human life the-conveniences
inveniendi viam ipsa necessitas urgens edocuit, sic junioribus
of-finding the-way the-very necessity urgent taught so the-younger
industria sedula plurimum contulit, et ingenii perspicacioris
industry assiduous very-much has-helped and of-genius more-perceptive
acumen multa modernis aperuit. Quoniam, ut ait poeta,
the-sharpness many-things to-the-moderns has-opened since as says the-poet
duas inventionum istarum causas assignans,
two of-inventions those causes assigning

"Labor omnia vincit
"Labor all-things conquers
Improbus, et duris urgens in rebus egestas."
Persistent, and hard pressing in things need."

Notandum autem quod in his Urbis Legionum partibus
to-be-noted however that in these of-the-City of-the-Legions parts
fuit diebus nostris vir quidam Kambrensis, cui nomen
there-was in-our days a-man certain Welsh to-whom the-name
Meilerius, futurorum pariter et occultorum scientiam habens;
Meilyr of-future-things equally and of-hidden the-knowledge having

cui talis hanc eventus scientiam dedit. Nocte quadam,
to-whom such this event knowledge gave on-a-night certain
scilicet Ramis palmarum, puellam diu ante adamatam,
namely on-the-Branches of-palms a-girl long before loved
sicut forma præferebat, obviam habens loco amœno, et
as her-form displayed meeting having in-a-place pleasant and
ut videbatur opportuno, desideratis amplexibus atque deliciis
as it-seemed opportune with-longed-for embraces and delights
cum indulsisset, statim, loco puellæ formosæ, formam
when he-had-indulged at-once in-the-place of-the-girl beautiful a-form
quamdam villosam, hispidam et hirsutam, adeoque enormiter
certain hairy shaggy and rough and-so enormously
deformem invenit, quod in ipso ejusdem aspectu dementire
misshapen he-found that at the-very of-the-same sight to-rave
cœpit et insanire. Cumque pluribus id annis ei
he-began and to-go-mad and-when for-very-many this years with-him
durasset, tandem in ecclesia Menevensi, meritis sanctorum
it-had-lasted at-length in the-church of-St-Davids by-the-merits of-the-saints
loci ejusdem, optatam sanitatem recuperavit. Semper tamen
of-place same the-longed-for health he-recovered always however
cum spiritibus immundis magnam et mirandam familiaritatem
with spirits unclean great and wonderful familiarity
habens, eosdem videndo, cognoscendo, colloquendo, propriisque
having them by-seeing knowing talking-with and-by-own
nominibus singulos nominando, ipsorum ministerio plerumque
names each naming by-their ministry often
futura prædicebat. In longe vero futuris atque remotis,
future-things he-foretold in far however future and remote-things
sicut et ipsi, frequentius fallebatur: in propinquioribus
as also they-themselves more-often he-was-deceived in nearer-things
autem, et quasi infra annum futuris, minus falli
however and as-if within a-year future less to-be-deceived

consueverat. Videbat autem eos fere semper pedites et
he-was-wont he-saw however them almost always on-foot and
expeditos, et quasi sub forma venatorum, cornu a collo
unencumbered and as-if under the-form of-hunters a-horn from the-neck
suspensum habentes, et vere venatores, non ferarum tamen
hung having and truly hunters not of-wild-beasts however
nec animalium sed animarum. Circa monasteria quoque, et
nor of-animals but of-souls around monasteries also and
loca religiosa, magis eos et in multitudine majori videre
places religious more them and in multitude greater to-see
solebat. Ibi nimirum exercitu, ibi numerosis opus est
he-was-wont there indeed of-an-army there numerous need is
viribus, ubi rebellio. Quoties autem falsum coram ipso ab
strength where rebellion whenever however a-falsehood before him by
aliquo dicebatur, id statim agnoscebat: videbat enim super
someone was-said this at-once he-recognized he-saw for on
linguam mentientis dæmonem quasi salientem et exultantem,
the-tongue of-the-liar a-demon as-if leaping and exulting
Librum quoque mendosum, et vel falso scriptum, vel falsum
a-book also faulty and either falsely written or falsehood
etiam in se continentem inspiciens, statim, licet illiteratus
even in itself containing looking-at at-once though unlettered
omnino fuisset, ad locum mendacii digitum ponebat.
wholly he-had-been on the-place of-the-lie the-finger he-put
Interrogatus autem, qualiter hoc nosset, dicebat dæmonem ad
asked however how this he-knew he-said the-demon to
locum eundem digitum suum primo porrigere. Similiter et
the-place same finger his first to-stretch likewise also
dormitorium monasterii cujuslibet intrando, lectum monachi
the-dormitory of-a-monastery any by-entering the-bed of-a-monk
falsi, et religionem habitu non animo præferentis, eisdem
false and religion in-habit not in-mind displaying by-the-same

indiciis ostendebat. Dicebat autem spiritum gulositatis et
signs he-showed he-said however the-spirit of-gluttony and
crapulæ supra et infra sordidum esse; spiritum vero libidinis
of-surfeit above and below foul to-be the-spirit however of-lust
et luxuriæ pulchriorem aliis, sed fœtidissimum.
and of-luxury more-beautiful than-others but most-fetid
Contigit aliquando, spiritibus immundis nimis eidem
it-happened once with-spirits unclean too-much him
insultantibus, ut Evangelium Johannis ejus in gremio
assailing that the-Gospel of-John his on lap
poneretur: qui statim tanquam aves evolantes, omnes penitus
was-placed who at-once as-if birds flying-out all wholly
evanuerunt. Quo sublato postmodum, et Historia Britonum
vanished which removed afterward also the-History of-the-Britons
a Galfrido Arthuro tractata, experiendi causa, loco ejusdem
by Geoffrey Arthur treated of-testing for-the-sake in-place of-the-same
subrogata, non solum corpori ipsius toti, sed etiam libro
substituted not only on-the-body his whole but also on-the-book
superposito, longe solito crebrius et tædiosius insederunt.
placed-on far than-usual more-frequently and more-tediously they-sat
Notandum hic autem quia Barnabas, sicut in legenda ipsius
to-be-noted here however that Barnabas as in the-legend his
habetur, Evangelium Matthæi super ægros ponebat, et
is-held the-Gospel of-Matthew upon the-sick placed and
curabantur. Ex quo patet, sicut et ex præmisso, quantæ
they-were-cured from which it-is-plain as also from the-aforesaid of-how-great
dignitatis et reverentiæ sacrosancti evangelii liber existat;
dignity and reverence of-the-sacrosanct gospel the-book is
et super eundem quisquis scienter pejerat, quam periculose
and upon the-same whoever knowingly swears-falsely how dangerously
et damnabiliter a via veritatis exorbitat.
and damnably from the-way of-truth he-swerves

Ad hæc autem casum abbatis Enoci de Estratmarchel,
to these-things moreover the-fall of-abbot Enoch of Strata-Marcella
satis et plusquam satis per Guallias notum, eadem
enough and more-than enough through Wales known on-the-same
die cujus nocte contigit multis aperuit: sicut ex dicto
day on-whose night it-happened to-many he-disclosed as from the-saying
ejusdem ab aliis retento, dieque notato, circiter octo
of-the-same by others retained and-with-the-day noted about eight
dies post certis rumoribus evidenter apparuit. Interrogatus
days after by-certain reports evidently appeared asked
autem, quemadmodum sciebat hoc, dicebat dæmonem sub
however how he-knew this he-said a-demon under
venatoris expediti specie mane ad ipsum venisse;
of-a-hunter unencumbered the-form in-the-morning to him to-have-come
qui statim ruinam abbatis exponendo, qualiter ipsum a
who at-once the-ruin of-the-abbot by-setting-out how him from
monasterio cum moniali aufugere fecerat, quasi de tanta
the-monastery with a-nun to-flee he-had-made as-if over so-great
victoria gaudens plurimum et exultans, totum evomuit.
a-victory rejoicing very-much and exulting all vomited-out
Forte ad correctionem abbatis et humiliationem, hoc ei
perhaps for the-correction of-the-abbot and humbling this to-him
accidere permissum est. Sicut ex post facto claruit: quia
to-happen permitted it-was as from after the-fact it-became-clear because
in brevi reversus, et humilior, eoque melior effectus, nec
in short returned and more-humble and-by-that better made nor
divertisse dicendus: quia "Non male cadit," ut ait Seneca,
to-have-turned-aside to-be-said because not badly falls as says Seneca
"quisquis post lapsum fortior resurgit." Fortior etenim post
whoever after a-fall stronger rises stronger for after
negationem Petrus; fortior post lapidationem et persecutionem
the-denial Peter stronger after the-stoning and persecution

Paulus; et quoniam "Ubi abundat delictum, ibi superabundabit
Paul and since where abounds sin there will-superabound
et gratia," fortior quoque post fragilitatem Magdalena.
also grace stronger also after frailty the-Magdalen
Abbati quoque de Alba domo Kanano, viro probo
to-the-abbot also of the-White House Cynan a-man upright
et religioso, quid de muliere quadam quam aspexerat
and religious what about a-woman certain whom he-had-looked-at
cogitasset, in aure revelavit. Et statim vir bonus,
he-had-thought in the-ear he-revealed and at-once the-man good
concupiscentiam illam cum lacrimis fatendo, a tribus
lust that with tears by-confessing from three
sacerdotibus incontinenti disciplinam suscepit. Sicut enim
priests immediately discipline received as for
hostis ille antiquus, longis rerum experientiis et subtilitate
enemy that ancient by-long of-things experiences and by-the-subtlety
naturæ, ex signis quibusdam conjecturalibus argumentando
of-nature from signs certain conjectural by-arguing
de præteritis, argute futura conjectat, sic et, indiciis
about past-things shrewdly future-things guesses so also by-signs
haud dissimilibus, hominibus insidiando, interiorem mentis
not unlike on-men lying-in-wait the-inner of-the-mind
conceptum per exteriora quandoque perpendit.
conception through outward-things sometimes he-weighs
Fuit et in eodem tempore, in Wintæ finibus inferioris,
there-was also in the-same time in of-Gwent the-bounds lower
dæmon incubus, qui puellam quandam adamando, locumque
a-demon incubus who a-girl certain by-loving and-the-place
ubi ipsa manebat frequentando, cum hominibus loquebatur,
where she dwelt by-frequenting with men spoke
et tam occulta quam futura pluries indicabat. Interrogatus
and as-much hidden-things as future often indicated asked

autem inde Meilerius, se hunc bene nosse dicebat, et nomen
however about-it Meilyr himself him well to-know said and the-name
ejus proponebat. Dicebat etiam contra guerram, patriæque
his set-forth he-said also before war and-of-the-country
turbationem magnam, spiritus hujusmodi cum hominibus
disturbance great spirits of-this-kind with men
conversari solere: sicut et hic apparuit: quia paulo post
to-converse to-be-wont as also here appeared because a-little after
partes illæ, per Hoelum filium Iereverdi de Urbe Legionum,
the-parts those by Hywel son of-Iorwerth of the-City of-the-Legions
provinciam totam graviter infestantem, destructæ sunt.
the-province whole gravely harassing destroyed were
Eadem vero tempestate, cum Anglorum rex Henricus
at-the-same however time when of-the-English king Henry
secundus, capto Albaniæ rege, regnum subito pacificasset,
second with-captured of-Scotland the-king the-kingdom suddenly had-pacified
prædictus Hoelus, per guerram quam fecerat, regiam
the-aforesaid Hywel for the-war which he-had-made the-royal
plurimum timens ultionem, hujusmodi a Meilerio in majori
very-much fearing vengeance of-this-kind from Meilyr in greater
angustia consolationis verba suscepit: "Ne timeas," inquit,
distress of-consolation words received not fear he-says
"Hoele, regis indignationem; quoniam ad alias eum partes
Hywel of-the-king the-indignation since to other him parts
intendere oportebit. Urbs etenim melior, quam in transmarinis
to-turn it-will-behoove a-city for better than in overseas-parts
habet, jam a rege Francorum obsidetur. Unde ad partes illas,
he-has now by the-king of-the-Franks is-besieged whence to parts those
postpositis omnibus aliis, quanta poterit festinatione
with-put-aside all other-things with-as-much he-will-be-able haste
transibit." Cujus eventum rei, urbe Rothomagensi
he-will-cross of-which the-outcome of-the-matter with-the-city of-Rouen

obsessa, infra triduum post certis rumoribus Hoelus
besieged within three-days after by-certain reports Hywel
accepit. Proditionem quoque castelli de Oscha, quod Hoelus
received the-betrayal also of-the-castle of Usk which Hywel
occupatum detinebat, longe ante prædixit; et dominum suum,
occupied held long before he-foretold and the-lord his
Hoelum scilicet, inde præmunivit; se etiam ibidem tunc
Hywel namely thence forewarned himself also there then
vulnerandum, sed non ibidem tunc moriendum, vivumque ab
to-be-wounded but not there then to-die and-alive from
oppido evasurum præcinuit. In hoc solo deceptus; quia sicut
the-town about-to-escape he-foretold in this alone deceived because as
amicos hostis ille beare novit, sic suos in fine remunerare
friends enemy that to-bless knows so his-own in the-end to-reward
consuevit; quia eodem vulnere paulo post letaliter occubuit.
is-wont because by-the-same wound a-little after fatally he-died
Inter hæc autem omnia admiratione dignissima, hoc solum
among these-things however all of-wonder most-worthy this alone
censui magis admirandum, quod oculis carneis spiritus illos
I-judged more to-be-wondered-at that with-eyes fleshly spirits those
tam aperte videbat: quia spiritus oculis corporalibus, nisi
so openly he-saw because spirits with-eyes bodily unless
assumptis corporibus, videri non solent. Si vero corpora,
with-assumed bodies to-be-seen not are-wont if however bodies
ut videri possent, assumpserant, ab aliis quoque præcipue
that to-be-seen they-could they-had-assumed by others also especially
præsentes et prope positi quomodo videri non poterant?
present and near placed how to-be-seen not they-could
Sed forte corporali visione miraculosa visi sunt hæc.
but perhaps by-bodily vision miraculous seen were these-things
Cujusmodi visione rex Balthasar in Daniele vidit manum
of-which-kind by-vision king Belshazzar in Daniel saw the-hand

scribentis in pariete, “Mane, Techel, Phares,” hoc est,
of-one-writing on the-wall Mene Tekel Peres that is
appensum, numeratum, divisum; qui et eadem nocte
weighed numbered divided who also on-the-same night
regnum pariter et vitam amisit.
the-kingdom equally and life lost
His autem in finibus, nostrisque diebus, cæco dominandi
in-these however in bounds and-in-our days with-blind of-ruling
ambitu, rupto consanguinitatis et consobrinorum fœdere,
ambition broken of-kinship and of-cousins the-treaty
fides quam enormiter in perfidiam evanuerit, diffuso per
faith how enormously into perfidy has-vanished with-spread through
Gualliam pravitatis exemplo, Kambria non ignorat.
Wales of-depravity the-example Wales not is-ignorant

From Newport, where the Usk meets the sea, the party crossed the Rhymney to Cardiff. Merlin had foretold that the Welsh would be broken if a strong, freckled man crossed the ford of Rhyd Pencarn; Henry II's horse, startled by trumpets, took him over the old ford, and the Welsh went home dismayed. At Cardiff Ivor the Little climbed the walls at night and carried off the earl, his countess, and their son until he had his lands again. There a man in white told Henry II in English to forbid Sunday markets, and within the year his sons rebelled. In a cleft of the rock on Barry Island one hears a smithy at work.

De transitu per Novum burgum et Kairdif, cum
about the-passage through New port and Cardiff with
notabilibus suis.
notable-things its

Apud Novum itaque burgum, ubi Oschæ flumen ab originali
at New therefore port where of-the-Usk the-river from the-original
de Cantrefbochan fonte descendens in mare dilabitur, ad
of Cantref-Bychan spring descending into the-sea glides for
crucis obsequia multis allectis, fluvio Renni transcurso,
of-the-cross the-services with-many enticed with-the-river Rhymney crossed
ad nobile super aquam Thaph de Kaerdif castrum pervenimus.
to the-noble above the-water Taff of Cardiff castle we-came
Serpit autem in Noviburgi finibus, terra scilicet de
creeps moreover in of-Newport the-bounds in-the-land namely of
Wenloch, rivulus cui nomen Nant Pencarn; non tam
Wentloog a-rivulet to-which the-name Nant Pencarn not so-much
aquarum profunditate, quam alvei concavitate, palustrique
of-waters by-the-depth as of-the-channel by-the-hollowness and-marshy
limositate, non nisi certa per loca vadaque transmeabilis.
muddiness not except certain through places and-fords crossable
Habuerat autem antiquitus vadum, cui nomen Red Pencarn,
it-had however anciently a-ford to-which the-name Rhyd Pencarn

ad quod publica strata ducebat. Sonat autem Latine, Vadum
to which the-public road led it-sounds however in-Latin the-ford
sub capite rupis. Red enim Britannice, vadum Latine; Pen
under the-head of-the-rock rhyd for in-British ford in-Latin pen
caput; Carn rupis. De quo Merlinus Silvestris mentionem
head carn rock about which Merlin Silvester mention
faciens, in hæc verba prorupit; "Cum fortem lentiginosum
making into these words broke-out when a-strong freckled
in dextrales Britones irruere videris, si Red Pencarn
against the-right-hand Britons to-rush you-shall-see if Rhyd Pencarn
transierit, Kambriæ vires noveris enervari."
he-shall-have-crossed of-Wales the-strength you-will-know to-be-weakened
Contigit autem nostris temporibus, cum Anglorum rex
it-happened however in-our times when of-the-English king
Henricus secundus in Resum Griphini filium arma sumeret,
Henry second against Rhys of-Gruffydd son arms took
et per maritimam dextralis Kambriæ viam versus Kaermerdyn
and by the-coastal of-right-hand Wales road toward Carmarthen
tenderet, die quo Nant Pencarn transire debuerat,
headed on-the-day on-which Nant Pencarn to-cross he-was-to
antiqui partium illarum Britones circa prædictum vadum cum
the-ancient of-parts those Britons around the-aforesaid ford with
summa solicitudine principis adventum observabant: sciturі
highest solicitude of-the-prince the-coming watched about-to-know
pro certo, quoniam et fortem noverant et lentiginosum,
for certain since both strong they-knew-him and freckled
si vadi transitus concordaverit, de ipso proculdubio
if of-the-ford the-crossing should-have-agreed about him without-doubt
vaticinium esse complendum. Cum igitur rex ad prædictam
the-prophecy to-be to-be-fulfilled when therefore the-king to the-aforesaid
aquam via duce festinasset, et, vaticinali veterique
water with-the-way leading had-hastened and with-the-prophetic and-old

vado dudum obsoleto, ad aliud ejusdem aquæ vadum,
ford long disused to another of-the-same water ford
quod modernior usus frequentaverat, jam transire parasset,
which more-modern use had-frequented already to-cross had-prepared
tubicines et buccinatores quos Cornhiriez vocant, ab Hir,
the-trumpeters and horn-blowers whom Cornhiriez they-call from hir
quod est longum, et cornu, eo quod longis in cornubus
which is long and horn on-that because in-long in horns
flatum emittant, ex altera vadi ripa, quasi regi
breath they-send-forth from the-other of-the-ford bank as-if for-the-king
exultantes, in ejusdem honore buccinare cœperunt. Unde
exulting in his honor to-trumpet began whence
cum equus, in quo rex sedebat, præ timore tam horribilis
when the-horse on which the-king sat for fear so of-horrible
et insueti sonitus calcaria respuens, aquam intrare prorsus
and unaccustomed of-a-sound the-spurs spurning the-water to-enter wholly
abnueret, rex, lora regyrans, ad antiquum vadum se
refused the-king the-reins turning to the-ancient ford himself
conferre ira prævia deproperavit. Quo statim impetuose
to-betake with-anger going-before hastened which at-once impetuously
transcurso, Britones, eo experimento quasi de imminente
crossed the-Britons by-that trial as-if about the-impending
jam certi exitio, ad propria mœsti sunt reversi.
now certain destruction to own-homes sad they-have returned
In castro quoque de Kairdif contigit his nostris diebus
in the-castle also of Cardiff it-happened in-these our days
res memoratu non indigna. Claudiocestriæ namque comes
a-thing of-remembrance not unworthy of-Gloucester for the-earl
Guillelmus, Roberti comitis filius, qui cum castro prædicto
William of-Robert earl son who with the-castle aforesaid
totam provinciam de Guladmorgan, id est, terra Morgani,
the-whole province of Glamorgan that is the-land of-Morgan

jure hereditario possidebat, cum quodam homine suo, cui
by-right hereditary possessed with a-certain man his to-whom
nomen Yvor modicus, forte guerram habuerat. Erat enim
the-name Ivor the-Little perhaps a-war had-had he-was for
vir staturæ modicæ, sed animositatis immensæ: Guallensium
a-man of-stature small but of-spirit immense of-the-Welsh
more montana quædam et silvestria possidens, quæ
in-the-manner mountains certain and wooded-lands possessing which
tamen illi comes vel auferre prorsus vel mutilare
however from-him the-earl either to-take-away wholly or to-mutilate
contendebat. Nocte igitur quadam, quanquam castrum de
strove at-night therefore a-certain although the-castle of
Kaerdif, murorum ambitu munitissimum, excubarum
Cardiff of-walls with-the-circuit most-fortified of-watchmen
multitudine personaret, quanquam militibus centum et
with-a-multitude resounded although with-knights a-hundred and
viginti, necnon et arcariis multis, stipendiaria quoque familia
twenty and-also also with-archers many with-mercenary also household
plurima urbs redundaret, inter tot tamen præsidia et
very-large the-city overflowed among so-many nevertheless defenses and
securitatis argumenta, prædictus Yvor, scalis allatis clam
of-security proofs the-aforesaid Ivor with-ladders brought secretly
muros irrepens, comitem et comitissam, cum parvo quem
the-walls creeping-up the-earl and the-countess with the-little whom
unicum habebant filio, secum educens ad silvestria perduxit.
only they-had son with-himself leading-out to the-woods led

Nec remisit, donec quicquid ei injuste ablatum fuerat,
nor released-them until whatever from-him unjustly taken had-been
et ampliora, recuperasset. Testante namque poeta,
and more he-had-recovered with-witnessing for the-poet

"Spectandum est semper ne magna injuria fiat,
"To-be-watched it-is always lest great injury be-done,
Fortibus et miseris: tollas licet omne quod usquam est
To-the-brave and wretched: you-may-take though all that anywhere is
Argenti atque auri, spoliatis arma supersunt."
Of-silver and of-gold, to-the-despoiled arms remain."

In hoc eodem oppido de Kaerdif, Anglorum rex Henricus
in this same town of Cardiff of-the-English king Henry
secundus, in reditu ab Hibernia, sabbato primo post Pascha
second on the-return from Ireland on-Saturday first after Easter
cum pernoctasset, missaque mane, dominica scilicet,
when he-had-spent-the-night and-with-the-mass in-the-morning on-Sunday namely
jam audita, cum a capella Sancti Pyrani præter regem
already heard when from the-chapel of-Saint Piran except the-king
omnes exissent, ipso in orationibus plus solito tunc forte
all had-gone-out with-him in prayers more than-usual then perhaps
morante, tandem cum exiret, et ad ostium capellæ
lingering at-length when he-was-going-out and at the-door of-the-chapel
jam equum ascenderet, astitit ei vir quidam ante faciem,
already the-horse was-mounting stood-by him a-man certain before his-face
poste quodam præfixo quasi pro podio fungens, flavus,
on-a-post certain fixed-in-front as-if for a-prop using yellow-haired
tonsuraque rotunda, vultus macilenti, staturæ aliquantulum
and-with-tonsure round of-face lean of-stature somewhat
proceræ, ætatis quasi circiter annos quadraginta, tunica
tall of-age as-it-were about years forty in-a-tunic

indutus alba usque ad collum pedis demissa, zona
clothed white up-to to the-neck of-the-foot let-down with-a-belt
præcinctus, et pedibus nudis; qui et regem in hæc verba
girt and with-feet bare who also the-king in these words
quasi Teutonice convenit, "God holde þe, cuning;" quod
as-if in-German addressed God holde þe cuning which
Latine sonat, Deus te custodiat, rex. Et postea in eadem
in-Latin sounds God you keep king and afterward in the-same
lingua prosecutus est in hunc modum; "Salutat vos Christus,
tongue continued has in this manner greets you Christ
et pia mater ejus, Johannes quoque Baptista, et apostolus
and the-pious mother his John also the-Baptist and the-apostle
Petrus, mandantes vobis quatinus, per totas ditioni vestræ
Peter commanding you that through all to-rule your
subditas terras, ne mercatus dominicis diebus fiant firmiter
subject lands that-not markets on-Sunday days be-held firmly
inhiberi faciatis, et quod in illis nihil uspiam operis fiat
to-be-forbidden you-cause and that on them nothing anywhere of-work be-done
nisi divinum officium, et illud devote facere et audire, præter
except the-divine office and that devoutly to-do and to-hear except
cibaria solum quæ ad usum diurnum præparentur. Quod si
foods only which for use daily be-prepared which if
feceritis, nihil unquam inchoabitis quod fine bono
you-shall-have-done nothing ever will-you-begin which with-an-end good
non compleatur, vitamque feliciter consummabitis." Rex
not be-completed and-life happily you-will-consummate the-king
autem militi, cui nomen Philippus de Mercros, qui
however to-the-knight to-whom the-name Philip of Mercros who
frenum equi tenebat, dixit lingua Gallica; "Quære a
the-bridle of-the-horse held said in-the-tongue French ask from
rustico, utrum hoc somniaverit." Et cum hoc Anglice miles
the-rustic whether this he-has-dreamed and when this in-English the-knight

exponeret, subjecit ille lingua priori; "Sive hoc somniaverim,
explained added he in-the-tongue former whether this I-have-dreamed
sive non, vide quis hodie dies sit;" loquens regi, non
or not see what today day it-is speaking to-the-king not
interpreti, "quia nisi hoc feceris, vitamque maturius
to-the-interpreter because unless this you-shall-have-done and-life sooner
emendaveris, priusquam annus iste prætereat, tales de
you-shall-have-amended before year this pass such about
re quam plus in mundo diligis rumores audies, talemque
the-thing which most in the-world you-love news you-will-hear and-such
turbationem inde recipies quæ tibi usque ad exitum vitæ
disturbance thence you-will-receive as to-you up-to to the-end of-life
non deficiet." Et cum rex, hoc dicto, equo calcaribus
not will-fail and when the-king at-this word with-the-horse by-the-spurs
monito, parum versus portam et quasi passibus octo
urged a-little toward the-gate and as-if by-steps eight
processisset, lora regyrans, "Vocate mihi," inquit, "bonum
had-advanced the-reins turning call to-me he-says the-good
hominem illum." Et cum miles prædictus, et juvenis
man that and when the-knight aforesaid and a-youth
quidam, cui nomen Guillelmus, qui soli tunc in oppido
certain to-whom the-name William who alone then in the-town
cum rege remanserant, illum vocassent, et non inventum
with the-king had-remained him had-called and not found
primum in capella, deinde per aulam et diversoria cuncta
first in the-chapel then through the-hall and lodgings all
quæsiissent, nusquam comparuit. Rex autem, eo non
had-sought nowhere he-appeared the-king however with-him not
reperto, cum tamen diutius eum solus in oppido dum alii
found when nevertheless longer him alone in the-town while the-others
quærerent expectaret, mœstus plurimum et plangens, quod
sought he-waited sad very-much and lamenting that

amplius ei locutus non fuisset, versus Novumburgum per
more to-him spoken not he-had toward Newport over
pontem de Remni iter arripuit. Sicut autem comminando
the-bridge of Rhymney the-journey took as however by-threatening
vir ille promiserat, sic anno contigit non completo. Filii
man that had-promised so with-the-year it-happened not completed the-sons
namque ipsius tres, primævus scilicet Henricus, et alii
for his three the-eldest namely Henry and the-other
duo, Pictavensis et Brito, contra ipsum in Quadragesima
two the-Poitevin and the-Breton against him in Lent
sequente ad regem Francorum Ludovicum discesserunt. Unde
following to the-king of-the-Franks Louis departed whence
tanta mota est ei inquietatio, quantam antea nunquam
so-great moved was in-him disquiet as-much-as before never
habuerat, et quæ semper ei, usque ad extremum spiritus
he-had-had and which always in-him up-to to the-last of-spirit
halitum, per aliquem filiorum fere incessanter perdurasset.
breath through some of-the-sons almost unceasingly would-have-lasted
Multas et alias præmonitiones et castigationes rex iste divina
many also other warnings and chastisements king this by-divine
miseratione, quæ magis conversionem peccatorum appetit quam
mercy which more the-conversion of-sinners seeks than
eversionem, circa eadem tempora et fini propinquiora
the-overthrow about the-same times and to-the-end nearer
suscepit. Quas tamen omnes animo obstinato, et corde
received which however all with-mind obstinate and with-heart
indurato, incorrigibiliter omnino contempsit: sicut in libro De
hardened incorrigibly wholly he-despised as in the-book On
Principis instructione, Deo propitiante, plenius ostendetur.
of-the-Prince the-Instruction with-God favoring more-fully will-be-shown

Distat autem non magnis abhinc spatiis insula modica, in
is-distant moreover not by-great hence spaces an-island small on
Sabrini maris litore sita, quam accolæ Barri vocant;
of-the-Severn sea the-shore situated which the-neighbors Barry call
a nomine Sancti Barroci, loci ejusdem olim cultoris, sic
from the-name of-Saint Baruch of-place same once the-dweller so
dicta. Cujus et reliquiæ in capella ibidem sita, hederæ
called whose also the-relics in a-chapel there situated of-ivy
nexibus amplexata, in feretrum translatæ continentur.
by-the-tendrils embraced into a-shrine transferred are-kept
Ab hujus etiam insulæ nomine, viri nobiles maritimarum
from of-this also island the-name men noble of-the-maritime
australis Kambriæ partium, qui eidem insulæ cum terris
of-southern Wales parts who over-the-same island with lands
finitimis dominari solent, sunt denominati: a Barri scilicet
neighboring to-rule are-wont were named from Barry namely
primo agnomen, postea cognomen de Barri suscipientes.
first a-surname afterward a-family-name of Barry taking
Est autem hic notabile, quod in ipso insulæ introitu,
is moreover here notable that at the-very of-the-island entry
in rupe marina apparet rima permodica, ad quam si aurem
in a-rock of-the-sea appears a-cleft very-small to which if the-ear
apponas, audies operæ strepitum quasi fabrilis; nunc
you-apply you-will-hear of-work a-din as-if of-smiths now

follium flatus, nunc martellorum ictus, nunc cotis et
of-bellows the-breath now of-hammers the-blows now of-whetstone and
ferri sonora fricamina,
of-iron sonorous grindings

"Stridentesque cavernis
"And-hissing in-caverns
Stricturas Chalybum, et anhelum fornacibus ignem."
The-bars of-the-Chalybes, and panting in-the-furnaces fire."

Ceterum haud difficile credendum, ex aquis marinis occulte
but not difficult to-be-believed from waters of-the-sea secretly
subintrantibus sonum hujuscemodi provenire posse, nisi
entering-beneath a-sound of-this-kind to-come-forth to-be-able except
quoniam non minus, retrogradis et refluis fluctibus, vacuato
that not less with-retreating and ebbing waves with-emptied
prorsus litore continuatur quam repleto.
wholly shore it-is-continued than with-filled

LLANDAFF, MARGAM, AND THE DOGS

At Llandaff the cross was preached to English and Welsh. Margam, the most charitable Cistercian house in Wales, was saved in famine by grain that multiplied and a field that ripened a month early; a youth who burned its grange went mad, and Cadwallon, who killed his brother Owain, was crushed by a falling wall. Owain's greyhound, wounded seven times defending his master, was sent to Henry II. Dogs love men above all beasts: an Antioch hound seized its master's murderer, who lost the duel it forced on him, and a king was freed by his hounds. A dog trusts its nose more than its eyes, and its tongue heals.

De sede Landavensi, et monasterio de Margan, cum
about the-see of-Llandaff and the-monastery of Margam with
partium illarum notabilibus.
of-parts those notable-things
Igitur in crastino, crucis apud Landaph negotio publice
therefore on the-morrow of-the-cross at Llandaff with-the-business publicly
proposito, astantibus hinc Anglis inde Gualensibus, ex
set-forth with-standing-by on-this-side the-English on-that the-Welsh from
utroque populo plurimis ad crucem allectis, ea nocte
each people with-very-many to the-cross enticed on-that night
ibidem cum episcopo loci ejusdem Guillelmo, viro discreto et
there with the-bishop of-place same William a-man discreet and
honesto, moram fecimus. Sonat autem Landaph ecclesia sita
honorable a-stay we-made sounds moreover Llandaff the-church situated
super Taph fluvium, quæ et ecclesia Sancti Teleauci, ejusdem
upon the-Taff river which also the-church of-Saint Teilo of-the-same
sedis olim episcopi, nunc dicitur. Mane igitur, missa in
see once bishop now is-called in-the-morning therefore with-mass in
ecclesia cathedrali, principalique altari, ab archipræsule celebrata,
the-church cathedral and-principal altar by the-archprelate celebrated
statim versus nobile Cisterciensis ordinis monasterium de
at-once toward the-noble of-the-Cistercian order monastery of

Margan, per cellulam de Ewennith, iter incunctanter
Margam by the-cell of Ewenny the-journey without-delay
arripuimus. Erat autem monasterium de Margan, præ aliis
we-took was however the-monastery of Margam beyond other
cunctis ordinis illius per Kambriam locis, præsidente tunc
all of-order that through Wales places with-presiding then
viro literato et discreto abbate Cunano, caritativa largitione
a-man lettered and discreet the-abbot Cynan for-charitable largesse
laudatissimum. Unde et aliquoties, gravi ingruente famis
most-praised whence also sometimes with-heavy pressing of-famine
articulo, certum noveris et indubitata veritate compertum,
moment certain you-may-know and by-undoubted truth found
ob immoderatam largifluæ caritatis abundantiam,
on-account-of the-immoderate of-lavish charity abundance
quam in peregrinos et pauperes infatiganter exercuerant,
which toward pilgrims and the-poor tirelessly they-had-exercised
deficiente aliquoties farre penuque, sensibile fuisse divinitus
with-failing sometimes grain and-food a-perceptible to-have-been divinely
augmentum appositum; tanquam lecythi oleo, veri
increase added as-if of-the-cruse with-the-oil of-the-true
Helisæi beneficio, pauperi mulierculæ multiplicato.
of-Elisha by-the-benefit for-the-poor little-woman multiplied
Circa prima vero fundationis tempora, juvenis quidam de
about the-first however of-the-foundation times a-youth certain from
finibus illis, genere Kambrensis, terras quasdam monasterio
bounds those by-race Welsh lands certain to-the-monastery
datas acriter sibi vindicans, et in usus proprios
given fiercely for-himself claiming and to uses own
redigere parans, post multas infestationes, demum instinctu
to-reduce preparing after many harassments at-last by-instigation
dæmoniaco grangiam monachorum optimam blado refertam
devilish a-grange of-the-monks best with-corn stuffed

igne combussit. Et statim, amens effectus, per patriam
with-fire burned and at-once mad made through the-country
discurrere cœpit, rabie plenus et insania; nec ab errore
to-run began with-madness full and insanity nor from error
cessavit, donec a parentibus captus fuerat atque ligatus.
did-he-cease until by his-parents captured he-had-been and bound
Porro, ruptis mane vinculis, fatigatisque custodibus,
moreover with-broken in-the-morning bonds and-with-wearied guards
ad monasterii denique portam evasit, clamans incessanter
to of-the-monastery at-last the-gate he-escaped crying unceasingly
et ululans, se monachorum ministerio totum intrinsecus
and howling himself of-the-monks by-the-ministry whole inwardly
igne comburi. Et sic, planctu miserabili vociferando,
with-fire to-be-burned and so with-lament wretched by-crying-out
spiritum infra paucos dies exhalavit.
the-spirit within few days he-breathed-out
Contigit etiam ut ab alio quodam juvene in hospitum
it-happened also that by another certain youth in of-guests
aula verberato, statim in crastino, divina ultione secuta,
the-hall beaten at-once on the-morrow with-divine vengeance following
injuriosus ille ab hostibus interimeretur; et eodem aulæ
injurious that by enemies was-killed and in-the-same of-the-hall
loco, quo fuit injuria sacræ domui et fratribus
place in-which was the-injury to-the-holy house and to-the-brothers
astantibus irrogata, exanime corpus extenderetur.
standing-by inflicted the-lifeless body was-stretched-out
His quoque nostris diebus, ingruente famis inedia, et
in-these also our days with-pressing of-famine want and
maxima pauperum turba quotidie ad januam jacente,
with-greatest of-the-poor crowd daily at the-gate lying
de communi fratrum consilio, ad caritatis explendæ
by the-common of-the-brothers counsel for of-charity to-be-fulfilled

sufficientiam, propter bladum in Angliam navis Bristollum
sufficiency for corn into England a-ship to-Bristol
missa est. Quæ cum diutinam ibidem vento contrario
sent was which when a-long there with-the-wind contrary
moram fecisset, die quo in monasterio tam ad usus
stay had-made on-the-day on-which in the-monastery as-much for the-uses
pauperum quam monachorum annona deficere debuit, nave
of-the-poor as of-the-monks grain to-fail was-due with-the-ship
non redeunte, sed locum potius miraculo dante, contigit ut
not returning but place rather with-miracle giving it-happened that
campus prope monasterium, per mensem et amplius ante
a-field near the-monastery by a-month and more before
commune maturationis tempus, et antequam messis aliqua
the-common of-ripening time and before harvest any
per patriam meteretur, cum multorum admiratione subito
through the-country was-reaped with of-many wonder suddenly
maturus inveniretur: unde tam fratribus, quam pauperum
ripe was-found whence as-much for-the-brothers as of-the-poor
turbis, sufficientem usque ad autumnum alimoniam divina
for-the-crowds sufficient up-to to autumn nourishment divine
miseratio ministraret. His igitur et aliis virtutum signis,
mercy supplied by-these therefore and other of-virtues signs
locus Deo acceptus diligi a cunctis cœpit et venerari.
the-place to-God acceptable to-be-loved by all began and to-be-venerated
Accidit autem his nostris diebus, quatuor Caradoci filii
it-happened however in-these our days with-four of-Caradog of-the-son
Iestini filiis, et Resi principis ex sorore nepotibus, his
of-Iestyn sons and of-Rhys the-prince by sister nephews in-these
in finibus herili portione, sicut Gualensibus mos
in bounds by-the-lordly portion as for-the-Welsh the-custom
est, pro patre dominantibus; Morgano videlicet, et
is in-place-of the-father ruling Morgan namely and

Mereducio, Oeneo, et Cadwallano; quod per invidiam
Maredudd Owain and Cadwallon that through envy
et Caymiticam malitiam, iterum renatam, Oeneum fratrem
and Cain-like malice again reborn Owain his-brother
Cadwallanus interemit. Nec mora: divina ultione subsecuta,
Cadwallon killed nor delay with-divine vengeance following
cum castrum quoddam hostiliter invasisset, muri subito
when a-castle certain hostilely he-had-invaded of-the-wall suddenly
super eundem facta ruina, minutim confractus interiit:
upon him made with-the-ruin into-small-pieces crushed he-perished
et inter tot tam sui quam fratrum suorum exercitus
and among so-many as-much of-his-own as of-brothers his of-the-army
viros, dignas perpetrati facinoris et fratricidii pœnas luens,
men worthy of-the-perpetrated crime and of-fratricide penalties paying
solus miserabiliter exstinctus occubuit.
alone wretchedly extinguished he-fell
Accidit hic quoque res memoratu non indigna. Leporarius
it-happened here also a-thing of-remembrance not unworthy a-greyhound
enim prædicti Oenei magnus et pulcher, et virgea
for of-the-aforesaid Owain large and handsome and with-streaked
varietate discoloratus, septem vulnera, sagittis et lanceis
variety varicolored seven wounds by-arrows and lances
corpore perforato, non absque plurima tamen hostium
with-body pierced not without very-much however of-the-enemies
et homicidarum caninis morsibus laceratione, in domini
and murderers by-canine bites laceration in of-its-lord
defensione suscepit. Qui et postea Anglorum tunc regi
the-defense received which also afterward of-the-English then to-the-king
Henrico secundo, vulneribus recenter in cicatricem obductis,
Henry second with-the-wounds freshly into scars drawn

a comite Claudiocestriæ Guillelmo, ad tanti tam egregii
by the-earl of-Gloucester William for of-so-great so remarkable
facinoris ostentum, est transmissus.
a-deed a-showing was sent
Præ omni namque bestia plus hominem canis et diligit et
beyond every for beast more man the-dog both loves and
dignoscit. Qui et interdum, sublato domino, vivere recusat;
discerns which also sometimes with-removed lord to-live refuses
et pro domino mortis subire discrimina non formidat. Igitur
and for its-lord of-death to-undergo the-dangers not fears therefore
et mori pro dominis, et commori dominis est paratus. Unde
both to-die for masters and to-die-with masters it-is ready whence
et exemplum unum, quod et Suetonius tangit in libro, qui
also example one which also Suetonius touches in the-book which
De animantium naturis inscribitur, et Ambrosius quoque
On of-animals the-natures is-titled and Ambrose also
in Exameron narrat, hic interserere non superfluum reputavi.
in the-Hexameron narrates here to-insert not superfluous I-reckoned
"Ferunt Antiochiæ in remotiore urbis parte crepusculo
they-say at-Antioch in a-more-remote of-the-city part at-dusk
virum necatum, qui canem sibi adjunctum haberet. Miles
a-man killed who a-dog to-himself attached had a-soldier
quidam prædandi studio minister necis extiterat. Tectus
certain of-plundering from-zeal the-minister of-the-killing had-been hidden
idem adhuc tenebroso diei exordio, in alias partes secesserat.
the-same still with-dark of-day beginning into other parts had-withdrawn
Jacebat inhumatum cadaver: frequens spectantium vulgus
lay unburied the-corpse a-numerous of-onlookers crowd
astabat: canis questu lacrimabili domini deflebat ærumnam.
stood-by the-dog with-plaint tearful of-its-master wept the-misfortune
Forte is, qui necem intulerat, ut se habet versutia humani
by-chance he who the-killing had-inflicted as itself holds the-cunning of-human

generis, quo, versandi in medio auctoritate præsumpta, fidem
kind by-which of-moving in the-midst with-authority assumed belief
assereret innocentiæ, ad illam circumstantis populi coronam
he-might-assert of-innocence to that of-the-surrounding people ring
accessit, et velut miserans appropinquavit ad funus. Tunc
approached and as-if pitying drew-near to the-corpse then
canis, sequestrato paulisper luctu doloris, arma ultionis
the-dog with-set-aside for-a-little the-grief of-sorrow the-arms of-vengeance
assumpsit, atque apprehensum tenuit; et velut epilogio quodam
took-up and seized held and as-if by-epilogue a-certain
miserabile carmen immurmurans, universos convertit in
wretched a-song murmuring all turned into
lacrimas. Probationem detulit, quod solum tenuit e plurimis,
tears proof it-brought because alone it-held from many
nec dimisit." Præsertim cum nec odii, neque invidiæ, aut
nor let-go especially since neither of-hatred nor of-envy or
injuriæ alicujus poterat objectione crimen illatum evacuari.
of-injury any could by-objection the-charge brought be-made-void
Ob tantam igitur et tam vehementem homicidii
on-account-of so-great therefore and so vehement of-homicide
præsumptionem, milite tamen constanter inficiante,
presumption with-the-soldier however steadfastly denying
judicatum est duello rei certitudinem experiri. In
judged it-was by-duel of-the-matter the-certainty to-test on
campo itaque constitutis, et vulgi circumstante corona,
the-field therefore with-set and of-the-crowd surrounding the-ring
hinc cane dentibus armato, illinc baculo cubitali
on-this-side with-the-dog with-teeth armed on-that-side with-a-staff a-cubit-long
milite munito, tandem, cane victore, victus homicida
with-the-soldier armed at-length with-the-dog victor overcome the-murderer
succubuit; et ignominiosam publico patibulo pœnam dedit.
succumbed and an-ignominious on-the-public gallows penalty paid

Refert Plinius, refert et Solinus, regem quemdam, studio
relates Pliny relates also Solinus a-king certain to-the-pursuit
venationis non mediocriter datum, cum ab hostibus aliquando
of-hunting not moderately given when by enemies once
captus fuisset et incarceratus, quia canes dilexerat, per
captured he-had-been and imprisoned because dogs he-had-loved by
caninos demum regionis illius exercitus, ad montana et
canine at-last of-region that armies to the-mountains and
silvestria per se sponte sequestratos, et inde tam
woods by themselves of-their-own-accord withdrawn and thence as-much
in homines quam in armenta et pecudes impetus
against men as against herds and cattle attacks
faciendo et atrociter desæviendo, demum absque alio quolibet
by-making and fiercely by-raging at-last without other any
necessariorum juvamine modo mirando liberatum.
of-his-friends help in-a-manner wonderful freed
Præterea, ea quæ de canum natura experientia didici,
moreover those-things which about of-dogs the-nature by-experience I-have-learned
oculisque meis plerumque conspexi, explicabo. Canis in
and-with-eyes my often have-seen I-shall-set-forth the-dog in
rebus agnoscendis, dominoque præcipue, quem forte veluti in
things to-be-recognized and-its-master especially whom perhaps as in
turba per aliquantulum tempus amiserit, plus naribus quam
a-crowd for some-little time it-has-lost more to-its-nostrils than
oculo credit. Primum enim, in domino seu ductore perdito
to-its-eye trusts first for in its-master or leader lost
reperiendo, oculis inspicit; deinde nares ad certius
to-be-found with-the-eyes it-looks then its-nostrils for more-surely
investigandum vestibus apponit; tanquam totas infallibiles
investigating to-the-clothes applies as-if all infallible
experientiæ vires eidem in naribus natura plantaverit.
of-experience the-strengths for-the-same in the-nostrils nature had-planted

Item medicinam portat lingua canina, sicut e contra
likewise medicine carries the-tongue of-a-dog as on the-contrary
mortem lingua lupina. Unde et sicut vulneribus canis lingendo
death the-tongue of-a-wolf whence also as wounds the-dog by-licking
medetur, sic vulnera lupus lingua corrumpit. Canis autem,
heals so wounds the-wolf with-its-tongue corrupts the-dog moreover
si vel collo vel capite, vel alia quavis corporis parte, quo
if either on-the-neck or on-the-head or on-other any of-the-body part where
linguam flectere non valeat, vulnus acceperit, pede posteriori
its-tongue to-bend not it-is-able a-wound it-has-received with-its-foot hind
linguæ beneficium, quasi nuncio fideli, transfert ad læsionem.
of-the-tongue the-benefit as-if by-messenger faithful transfers to the-hurt

ELIDYR AND THE LITTLE PEOPLE

Crossing the Neath, Gerald's packhorse nearly sank with his books in the quicksand, and a chaplain called Rhydderch the False once fled with the bishop's horse. At Swansea an old man, Cador, gave a tithe of all he had for half his penance and asked the rest for his will. As a boy the priest Elidyr fled his lessons and was led by two little men to an underground country of games and gold; he stole a golden ball for his mother and could never find the way again. Their words were like Greek, ydor for water and halgein for salt, and Gerald leaves such wonders neither affirmed nor denied.

De Aveninæ et Neth fluviis transcursis; de Abertawe
about of-the-Avon and Neath rivers crossed about Swansea
quoque, et Goher; cum notabilibus suis.
also and Gower with notable-things its
Profecti abinde, non procul a Margano, ubi sabulosi litoris
having-set-out thence not far from Margam where of-sandy shore
et maris influentis alternæ incipiunt vicissitudines, Aveninæ
and of-the-sea flowing-in alternate begin the-vicissitudes the-Avon

fluvium, sub plurimo tamen reflui maris moramine,
river under very-much however of-the-ebbing sea delay
transvadavimus. Et inde versus Neth fluvium via maritima
we-forded and thence toward the-Neath river by-the-way coastal
festinantes, primævum Karadoci filium Morganum ducem et
hastening the-eldest of-Caradog son Morgan as-leader and
prævium habuimus. Accedentibus itaque nobis ad aquam,
guide we-had with-approaching therefore us to the-water
præ aliis australis Kambriæ fluviis, vivi sabuli periculis,
beyond other of-southern Wales rivers of-living sand by-the-dangers
totumque subito quod ingeritur absorbentis, inaccessibilem,
and-all suddenly which is-put-in absorbing inaccessible
inter clitellarios multos, qui via versus mare venerant
among pack-horses many which by-the-way toward the-sea had-come
inferiore, unus quem solum qui scripsit hæc ibidem habebat,
lower one which alone who wrote these-things there had
quanquam medius in turba conserta incederet, solus tamen
although in-the-middle in the-crowd packed it-went alone nevertheless
quasi in abyssum descendit. Sed demum tamen, non absque
as-if into the-abyss descended but at-last nevertheless not without
sarcinæ detrimento librorumque, laboriosa simul et periculosa
of-the-pack loss and-of-the-books by-laborious at-once and dangerous
juvenum opera, vix extractus evasit. Quanquam igitur partium
of-the-youths effort scarcely drawn-out escaped although therefore of-parts
illarum principem Morganum viæ ducem haberemus, sub
those the-prince Morgan of-the-way as-leader we-had under
periculo tamen multo, plurimorumque lapsu, ad aquam
danger nevertheless much and-of-very-many with-the-fall to the-water

pervenimus. Per sabulum quippe absorbens, contra ducis
we-came through the-sand indeed absorbing against of-the-leader
monita, nos viæ terror insolitæ festinare coegit, et
the-warnings us of-the-way the-terror unaccustomed to-hasten forced and

"Timor addidit alas;"
"Fear added wings;"

cum per hujuscemodi pericula, sicut ibi didicimus, sit
when through of-this-kind dangers as there we-learned may-be
potior incessus moderata maturatione temperatior. Sed
better a-pace with-moderate deliberateness more-tempered but
quoniam quolibet menstruo maris incremento amnis illius
since with-every monthly of-the-sea increase of-river that
vada mutantur, quolibet nubigero imbrium augmento non
the-fords are-changed with-every cloud-bearing of-rains increase not
reperiuntur, pluvialibus inundationibus exuberantibus undis,
they-are-found with-rainy floods overflowing with-waves
navigio non vado transvecti sumus; monasterio de Neth
by-ship not by-ford carried-across we-were with-the-monastery of Neath
a dextra relicto, iterum Meneviæ partibus appropinquantes,
on the-right left again of-St-Davids to-the-parts approaching
et Landavensis ecclesiæ diocesim, quam apud Abergavenni
and of-the-Llandaff church the-diocese which at Abergavenny
intravimus, post terga relinquentes.
we-entered behind our-backs leaving
Accidit autem his nostris diebus, Menevensi episcopo
it-happened moreover in-these our days with-the-St-Davids bishop
David secundo hac iter agente, et vado recente
David second this-way journey making and with-the-ford freshly
maris influentis procella turbato, quod capellanus quidam
of-the-sea flowing-in by-a-storm disturbed that a-chaplain certain

de finibus illis, Rederth scilicet agnomine Falsus, quoniam
from bounds those Rhydderch namely by-surname the-False since
transeundarum fuerat gnarus aquarum, vadi prætentandi
of-waters-to-be-crossed he-had-been skilled of-waters of-the-ford to-be-tried-first
periculum episcopo præcipiente suscepit. Sed cum equum
the-danger with-the-bishop commanding undertook but when the-horse
episcopi grandem et fortem, et ex toto comitatu
of-the-bishop large and strong and from the-whole retinue
ad hoc fideliter electum, presbyter ascendisset, vado
for this faithfully chosen the-priest had-mounted with-the-ford
statim transmeato, quoniam suspensionis sententiam nuper
at-once crossed since of-suspension the-sentence lately
incurrerat, ad ipsa quæ non procul aberant silvestria
he-had-incurred to the-very which not far were-away woods
fuga maturata se proripuit; nec revocari ullatenus
with-flight hastened himself he-rushed-off nor to-be-recalled in-any-way
potuit, donec, sumpta securitatis et indemnitatis cautione,
could until with-taken of-security and of-indemnity guarantee
hinc equus et illinc missa restitueretur.
on-this-side the-horse and on-that-side the-mass was-restored
Intrantes itaque provinciam quæ Goher dicitur, in castro de
entering therefore the-province which Gower is-called in the-castle of
Sweineshe, quod et Kambrice Abertawe vocatur, id est, casus
Swansea which also in-Welsh Abertawe is-called that is the-fall
Tawe fluvii, pernoctavimus. Mane vero, post missam,
of-the-Tawe river we-spent-the-night in-the-morning however after mass
populo convocato, plurimisque ad crucem allectis, vir
with-the-people called-together and-with-very-many to the-cross enticed a-man
quidam partium illarum [ætate provectus], cui nomen
certain of-parts those in-age advanced to-whom the-name
Kadorus, ad archipræsulem accedens, eum in hæc verba convenit;
Cador to the-archprelate approaching him in these words addressed

"Domine, si mihi pristinæ vires suppeterent, et juventutis
lord if to-me former strength were-available and of-youth
elapsæ robur adesset, laudabilem quem prædicas laborem
passed the-vigor were-present the-laudable which you-preach labor
nec ulla mihi elemosina redimere, nec ullius desidiæ torpor
neither any from-me alms to-redeem nor of-any sloth the-torpor
adimere posset. Verum quoniam desiderabilem hanc gratiam
to-take-away could but since desirable this grace
ætas mihi debilior, deteriorque dies invidit; quippe sicut
age to-me weaker and-worse the-days have-begrudged indeed as

"'Multa ferunt anni venientes commoda secum,'
"Many bring the-years coming advantages with-them,'

sic
so

"'Multa recedentes adimunt;'
"Many receding take-away;'

si beneficium, corporis vexatione, consequi plenum non
if the-benefit of-the-body by-vexation to-attain full not
sufficio, decimarum tamen omnium quæ possideo largitione,
I-suffice of-tithes nevertheless of-all which I-possess by-largesse
consequi valeam vel semiplenum." Et sic ad pedes
to-attain may-I-be-able or half-full and so at the-feet
archiepiscopi [provolutus, et] cum largo lacrimarum fonte
of-the-archbishop thrown-forward and with an-ample of-tears fountain
genua ponens, in manu ejusdem, ad crucis obsequium,
the-knees placing in the-hand of-the-same for of-the-cross the-service
rerum suarum omnium decimas assignavit, et ab eodem
of-things his all the-tithes he-assigned and from the-same

dimidiam injunctæ pœnitentiæ remissionem impetravit.
half of-the-enjoined penance the-remission obtained
Cum autem, hoc facto, paulisper seorsum recessisset,
when however with-this done for-a-little apart he-had-withdrawn
reversus in hanc sententiam iterum prorupit; "Domine, si
returned into this sentence again he-broke-out lord if
voluntas informat actionem, et ipsa plerumque pro facto
the-will informs action and itself often for the-deed
reputatur, cum mihi hoc iter agendi sit plena et firma
is-reckoned since to-me this journey of-making is full and firm
voluntas, residuæ [partis] pœnitentiæ relaxationem peto; et
will of-the-remaining part of-the-penance the-relaxation I-seek and
insuper, renovato beneficio, decimarum mearum de residuo
moreover with-renewed benefit of-tithes my from the-remainder
summam adæquabo." Subridens ad hæc archiepiscopus,
the-sum I-shall-equal smiling at these-things the-archbishop
devotam viri subtilitatem cum admiratione amplexatus est.
the-devout of-the-man subtlety with wonder embraced has
Eadem vero nocte, monachis duobus, cubiculariis
on-the-same however night with-monks two chamberlains
archiepiscopi, super his quæ acciderant, periculisque
of-the-archbishop about these-things which had-happened and-the-dangers
viæ ad invicem conferentibus, dixit unus eorum, "Provincia
of-the-way to each-other conferring said one of-them the-province
dura est ista." Alter autem e contra facete respondit;
hard is this the-other however on the-contrary wittily answered
"Quinimmo, nimis hesterna die mollis inventa est." Altero
nay-rather too on-yesterday day soft found it-was with-the-one
ad asperitatem patriæ, altero vero ad sabuli mollitiem
to the-roughness of-the-country with-the-other however to of-the-sand the-softness
sermonem referente.
the-remark referring

Parum autem ante hæc nostra tempora, accidit his
a-little however before these our times happened in-these
in partibus res memoratu non indigna; quam sibi
in parts a-thing of-remembrance not unworthy which to-himself
contigisse presbyter Eliodorus constantissime referebat. Cum
to-have-happened the-priest Elidyr most-constantly related when
enim puerilis innocentiæ duodecimum jam ageret annum,
for of-boyish innocence the-twelfth already he-was-passing year
quoniam, ut ait Salomon, "Radix literarum amara est,
since as says Solomon the-root of-letters bitter is
quanquam fructus dulcis," puer literis addictus, ut disciplinam
although the-fruit sweet a-boy to-letters given that discipline
subterfugeret, et verbera crebra præceptoris, in concava fluvii
he-might-escape and the-blows frequent of-his-teacher in the-hollow of-river
cujusdam ripa se fugitivus occultavit. Cumque ibidem,
a-certain bank himself a-runaway hid and-when there
bis sole revoluto, jejunus continue jam latitasset,
twice with-the-sun revolved fasting continuously already he-had-lain-hidden
apparuerunt ei homunculi duo, staturæ quasi pygmææ,
appeared to-him little-men two of-stature as-if pygmy
dicentes; "Si nobiscum venire volueris, in terram ludis
saying if with-us to-come you-will into a-land with-games
et deliciis plenam te ducemus." Annuens ille, surgensque,
and delights full you we-shall-lead assenting he and-rising
secutus est prævios, per viam primo subterraneam et
followed has those-going-before by a-way at-first underground and
tenebrosam, usque in terram pulcherrimam, fluviis et pratis,
dark up-to into a-land most-beautiful with-rivers and meadows
silvis et planis distinctissimam, obscuram tamen, et aperto
with-woods and plains most-distinct dark however and by-open
solari lumine non illustratam. Erant ibi dies omnes quasi
of-the-sun light not illuminated were there the-days all as-if

nebulosi, et noctes lunæ stellarumque absentia teterrimæ.
cloudy and the-nights of-moon and-of-stars by-the-absence most-black
Adductus est puer ad regem, eique coram regni curia
brought was the-boy to the-king and-to-him before of-the-kingdom the-court
præsentatus: quem cum diu, cum admiratione cunctorum,
presented whom when long with wonder of-all
rex intuitus esset, tandem eum filio suo, quem puerum
the-king looked-at had at-length him to-son his whom a-boy
habebat, tradens assignavit. Erant autem homines staturæ
he-had handing-over he-assigned were moreover the-men of-stature
minimæ, sed pro quantitatis captu valde compositæ;
smallest but for of-size the-capacity very well-proportioned
flavi omnes, et luxuriante capillo, muliebriter per
yellow-haired all and with-luxuriant hair like-women over
humeros coma demissa. Equos habebant suæ competentes
the-shoulders with-the-locks let-down horses they-had to-their suited
modicitati, leporariis in quantitate conformes. Nec carne
smallness to-greyhounds in size conformable nor on-flesh
vescebantur, nec pisce; lacteis plerumque cibariis utentes,
did-they-feed nor on-fish on-milky mostly foods using
et in pultis modum quasi croco confectis. Juramenta
and in of-porridge the-manner as-if with-saffron prepared oaths
eis nulla: nihil enim adeo ut mendacia detestabantur.
to-them none nothing for so as lies they-detested
Quoties de superiori hemisphærio revertebantur, ambitiones
whenever from the-upper hemisphere they-returned ambitions
nostras, infidelitates, et inconstantias exspuebant. Cultus eis
our infidelities and inconstancies they-spat-out worship to-them
religionis palam nullus: veritatis solum, ut videbatur, amatores
of-religion openly none of-truth alone as it-seemed lovers
præcipui et cultores. Solebat autem puer ille ad nostrum
outstanding and worshipers was-wont moreover the-boy that to our

hemisphærium pluries ascendere; interdum per viam qua
hemisphere very-often to-ascend sometimes by the-way by-which
venerat, interdum per aliam; primo cum aliis, et postea
he-had-come sometimes by another at-first with others and afterward
per se. Solumque matri suæ se committebat; patriæ
by himself and-only to-mother his himself he-entrusted of-the-country
modum, gentisque naturam, et statum suum ei declarans.
the-manner and-of-the-people the-nature and the-state his to-her declaring
Monitus igitur a matre, ut auri, quo abundabat regio,
advised therefore by his-mother that of-gold in-which abounded the-region
munus ei quandoque referret, pilam auream, qua
a-gift to-her sometimes he-should-bring a-ball golden with-which
regis filius ludere consueverat, ab ipso rapiens ludo,
of-the-king the-son to-play had-been-accustomed from the-very snatching game
per viam solitam ad matrem deproperans cursim asportavit.
by the-way usual to his-mother hurrying at-a-run he-carried-off
Et cum ad ostium domus paternæ, populi tamen illius
and when to the-door of-the-house paternal of-people nevertheless that
non absque sequela, jam pervenisset, intrare festinanti pes
not without pursuit already he-had-come to-enter in-his-hurry the-foot
hæsit in limine; et sic intra tectum cadenti, matre
stuck on the-threshold and so within the-roof with-him-falling with-his-mother
ibidem sedente, pilam manu elapsam duo pygmæi e
there sitting the-ball from-his-hand slipped two pygmies from
vestigio sequentes arripuere, exeundo in puerum sputa,
the-track following seized by-going-out at the-boy spittings
contemptus, et derisiones emittentes. Ipse vero resurgens, ad
contempt and mockeries sending-forth he however rising-again to
seque reversus, mira facti confunditur erubescentia;
and-himself returned with-wonderful of-the-deed is-confounded shame
et matris plurimum consilia devovens et detestans, cum
and of-his-mother very-much counsels cursing and detesting when

via redire pararet quam assueverat, ad aquæ
by-the-way to-return he-prepared which he-had-grown-used-to to of-the-water
descensum hypogeumque meatum cum pervenisset, aditus
the-descent and-underground passage when he-had-come the-entrance
ei jam nullus apparuit; cum tamen, per anni fere
to-him now none appeared when nevertheless for of-a-year almost
spatium, intra concavas aquæ prædictæ ripas viam inutilis
the-space within the-hollow of-water the-aforesaid banks the-way useless
explorator inquireret. Sed quoniam ea, quæ ratio non
explorer he-sought but since those-things which reason not
mitigat, temporis interdum mora mitescunt; et diuturnitas
softens of-time sometimes by-the-delay soften and length
sola laxatos hebetat plerumque dolores; siquidem malis multis
alone relaxed dulls often sorrows since to-evils many
finis de tempore venit; demum tamen ab amicis, et
an-end from time comes at-last nevertheless by friends and
matre præcipue, vix revocatus, sibique restitutus, et
by-his-mother especially scarcely recalled and-to-himself restored and
literis denuo datus, tandem processu dierum in sacerdotii
to-letters anew given at-length in-the-course of-days to of-the-priesthood
gradum est promotus.
the-rank was promoted
Cum autem Menevensis episcopus David secundus super hujus
when however of-St-Davids bishop David second about of-this
eventus inquisitione presbyterum jam senio confectum
event the-inquiry the-priest now with-old-age worn-out
multoties solicitasset, nunquam ei negotii seriem potuit
many-times had-pressed never to-him of-the-business the-sequence could-he
citra lacrimas replicare. Habuerat etiam gentis illius linguæ
without tears unfold he-had also of-people that of-the-tongue
notitiam; cujus et verba recitare consueverat, quæ
knowledge of-which also the-words to-recite he-had-been-accustomed which

sibi puerilibus, ut moris est, annis rapide comparaverat.
to-himself in-boyish as of-custom it-is years quickly he-had-acquired
Erant autem verba, sicut ab episcopo prædicto mihi sunt
were moreover the-words as by the-bishop aforesaid to-me were
sæpe proposita, Græco idiomati valde conformia. Cum
often set-forth to-the-Greek idiom very conformable when
enim aquam requirebant, dicebant Ydor ydorum; quod Latine
for water they-asked they-said ydor ydorum which in-Latin
sonat, aquam offer. Ydor enim aqua eorum lingua, sicut et
sounds water bring ydor for water in-their tongue as also
Græca, dicebatur: unde et vasa aquatica Ydriæ dicuntur: et
in-Greek was-called whence also vessels for-water hydriae are-called and
Duur lingua Britannica similiter aqua dicitur. Item salem
dwr in-tongue British likewise water is-called likewise salt
requirentes dicebant, Halgein ydorum, id est, salem affer.
asking they-said halgein ydorum that is salt bring
Hal vero Græce sal dicitur, et haleyn Britannice. Lingua
hal however in-Greek salt is-called and haleyn in-British the-tongue
namque Britannica, propter diutinam quam Britones, qui
for British on-account-of the-long which the-Britons who
tunc Trojani, et postea Britones a Bruto eorum duce
then Trojans and afterward Britons from Brutus their leader
sunt vocati, post Trojæ excidium moram in Græcia fecerant,
were called after of-Troy the-destruction stay in Greece had-made
in multis Græco idiomati conformis invenitur.
in many-things to-the-Greek idiom conformable is-found
Hic autem mihi notabile videtur, quod in uno verbo tot
here however to-me notable it-seems that in one word so-many
linguas convenire non invenio, sicut in isto. Hal enim Græce,
tongues to-agree not I-find as in this hal for in-Greek
Halein Britannice, Halein similiter Hibernice; Halgein, g
halein in-British halein likewise in-Irish halgein with-g

interposita, lingua prædicta. Item sal Latine, — quia, ut ait
inserted in-the-tongue aforesaid likewise sal in-Latin because as says
Priscianus, in quibusdam dictionibus pro aspiratione ponitur
Priscian in certain words for aspiration is-put
s; ut Hal Græce, sal Latine; hemi, semi; hepta, septem, —
s as hal in-Greek sal in-Latin hemi semi hepta septem
Sel Gallice, mutatione a vocalis in e, a Latino; additione
sel in-French by-the-change of-a the-vowel into e from the-Latin by-the-addition
t literæ, salt Anglice, sout Teutonice. Habetis ergo septem
of-t the-letter salt in-English sout in-German you-have therefore seven
linguas, vel octo, in hac una dictione plurimum concordantes.
tongues or eight in this one word very-much agreeing
Sin autem interpositæ relationis de veritate quid sentiam
if however of-the-inserted account about the-truth what I-think
scrupulosus investigator inquiras, cum Augustino respondeo,
a-scrupulous investigator you-ask with Augustine I-answer
admiranda fore divina miracula, non disputatione discutienda:
to-be-wondered-at to-be divine miracles not by-disputation to-be-discussed
nec ego negando divinæ potentiæ terminos pono, nec affirmando
nor I by-denying of-divine power limits set nor by-affirming
eam quæ extendi non potest insolenter extendo. Sed illud
that which to-be-extended not can insolently do-I-extend but that
Ieronymi semper in talibus ad animum revoco: "Multa,"
of-Jerome always in such-things to mind I-recall many
inquit, "incredibilia reperies, nec verisimilia, quæ nihilominus
he-says incredible-things you-will-find nor likely which nevertheless
tamen vera sunt. Nihil enim contra naturæ Dominum prævalet
however true are nothing for against of-nature the-Lord prevails
natura." Hæc igitur, et his similia, si quæ contigerint,
nature these-things therefore and to-these like if any shall-have-happened

juxta Augustini sententiam inter illa locaverim, quæ
according-to of-Augustine the-opinion among those-things I-would-place which
nec affirmanda plurimum, neque neganda decreverim.
neither to-be-affirmed very-much nor to-be-denied I-would-decide

KIDWELLY, CARMARTHEN, AND WHITLAND

At Kidwelly Gwenllian, wife of Gruffydd son of Rhys, led an army against Maurice of London and was killed with one of her sons. Maurice's wife persuaded him that his deer were killing sheep by stuffing wool into their bellies. Carmarthen, Merlin's city, stands on the Tywi near Dinevor, and a spring in Cantref Bychan ebbs and flows. At Pencader a dean led Henry II's spy by the worst ways and ate grass to show the land poor. Near Whitland a youth was killed on his way to the archbishop, and the twelve archers of St Clears who killed him took the cross in penance.

De Lochur et Wendrayth fluviis transcursis; de Kedwely
about the-Loughor and Gwendraeth rivers crossed about Kidwelly
quoque; cum notabilibus suis.
also with notable-things its
Transivimus inde versus aquam de Locher per campestria, in
we-passed thence toward the-water of Loughor through the-plains in
quibus Howelus, filius Moreduci de Brecheniauc, post obitum
which Hywel son of-Maredudd of Brecknock after the-death
regis Henrici primi, Anglos de finibus illis, et milites multos,
of-king Henry first the-English from bounds those and knights many
publico bello confectos interemit. Fluvio vero de Locher
in-public war finished killed with-the-river however of Loughor
transvadato, et aquis postea quæ Wendraith dicuntur
forded and with-the-waters afterward which Gwendraeth are-called
transmeatis, ad castrum de Kedwely via duce pervenimus.
crossed to the-castle of Kidwelly with-the-way leading we-came

In partibus istis, Anglorum rege Henrico primo rebus
in parts these of-the-English with-the-king Henry first from-things
humanis exempto, dum Griphinus Resi filius, Sudwalliæ tunc
human removed while Gruffydd of-Rhys son of-South-Wales then
princeps, in Norwalliam auxilium corrogaturus ivisset, uxor ejus
prince into North-Wales help about-to-gather had-gone wife his
Guendoloena, tanquam Amazonum regina et Pentesilea secunda,
Gwenllian as-if of-the-Amazons queen and Penthesilea second
in partes illas exercitum ducens, a Mauricio Londoniensi,
into parts those an-army leading by Maurice of-London
loci illius tunc domino, et viro egregio Gaufrido, præsulis
of-place that then lord and a-man excellent Geoffrey of-the-bishop
constabulario, bellico in certamine confecta, interempto ibidem
constable in-warlike in combat finished with-killed there
filio ejusdem Morgano, et altero capto, scilicet Mailgone,
son of-the-same Morgan and the-other captured namely Maelgwn
quos pueros secum in expeditionem arroganter adduxerat,
whom as-boys with-her on the-expedition arrogantly she-had-brought
cum aliis multis ipsa demum ferro confossa caput amisit.
with others many she at-last with-the-sword pierced the-head lost
Tempore vero Anglorum regis Henrici primi, tranquillum pacis
in-the-time however of-the-English of-king Henry first the-tranquil of-peace
statum Guallia sortita, cum prædictus ille Mauricius silvam
state with-Wales having-obtained when aforesaid that Maurice a-forest
in partibus illis haberet, ferarum multitudine, cervorumque
in parts those had of-wild-beasts with-a-multitude and-of-stags
præcipue valde copiosam, nimiæque parcitatis in ferina fuisset;
especially very abundant and-of-too-great sparingness in game had-been
quoniam, ut moris est, semper in viri fallacia est uxor
since as of-custom it-is always in of-a-man deceit is the-wife
astuta, miro mulier est usa commento. Habebat enim
cunning with-a-wonderful the-woman has used device had for

vir ille a latere silvæ versus mare pascua magna, et ovium
man that on the-side of-the-forest toward the-sea pastures great and of-sheep
in pascuis copiam multam. Mulier itaque, pastores omnes,
in the-pastures a-plenty great the-woman therefore the-shepherds all
et majores domus, figmenti sui complices habens et fautores,
and the-seniors of-the-house of-the-fiction her accomplices having and abettors
simplicis utendo commoditate viri, in hæc verba ad maritum
simple by-using the-convenience of-the-man in these words to her-husband
accessit; erat enim simplicis naturæ simul et tenacis; "Mirum,"
approached he-was for of-simple nature at-once and tenacious strange
inquit, "quod bestiarum dominator bestiis dominari jam
she-says that of-beasts the-master over-beasts to-rule now
desiisti, et cervis non utendo, cervis jam non imperas
you-have-ceased and the-stags not by-using to-the-stags now not you-command
sed servis. Et ecce quantus abusus ex nimia surgit patientia.
but to-the-slaves and behold how-great an-abuse from too-much rises patience
Inaudita namque rabie, et insueta voracitate, adeo in
with-unheard-of for rage and unaccustomed voracity so against
oves nostras desæviunt, ut ex multis paucæ, et ex fere
sheep our they-rage that from many few and from almost
innumeris jam reddantur numerosæ." Ut autem probabiliorem
innumerable now are-rendered countable that however a-more-probable
redderet assertionem, evisceratis cervis duobus, inter
she-might-render the-assertion with-disemboweled stags two among
ipsa intestina lanam interseri procuravit. Sic itaque vir,
the-very entrails wool to-be-inserted she-procured so therefore the-man
deceptus muliebri astutia, canum rapacitati cervos exposuit.
deceived by-womanly cunning of-the-dogs to-the-rapacity the-stags exposed

De fluvio Tewiensi navigio transcurso; de Kaermerdhyn
about the-river Tywi by-ship crossed about Carmarthen
quoque, et Albælandæ monasterio; cum notabilibus suis.
also and of-Whitland the-monastery with notable-things its
Transeuntes inde navigio flumen Tewiense, et versus
passing thence by-ship the-river Tywi and toward
Kaermerdin iter arripientes, Landestephan et Talacharn
Carmarthen the-journey taking Llansteffan and Laugharne
marinis in scopulis a læva reliquimus. Erant autem hæc duo
on-sea on rocks on the-left we-left were moreover these two
castra, quæ Resus filius Griphini, post obitum Anglorum
castles which Rhys son of-Gruffydd after the-death of-the-English
regis Henrici secundi, desperatione custodum, citra insultum
king Henry second by-the-despair of-the-guards without assault
occupavit: deinde provinciis de Pembroch et Ros cædibus,
occupied then with-the-provinces of Pembroke and Rhos by-slaughters
incendiis, et deprædationibus fere exterminio datis, frustrato
burnings and plunderings almost to-extermination given with-frustrated
conamine Kairmerdin obsedit. Sonat autem Kairmerdin urbs
effort Carmarthen he-besieged sounds moreover Caerfyrddin the-city
Merlini; eo quod, juxta Britannicam historiam, ibi ex
of-Merlin on-that because according-to the-British history there from
incubo genitus inventus fuerat Merlinus. Est igitur hæc urbs
an-incubus begotten found had-been Merlin is therefore this city
antiqua, coctilibus muris, partim adhuc extantibus, egregie
ancient with-brick walls partly still standing excellently
clausa, super nobilem Tewi fluvium sita, silvis et pratis
enclosed above the-noble Tywi river situated in-woods and meadows
abundans. Habet autem Kantrefmaur, id est, Kantaredum
abounding it-has moreover Cantref-Mawr that is the-cantred
magnum, ab oriente, copiosa silvarum condensitate australis
great on the-east with-copious of-woods density of-southern

Kambriæ civibus tutissimum in necessitate refugium:
Wales for-the-citizens the-safest in need refuge
ubi et castrum Dynewr, in collis excelsi vertice super
where also the-castle Dinevor on of-a-hill high the-summit above
fluvium Tewi situm, quod et principalis Sudwalliæ curia
the-river Tywi situated which also the-principal of-South-Wales court
dicitur. Fuerant enim antiquitus tres principales in Wallia
is-called there-had-been for anciently three principal in Wales
curiæ; Dynevur in Sudwallia; Aberfrau in Norwallia, scilicet
courts Dinevor in South-Wales Aberffraw in North-Wales namely
apud Moniam; in Powisia apud Pengwern, quod et nunc
in Anglesey in Powys at Pengwern which also now
Slopesburia dicitur. Sonat autem Penguern caput alneti.
Shrewsbury is-called sounds moreover Pengwern the-head of-the-alder-grove
In his autem de Kantrefmaur finibus, kemmoto videlicet
in these however of Cantref-Mawr bounds in-the-commote namely
de Kaoc, illud ad animum revocans,
of Caeo that to mind recalling

"Dolus, an virtus, quis in hoste requirat?"
"Guile, or valor, who in an-enemy would-ask?"

et illud,
and that

"Et si non recte possis, quocunque modo rem;"
"And if not rightly you-can, by-whatever means the-thing;"

quam enormiter in subditos, hoc nostro tempore, curia
how enormously against its-subjects in-this our time the-court
vindictam exercuerit, noster explicare stilus abhorruit.
vengeance has-exercised our to-unfold pen has-shrunk

Juxta Dinevur, trans flumen scilicet Tewi, in Cantrefbochan, id
near Dinevor across the-river namely Tywi in Cantref-Bychan that
est, kantaredo brevi, est fons qui die naturali bis undis
is in-the-cantred little is a-spring which in-a-day natural twice in-its-waters
deficiens, et toties exuberans, marinas imitari solet instabilitates.
failing and as-often overflowing of-the-sea to-imitate is-wont the-instabilities
Non procul a Kairmerdhin, ex parte boreali scilicet, apud
not far from Carmarthen on the-side northern namely at
Pencadeir, id est, cathedræ caput, Reso Griphini filio,
Pencader that is of-the-chair the-head with-Rhys of-Gruffydd son
nostris diebus, ad deditionem dolose magis quam virtuose
in-our days to surrender by-guile more than by-valor
compulso, et in Angliam ducto, rex Anglorum Henricus
compelled and into England led the-king of-the-English Henry
secundus de Armorica oriundum Britannia militem quemdam,
second from Armorican sprung Brittany a-knight certain
de cujus prudentia simul et fidelitate confidebat, sub
in whose prudence at-once and fidelity he-trusted under
decani de Cantrefmaur conductu cui nomen Guaidanus,
of-the-dean of Cantref-Mawr the-escort to-whom the-name Gwaidan
castrum Dinevur, locique situm, et patriæ munitionem
the-castle Dinevor and-of-the-place the-site and of-the-country the-fortification
exploraturum transmisit. Presbyter autem, monitus ut per
about-to-explore sent the-priest however advised that by
viam meliorem ad castrum et faciliorem militi præberet
the-way better to the-castle and easier to-the-knight he-should-furnish
iter, per magis difficiles et inaccessibiles aditus ipsum
the-journey through more difficult and inaccessible approaches him
ex industria circumduxit. Et ubicunque per saltus herbosos
on purpose led-around and wherever through glades grassy
transsitum faciebant, cum intueuntium admiratione presbyter
a-crossing they-made with of-the-onlookers wonder the-priest

herbam pascebatur; asserens accolas et indigenas herbis et
on-grass fed asserting the-neighbors and natives on-grasses and
radicibus, ingruente inedia, vivere et vesci solere. Ad regem
roots with-pressing want to-live and to-feed to-be-wont to the-king
itaque milite reverso, cunctisque relatis quæ vel digna
therefore with-the-knight returned and-with-all related which either worthy
relatu viderat vel audierat; terram scilicet inhabitabilem,
of-relating he-had-seen or had-heard a-land namely uninhabitable
terram inviam et inaccessibilem, nullique genti nisi bestiali
a-land pathless and inaccessible and-to-no people except bestial
et bestiarum more viventi victui necessariam; demum
and of-beasts in-the-manner living for-food necessary at-last
fidei sacramentique nodis, necnon et obsidum vinculis
of-faith and-of-oath by-the-knots and-also also of-hostages by-the-bonds
astrictum, Resum rex ad sua remisit.
bound Rhys the-king to his-own sent-back
Progressis inde nobis versus Cisterciense monasterium quod
with-advanced thence us toward the-Cistercian monastery which
Alba domus dicitur, adsunt quidam nuntiantes archiepiscopo
the-White House is-called are-present certain-men announcing to-the-archbishop
juvenem quemdam Kambrensem, ei devote occurrentem,
a-youth certain Welsh to-him devoutly coming-to-meet
obiter ab hostibus interemtum. Ad quem non procul a
on-the-way by enemies killed to whom not far from
via divertens, corpusque cruentum elemosynarii sui operiri
the-way turning-aside and-the-body bloody of-almoner his to-be-covered
pallio jubens, jugulati juvenis animam pia supplicatione
with-the-cloak ordering of-the-slain youth the-soul with-pious supplication
commendavit. Igitur in crastino, sagittariis duodecim de
he-commended therefore on the-morrow with-archers twelve from
Sancti Clari castello satis propinquo, qui juvenem prædictum
of-Saint Clears the-castle sufficiently near who the-youth aforesaid

jugulaverant, apud Albam domum in pœnam criminis
had-slain at the-White House in penalty of-the-crime
crucesignatis; tribusque fluviis, primo Taph, deinde Cledeu
signed-with-the-cross and-with-three rivers first the-Taf then the-Cleddau
sub Lanwadein, alteroque Cledeu sub Haverfordia transmeatis,
below Llawhaden and-the-other Cleddau below Haverford crossed
demum Haverfordiam pervenimus. Sortita est autem inde
at-last to-Haverford we-came obtained has moreover thence
provincia nomen, inter duos hos fluvios sita, Deugledeu;
the-province its-name between two these rivers situated Daugleddau
eo quod duobus his fluviis quasi duobus gladiis cingatur
on-that because by-two these rivers as-if by-two swords it-is-girded
et terminetur. Cledeu namque Britannice gladius Latine.
and bounded cleddau for in-British sword in-Latin

HAVERFORD AND THE FLEMINGS

At Haverford the Welsh wept at Gerald's sermon in Latin and French, a blind woman was healed by a clod from the preaching place, and the Flemings of Rhos are described. A robber in Haverford's tower seized three boys and freed them only for a promise of pardon; at Châteauroux a blinded man threw himself from a tower with his lord's son. Richard son of Tancard inherited all as the hermit Caradog had promised. The Flemings read the future in a ram's shoulder blade, as William Mangunel's wife unwittingly read her own adultery in one, and such readers foresaw the ruin after Henry I's death.

De Haverfordia et Ros; cum notabilibus suis.
about Haverford and Rhos with notable-things its
Apud Haverfordiam itaque primo ab archipræsule sermone
at Haverford therefore first by the-archprelate with-a-sermon
facto, deinde ab archidiacono Menevensi, cujus nomen
made then by the-archdeacon of-St-Davids whose name

præsentis opusculi titulus tenet, verbo Domini gratiose
of-the-present little-work the-title holds with-the-word of-the-Lord graciously
prolato, turbæ allecta est multitudo tam militaris quam
uttered of-the-crowd enticed was a-multitude as-much military as
plebiæ. Ubi et pro mirando, et quasi pro miraculo ducebatur
common where also for wonderful and as-if for a-miracle it-was-reckoned
a multis, quod ad verbum Domini ab archidiacono prolatum,
by many that at the-word of-the-Lord by the-archdeacon uttered
cum tamen lingua Latina et Gallica loqueretur, non
when nevertheless in-the-tongue Latin and French he-spoke not
minus illi qui neutram linguam noverunt, quam alii,
less those who neither tongue knew than the-others
tam ad lacrimarum affluentiam moti fuerunt, quam etiam
as-much to of-tears an-outpouring moved were as also
ad crucis signaculum catervatim accurrerunt.
to of-the-cross the-sign in-crowds ran
Accidit autem aniculam partium istarum, quæ per triennium
it-happened moreover an-old-woman of-parts these who for three-years
antea cæca fuerat, audito archipræsulis adventu, filium suum
before blind had-been with-heard of-the-archprelate the-coming son her
adolescentem, ut vel de fimbria vestimenti ejusdem aliquam
a-youth that even from the-fringe of-garment his some
particulam ei referret, ad locum prædicationis destinasse.
small-part to-her he-might-bring to the-place of-preaching to-have-sent
Qui cum ad archiepiscopum ob turbam consertam
who when to the-archbishop on-account-of the-crowd packed
accedere non potuisset, glebam quam sub pedibus prædicantis
to-approach not had-been-able a-clod which under the-feet of-the-preacher
turba dilapsa signaverat secum matri reportavit. Ipsa
the-crowd dispersed had-marked with-him to-his-mother brought-back she
vero munus oblatum cum gaudio magno suscipiens, et in
however the-gift offered with joy great receiving and toward

orientem cum orationum instantia genua ponens, ori
the-east with of-prayers urgency the-knees placing to-her-mouth
et oculis cespitem apposuit; et statim luminis lætitiam,
and eyes the-turf applied and at-once of-light the-joy
quam penitus amiserat, tam viri sancti meritis, quam
which wholly she-had-lost as-much of-the-man holy by-the-merits as
fide propria et devotione recuperavit.
by-faith own and devotion recovered
Erat autem gens hæc originem a Flandria ducens, ab
was moreover people this its-origin from Flanders drawing by
Anglorum rege Henrico primo ad hos fines inhabitandum
of-the-English king Henry first to these bounds for-inhabiting
transmissa. Gens fortis et robusta, continuoque belli conflictu
sent a-people brave and robust and-in-continual of-war conflict
gens Kambrensibus inimicissima; gens, inquam, lanificiis,
a-people to-the-Welsh most-hostile a-people I-say in-wool-working
gens mercimoniis usitatissima; quocunque labore sive periculo
a-people in-trade most-practiced by-whatever labor or danger
terra marique lucrum quærere gens pervalida; vicissim
by-land and-sea gain to-seek a-people very-strong in-turn
loco et tempore nunc ad aratrum, nunc ad arma, gens
by-place and time now to the-plow now to arms a-people
promptissima; gens utique felix et fortis, si vel regibus
most-ready a-people certainly happy and brave if either to-the-kings
ut deceret Kambria cordi fuisset, vel præstitutis saltem
as it-would-befit Wales at-heart had-been or to-the-appointed at-least
et præfectis injuriarum dedecus animo vindice displicuisset.
and prefects of-injuries the-shame with-mind avenging had-displeased
Contigit autem prædicto in castro, nostris diebus, res
it-happened moreover in-the-aforesaid in castle in-our days a-thing
nequaquam prætereunda. In ejusdem castri turre tenebatur in
by-no-means to-be-passed-over in of-the-same castle the-tower was-held in

vinculis latro famosus; ad quem pueri tres, filius scilicet comitis
chains a-robber notorious to whom boys three the-son namely of-the-earl
Clarensis, ibi nutrituræ commissus, et alii duo, quorum
of-Clare there to-nurture entrusted and the-other two of-whom
alter herilis filius, alter ejusdem ex filia nepos, propter
one the-lordly son the-other of-the-same by daughter grandson on-account-of
missilia lignea, quæ eis arcu mittenda ferro formare
the-missiles wooden which for-them from-a-bow to-be-sent with-iron to-shape
consueverat, frequenter conveniebant. Quadam autem die,
he-had-been-accustomed often came-together on-a-certain moreover day
puerorum precibus, ad auras ab imo nequam extractus,
of-the-boys at-the-prayers to the-air from the-bottom the-wretch drawn-out
captata carcerarii absentia, ocius ostia claudens, tam ipsum
with-seized of-the-jailer the-absence quickly the-doors closing as-much him
exclusit, quam pueros quoque secum inclusit. Quo perpetrato,
he-shut-out as the-boys also with-himself he-shut-in which perpetrated
statim clamor factus est magnus, tam intus puerorum, quam
at-once an-outcry made was great as-much inside of-the-boys as
exterius populorum; nec cessavit ille elevata securi mortem
outside of-the-people nor ceased he with-raised axe death
pueris acriter interminare, donec ei tam indemnitatis
to-the-boys fiercely to-threaten until to-him as-much of-indemnity
quam vitæ securitas sub cautione certissima fuerat indulta.
as of-life security under guarantee most-certain had-been granted
In Francorum quoque regno quondam, [apud castellum
in of-the-Franks also the-kingdom once at the-castle
Radulphi,] casus accidit haud dissimilis. Dominator enimvero
of-Ralph a-case happened not unlike the-lord indeed
loci illius quem olim exoculaverat in castro quemdam alebat:
of-place that whom once he-had-blinded in the-castle a-certain-man kept
qui cum, ex diutina frequentia, vias castri cunctas,
who when from long frequenting the-ways of-the-castle all

turriumque gradus et ascensus, cordis oculo jam tenuisset,
and-of-the-towers the-steps and ascents of-the-heart with-the-eye now had-held
semel, ira vindice, opportunitate captata, puerum quemdam
once with-anger avenging with-opportunity seized a-boy certain
castellani filium, quem unicum habebat et heredem, ad summa
of-the-castellan the-son whom only he-had and heir to the-highest
turris propugnacula secum adduxit. Stans igitur in alto,
of-the-tower battlements with-himself brought standing therefore on high
et, clausis intus ostiis, ruinam puero parans, ad clamorem
and with-closed within the-doors a-fall for-the-boy preparing to outcry
magnum et mœrorem universos provocavit. Procedens itaque
great and grief all he-provoked coming-forward therefore
pueri pater, et non mediocri dolore concussus, cum
of-the-boy the-father and by-not moderate sorrow struck when
filii redimere sospitatem modis omnibus attemptasset,
of-his-son to-redeem the-safety by-means all he-had-tried
responsum accepit, nisi per partium inferiorum mutilationem,
the-answer received unless by of-the-parts lower the-mutilation
quam et sibi intulerat, hoc nullatenus fieri posse.
which also on-himself he-had-inflicted this in-no-way to-be-done could
Ipse vero, multis antea frustra allegatis, demum hoc
he however with-many before in-vain alleged at-last with-this
concesso, quasi præcisis illis, cum lugubri circumstantium
granted as-if with-cut-off those with mournful of-the-bystanders
clamore ictum in trunco fieri fecit. Cæcus autem
outcry a-blow on the-trunk to-be-made caused the-blind-man however
graviores angustias ubi sentiret cum requisisset, et responsum
more-grievous pangs where he-felt when he-had-asked and the-answer
quoniam in renibus falsum esse proclamans, puerum iterum
since in the-loins false to-be proclaiming the-boy again
præcipitare paravit. Ictu itaque denuo dato, et angustias
to-throw-down prepared with-a-blow therefore anew given and the-pangs

sibi in corde majores esse responso, dominum arguens
to-himself in the-heart greater to-be by-the-answer the-lord accusing
falsitatis, puerum ad præcipitium exportavit. Tertio vero,
of-falsehood the-boy to the-precipice he-carried-out the-third-time however
genitum ut redimat genitor, instrumenta gignendi vere
the-begotten that he-may-redeem the-begetter the-instruments of-begetting truly
præcidit. Et cum in dentibus se sentire dolorem proclamasset;
cut-off and when in the-teeth himself to-feel the-pain he-had-proclaimed
"Verum," inquit ille, "quia experto credendum; et jam
true he-says he because to-the-experienced it-must-be-believed and now
injurias ultus ex parte, mortem mitius aggrediar; et
the-injuries having-avenged in part death more-mildly I-shall-approach and
tu de cetero nec alium gignes, nec isto gaudebis." Eoque
you for the-rest neither another will-beget nor in-this will-rejoice and-with-that
dicto, exsiliens ab alto, se cum puero præcipitem dedit:
said leaping-out from on-high himself with the-boy headlong gave
et statim in ima corruens, membris minutim confractis,
and at-once into the-depths falling with-limbs into-small-pieces shattered
expiravit uterque. Miles autem pro anima pueri monasterium,
expired both the-knight however for the-soul of-the-boy a-monastery
quod adhuc extat, et De doloribus dicitur, ibidem construxit.
which still stands and Of the-Sorrows is-called there built
Hoc autem mihi notabile videtur, quod ad prædicti loci
this however to-me notable it-seems that to of-the-aforesaid place
castellanum, Ricardum scilicet Tancardi filium, cum tamen
the-castellan Richard namely of-Tancard son when nevertheless
fratres habuerit plurimos et probos, et omnium junior
brothers he-had very-many and upright and of-all the-youngest
extiterit, præmortuis aliis, universa est hereditas devoluta.
had-been with-dead-before the-others the-whole was inheritance devolved
Similiter et ad Resum Griphini filium, sublatis de medio
likewise also to Rhys of-Gruffydd son with-removed from the-midst

multis antea fratribus probis et pulcherrimis, dextralis
many before brothers upright and most-handsome of-right-hand
Kambriæ dominium est devolutum.
Wales the-lordship was devolved
Contigit autem, prædicto Ricardo pueriles annos agente,
it-happened moreover with-the-aforesaid Richard boyish years passing
virum sanctum, cui nomen Karodocus, apud Sanctum
a-man holy to-whom the-name Caradog at Saint
Hysmaelem in Rosensi provincia eremiticam et sanctissimam
Ishmael's in the-Rhos province a-hermit and most-holy
vitam ducere: ad quem puer tam a patre sæpius quam
life to-lead to whom the-boy as-much by his-father often as
a matre transmissus, cibariorum exenia quia frequenter
by his-mother sent of-foods gifts because often
ferre consueverat, tantam in oculis viri boni gratiam
to-carry he-had-been-accustomed so-great in the-eyes of-the-man good favor
obtinuit, ut ei sæpissime cum sua benedictione fratrum
obtained that to-him very-often with his blessing of-the-brothers
omnium felicitatem et paternam hereditatem compromitteret.
all the-happiness and the-paternal inheritance he-promised
Accidit autem aliquando, prædictum Ricardum ob
it-happened moreover once the-aforesaid Richard on-account-of
pluviam inundantem ad domum eremiticam divertisse. Et
rain flooding to the-house of-the-hermit to-have-turned-aside and
cum canes, quos secum ad venatum adduxerat, nec vocatione,
when the-dogs which with-him to hunting he-had-brought neither by-calling
nec adulatione, nec etiam cibi oblatione, ad se introducere
nor by-coaxing nor even of-food by-the-offer to himself to-bring-in
posset, subridens vir sanctus, et ipsos manu leniter
he-could smiling the-man holy and to-them with-his-hand gently
annuens, statim ad se venientes cunctos suscepit.
nodding at-once to himself coming all received

Processu vero temporis, cum diem Karadocus jam
in-the-course however of-time when the-day Caradog now
clausisset extremum, et vitæ labentis cursum fine felici
had-closed last and of-life gliding the-course with-an-end happy
consummasset, corpus suum, quod libero postremæ voluntatis
had-consummated the-body his which by-the-free of-last will
stilo Menevensi ecclesiæ delegaverat, Ricardi pater Tancardus
pen to-the-St-Davids church he-had-delegated of-Richard the-father Tancard
violenta præsumptione detinuit: sed statim ægritudine gravi
by-violent presumption detained but at-once by-sickness grave
correptus, mandatum ocius revocavit. Cum itaque semel et
seized the-command quickly revoked when therefore once and
iterum hoc ei contigisset, Pharaoni in hoc haud dissimilis, qui
again this to-him had-happened to-Pharaoh in this not unlike who
populum Dei plagis urgentibus abire promisit, cessantibus
the-people of-God with-plagues pressing to-go-away promised with-ceasing
eisdem in irritum revocavit, tertio tam morbo laxato
the-same into nothing revoked the-third-time as-much with-the-disease relaxed
quam mandato, cum corpus versus Meneviam per sabulum
as with-the-command when the-body toward St-Davids over the-sand
de Neugol deferretur, et exuberantem in pluviam nube
of Newgale was-carried and overflowing into rain with-a-cloud
resoluta, totoque comitatu pluvia perfuso, sacræ vecturæ
dissolved and-with-whole retinue with-rain drenched of-the-sacred carriage
duces a latebris exeuntes, palla serica feretrum opertum
the-leaders from hiding-places coming-out with-a-pall silken the-bier covered
ab omni imbrium madore indemne reperiunt et immune. Et
from all of-the-rains wet undamaged they-find and immune and
sic Meneviam corpus allatum, crebra miraculorum tam
so to-St-Davids the-body brought with-frequent of-miracles as-much
præsentium quam sequentium quoque coruscatione, in ecclesiæ
present as following also flashing in of-the-church

Sancti Andreæ Sanctique David ala sinistra, juxta altare
of-Saint Andrew and-of-Saint David the-aisle left near the-altar
sancti protomartyris Stephani, debita est celebritate tumulatum.
of-the-holy protomartyr Stephen with-due was celebration entombed
Hoc autem mihi videtur hac de gente notandum, quod in
this moreover to-me it-seems this about people to-be-noted that in
armis arietum dextris, carne nudatis, et non assis
the-shoulder-blades of-rams right with-flesh stripped and not roasted
sed elixis, tam futura prospiciunt, quam præterita et antea
but boiled as-much the-future they-foresee as the-past and before
incognita longe respiciunt; tempore quoque præsentia, sed
unknown far they-look-back in-time also present-things but
loco absentia, quasi prophetico quodam spiritu arte miranda
in-place absent as-if prophetic by-a-certain spirit by-art wonderful
cognoscunt; pacis et guerræ signa, cædes et incendia,
they-know of-peace and of-war the-signs slaughters and fires
domestica adulteria, regis statum, vitam, et obitum,
domestic adulteries of-the-king the-state life and death
rimularum quarundam et notularum indiciis certissime
of-little-cracks certain and of-marks by-the-indications most-certainly
declarant. Unde et nostris contigit temporibus, virum
they-declare whence also in-our it-happened times a-man
quemdam partium istarum non ignobilem, et in arte prædicta
certain of-parts these not ignoble and in the-art aforesaid
præ aliis instructum, cui nomen Guillelmus Mangunel,
beyond others instructed to-whom the-name William Mangunel
uxorem habere de proprio viri nepote prægnantem.
a-wife to-have by own of-the-man nephew pregnant
Cujus eventus vir non ignarus, arietem de ovili proprio
of-which the-event the-man not ignorant a-ram from the-fold own
sumptum, ex parte cujusdam vicini sui, coram uxore, sibi
taken from the-part of-a-certain neighbor his before his-wife to-himself

præsentari procuravit. Quo statim ad coquinam transmisso,
to-be-presented procured which at-once to the-kitchen sent
cum eodem die in prandio sedissent, armum arietis, debito
when on-the-same day at dinner they-had-sat the-shoulder of-the-ram in-due
more decoctum et purgatum, ad inspiciendum vir mulieri,
manner boiled and cleaned for inspecting the-man to-the-woman
quam in hoc peritam noverat, ex industria porrexit. Quem
whom in this skilled he-knew on purpose handed which
cum paulisper intuita fuisset, rimulas notans et signa
when for-a-little looked-at she-had the-little-cracks noting and the-signs
secreta, os et oraculum in mensa subridendo projecit.
secret the-bone and oracle on the-table smiling she-threw-down
Ille vero cuncta dissimulans, cum risus causam reique
he however all dissembling when of-the-laugh the-cause and-of-the-thing
notitiam tanto vehementius efflagitasset, illa demum, tanquam
knowledge so-much more-vehemently had-demanded she at-last as-if
importuna viri victa instantia, respondit: "Vir, de
by-the-importunate of-the-man overcome insistence answered the-man from
cujus ovili aries hic fuerat, uxorem habet adulteram, et
whose fold ram this had-been a-wife has adulterous and
proprii nepotis incestu jam gravidam effectam." Ad hæc
by-own of-nephew incest now pregnant made to these-things
autem vir subtristis, vultuque demisso; "Verum," inquit,
however the-man somewhat-sad and-with-face downcast true he-says
"oraculum profers, et nimia veritate subnixum, unde et
an-oracle you-utter and by-too-great truth supported whence also
tanto mihi dolendum fortius, quanto in propriam injuriam
by-so-much to-me to-be-grieved more-strongly by-as-much to own injury
publicata redundat ignominia." At illa tantam sui comperto
published redounds the-disgrace but she so-great on-her with-found-out
crimine confusionem dissimulare non prævalens, interiorem
crime confusion to-dissemble not being-able the-inner

animi passionem signis exterioribus, urgente vicissim tam
of-mind passion by-signs outward with-urging in-turn as-much
pudore quam angustia, nunc rubore vultus, nunc pallore,
shame as distress now with-redness of-face now with-pallor
demum vero lacrimis more muliebri est protestata.
at-last however with-tears in-the-manner womanly has declared
Præterea oblatus est cuidam armus caprei quasi pro
moreover offered was to-a-certain-man the-shoulder of-a-goat as-if for
ovino, quia simillima sunt ossa purgata. Qui, notatis
an-ovine because most-similar are the-bones cleaned who with-noted
rimulis parumper et signis, cum admiratione subjecit;
the-little-cracks for-a-little and signs with wonder added
"Infelix pecus, quia nunquam novit multiplicari; infelix et
unhappy beast because never it-has-known to-be-multiplied unhappy also
pecudis dominus, qui nunquam ultra tres vel quatuor in uno
of-the-beast the-owner who never beyond three or four in one
grege habere prævaluit." Destructionem quoque patriæ post
flock to-have has-prevailed the-destruction also of-the-country after
obitum regis Henrici primi, per annum ante vel dimidium,
the-death of-king Henry first for a-year before or half
multi in humeris præviderunt; qui, venditis universis quæ
many in shoulder-blades foresaw who with-sold all-things which
possidebant, tam mobilibus quam immobilibus, indemnes per
they-possessed as-much movable as immovable unharmed by
industriam patria relicta imminens excidium evaserunt.
industry with-the-country left the-impending ruin escaped
Contigit etiam in Flandriæ finibus, unde gens ista descenderat,
it-happened also in of-Flanders the-bounds whence people this had-descended
viro quodam vicino suo os hujusmodi ad inspiciendum
with-a-man certain to-neighbor his a-bone of-this-kind for inspecting
transmittente, quod portitor obiter fossam transiliendo
sending that the-carrier on-the-way a-ditch by-leaping-across

[fissa nate] crepitum dedit, quem statim viri naribus,
with-split buttock a-crack gave which at-once of-the-man to-the-nostrils
cujus causa vexabatur, verbis et votis adoptavit. Ille vero
for-whose sake he-was-troubled in-words and wishes he-adopted he however
cui portabatur, armo inspecto, illico subjecit; "Sed
to-whom it-was-carried with-the-shoulder inspected forthwith added but
tu, frater, quod mihi optaveras in naribus habeas."
you brother what for-me you-had-wished in your-nostrils may-you-have
Accidit autem, quod et notabile censui, quemdam nostris
it-happened moreover which also notable I-judged a-certain-man in-our
diebus ensis inspectorem non solum furtum, furtique
days of-a-sword an-inspector not only the-theft and-of-the-theft
tenorem, furem ipsum, furandique modum et circumstantias
the-course the-thief himself and-of-stealing the-manner and circumstances
omnes inspiciendo notasse; verum etiam campanæ pulsum,
all by-inspecting to-have-noted but also of-a-bell the-ringing
et tubæ sonitum, ac si præsentialiter adhuc agerentur
and of-a-trumpet the-sound as if presently still they-were-being-done
quæ jam præterita fuerant, audisse. Mirum itaque quod
which now past had-been to-have-heard strange therefore that
sicut conjurationes illicitæ imaginaria quadam similitudine
as conjurations illicit by-imaginary a-certain likeness
oculis acta, sic et auribus repræsentant accidentia.
to-the-eyes things-done so also to-the-ears represent events

Arnulf of Montgomery built Pembroke of stakes and turf, and Gerald of Windsor held it against the Welsh by throwing out his last flitches and dropping a forged letter. Manorbier, Gerald's birthplace, is the fairest spot of Pembroke, as Pembroke is of Dyfed and Dyfed of Wales. Spirits threw dirt in the houses of Stephen Wiriet and William Not and taunted men with their secrets, and at Stackpole an incubus's son ran Elidyr's household for forty days. Pembroke's falcon killed Henry II's Norwegian hawk at his feet, and the party crossed the sands of Newgale, where a storm in the winter Henry II spent in Ireland had laid bare an ancient forest, and spent the night at St Davids as Bishop Peter's guests.

De Pembrochia, cum notabilibus suis.
about Pembroke with notable-things its
Adjacet autem territorio Rosensi, meridionali maritimoque ex
lies-adjacent moreover to-the-territory of-Rhos on-the-southern and-sea-ward from
latere, interlabente brachio marino, provincia Pembrochiensis;
side with-gliding-between an-arm of-the-sea the-province of-Pembroke
cujus principale municipium, totiusque provinciæ Demeticæ
whose principal town and-of-the-whole province of-Dyfed
caput, in saxosa quadam et oblonga rupis eminentia situm,
the-head on a-rocky certain and oblong of-rock eminence situated
lingua marina de Milverdico portu prosiliens in capite bifurco
a-tongue of-the-sea from of-Milford haven springing-forth in head forked
complectitur. Unde et Pembrochia Caput maritimæ sonat.
embraces whence also Pembroke the-head of-the-sea sounds
Primus hoc castrum Arnulfus de Mungumeri, sub Anglorum
first this castle Arnulf of Montgomery under of-the-English
rege Henrico primo, ex virgis et cespite, tenue satis et exile
king Henry first from stakes and turf slender enough and slight
construxit. Quod postmodum, in Angliam revertens, viro
built which afterward into England returning to-a-man

probo prudentique Giraldo de Windesora, constabulario suo
upright and-prudent Gerald of Windsor constable his
primipiloque, cum paucis custodiendum exposuit. Nec mora.
and-chief-officer with a-few for-guarding entrusted nor delay
Totius australis Kambriæ Gualenses, principe ipsorum viro
of-the-whole of-southern Wales the-Welsh with-the-prince their a-man
bellicoso, Reso scilicet Theodori filio, paulo ante dolo
warlike Rhys namely of-Tewdwr son a-little before by-treachery
suorum apud Brecheniauc interempto, et Grifino filio suo
of-his-own-men at Brecknock killed and with-Gruffydd son his
puero relicto, castrum obsidione cinxerunt. Contigit autem ut
a-boy left the-castle with-siege surrounded it-happened moreover that
nocte quadam, cum milites quindecim castri desertores ex
at-night a-certain when knights fifteen of-the-castle deserters from
desperatione scapham intrantes navigio fugam attemptassent,
despair a-skiff entering by-boat flight had-attempted
in crastino mane Giraldus eorum armigeris arma dominorum
on the-morrow morning Gerald to-their squires the-arms of-their-lords
cum feodis dedit, ipsosque statim militari cingulo
with the-fiefs gave and-them at-once with-the-military belt
decoravit. Invalescente vero et gravius incumbente per
adorned with-growing however and more-heavily pressing through
moram temporis obsidionis incommodo, cum ad ultimam
the-delay of-time of-the-siege discomfort when to the-last
fere inediam jam in castro perducti fuissent, Giraldus, ex
almost starvation already in the-castle brought they-had-been Gerald from
summa prudentia spem simulans et solatia spondens, quatuor
highest prudence hope feigning and consolations promising four
qui adhuc supererant bacones a propugnaculis frustatim
which still remained flitches from the-battlements piece-by-piece
ad hostes projici fecit. Die vero sequente ad figmenta
to the-enemy to-be-thrown caused on-the-day however following to devices

recurrens exquisitiora, literas sigillo suo signatas coram hospitio
returning more-refined a-letter with-seal his sealed before the-lodging
Menevensis episcopi, cui nomen Wilfredus, qui forte tunc
of-the-St-Davids bishop to-whom the-name Wilfred who by-chance then
aderat, tanquam casu a portitore dilapsas inveniri procuravit.
was-present as-if by-chance by the-carrier dropped to-be-found he-procured
Erat autem literarum continentia, quod infra menses quatuor
was moreover of-the-letter the-content that within months four
comitem Arnulfum super castri subventione solicitari non
the-earl Arnulf about of-the-castle relief to-be-troubled not
oporteat. Quo per exercitum literis lectis audito,
it-would-be-needful which by the-army with-the-letter read heard
statim obsidione dispersa ad propria singuli sunt reversi.
at-once with-the-siege dispersed to own-homes each they-have returned
Nec mora. Giraldus ille, ut altiores in finibus illis sibi
nor delay Gerald he that deeper in bounds those for-himself
suisque radices figeret, Griphini principis Sudwalliæ
and-his-own roots he-might-fix of-Gruffydd of-the-prince of-South-Wales
sororem, cui nomen Nesta, sibi lege maritali copulavit.
the-sister to-whom the-name Nest to-himself by-law marital joined
De qua, processu temporis, egregiam utriusque sexus
from whom in-the-course of-time an-excellent of-each sex
prolem suscepit; per quam et Anglis australis Kambriæ
offspring he-received through which both for-the-English of-southern Wales
maritima retenta, et Hiberniæ mœnia [postmodum] sunt
the-coast retained and of-Ireland the-walls afterward were
expugnata, sicut Vaticinalis declarat Historia.
stormed as the-Prophetic declares History
Contigit in hoc Penbrochiæ castro nostris temporibus, virum
it-happened in this of-Pembroke castle in-our times a-man
quemdam intra septa domus suæ mustelæ catulos in vellere
certain within the-enclosures of-house his of-a-weasel the-young in a-fleece

quodam invenisse. Quos cum illæsos ex industria cum ipso
certain to-have-found which when unharmed on purpose with the-very
vellere a loco removens abscondisset, bestiola rediens,
fleece from the-place removing he-had-hidden the-little-beast returning
post crebros undique quærendo nec inveniendo discursus,
after frequent everywhere by-seeking nor finding runnings-about
materno tandem mota dolore, ad vasculum lacte plenum
by-maternal at-length moved grief to a-little-vessel with-milk full
quo parvulus educebatur filius herilis accessit, et statim
by-which the-little was-being-reared son of-the-lord approached and at-once
se supra vas erigens collectum intra se virus evomuit,
itself over the-vessel raising the-gathered within itself venom vomited-forth
et lacteum condimento letali potum infecit; tanquam perditæ
and the-milky with-seasoning deadly drink infected as-if of-the-lost
prolis angustias prolis amissione compensans. Vir autem,
offspring the-distress of-offspring by-the-loss compensating the-man however
his observatis omnibus, vellus ad locum reportavit. Et ecce
with-these observed all the-fleece to the-place carried-back and behold
mustela, materna solicitudine inter spem et metum anxia,
the-weasel with-maternal solicitude between hope and fear anxious

"Falsosque frequens mentita dolores,"
"And-false frequently having-feigned sorrows,"

depositum invenit; et continuo lætitiam tam gestu
the-deposit found and immediately joy as-much by-gesture
quam voce professa, ad vasculum præscriptum celerrime
as by-voice having-professed to the-little-vessel aforesaid most-swiftly
reversa est; eversoque statim continente, totum quod
returned has and-with-overturned at-once the-container all which

continebatur effudit; tanquam recuperatæ prolis ob
was-contained it-poured-out as-if of-the-recovered offspring on-account-of
gratiam, hospitem illæsum fore statuens et indemnem.
the-thanks the-host unharmed to-be resolving and undamaged
Contigit et alibi, cum bestiola hujusmodi fetus teneros,
it-happened also elsewhere when a-little-beast of-this-kind its-young tender
ob solis et auræ temperiem, extra dumos in
on-account-of of-the-sun and of-the-air the-mildness outside the-thickets on
planitiem eduxisset, quod milvus insidians unum ex catulis
the-plain had-led-out that a-kite lying-in-wait one from the-young
asportavit: et statim illa intra fruticum septa cum prole
carried-off and at-once she within of-the-bushes the-enclosure with the-offspring
residua se suscepit, et exquisitæ vindictæ decipulam
remaining herself withdrew and of-exquisite vengeance a-snare
matri dolor ministravit. Exiens igitur, in tumulo quodam
to-the-mother grief supplied going-out therefore on a-mound certain
se resupinam dedit, et in ipso prædonis prospectu
herself on-her-back gave and in the-very of-the-robber sight
jam reversi se quasi mortuam finxit. Et quoniam semper
now returned herself as-if dead feigned and since always
successus augent aviditatem, statim avis eam avide rapiens
successes increase greed at-once the-bird her greedily seizing
ad alta transvexit. Nec mora: et ecce a vindicis animi
to the-heights carried nor delay and behold by of-avenging mind
bestia, venenosi dentis morsu, ad ima corruit jugulata.
the-beast of-venomous tooth with-the-bite to the-depths it-fell with-throat-cut
Distat autem a Penbrochiæ castro quasi miliaribus tribus
is-distant moreover from of-Pembroke the-castle about by-miles three
castellum quod Maynaurpir dicitur, id est, Mansio Pirri:
the-castle which Manorbier is-called that is the-Mansion of-Pyrrus
qui et insulam Caldei habebat, quam Kambri Enispir, id
who also the-island Caldey had which the-Welsh Ynys-Pyr that

est, Insulam Pirri vocant. Stat autem hoc castrum, turribus
is the-Island of-Pyrrus call stands moreover this castle with-towers
et propugnaculis eximium, in collis cujusdam capite versus
and battlements excellent on of-a-hill certain the-head toward
marinum ab occidente portum extenti; a circio et borea
the-sea on the-west harbor extending from the-northwest and the-north
sub ipsis muralibus vivarium habens egregium, tam sui
under the-very walls a-fishpond having excellent as-much by-its
majestate quam aquarum profunditate conspicuum; pomerium
majesty as of-waters by-the-depth conspicuous an-orchard
quoque perpulchrum ab eodem latere, hinc vivario,
also very-beautiful on the-same side on-this-side by-the-fishpond
inde nemore conclusum, tam saxorum prominentia, quam
on-that by-a-grove enclosed as-much of-rocks by-the-prominence as
corylorum quoque proceritate præclaro. A dextra vero castrensis
of-hazels also by-the-tallness splendid on the-right however of-the-castle
promontorii parte, inter castrum scilicet et ecclesiam, ad stagni
of-the-promontory the-side between the-castle namely and the-church to of-a-pool
amplissimi statum et molendini situm, sabulosam vi
very-ample the-standing and of-a-mill the-site a-sandy by-the-force
ventorum convallem indeficientibus undis rivus inserpit. Ab
of-the-winds valley with-unfailing waters a-stream creeps-in from
occidente sinuoso quodam in angulo mare Sabrinum, jamjam
the-west by-winding a-certain in angle the-sea Severn already
prope in Hibernicum vergens, non procul a castro distante
near into the-Irish verging not far from the-castle distant
subintrat; australi scopulo, si paulo in boream se plus
enters-beneath with-the-southern rock if a-little into the-north itself more
protenderet, aptum navium receptioni portum faciente. Naves
it-extended a-fit for-ships to-receiving harbor making ships
igitur quascunque fere a majori Britannia in Hiberniam
therefore whatever almost from greater Britain into Ireland

eurus impellit, ab hoc prospectu tam formidandam
the-east-wind drives from this prospect as-much the-formidable
ventorum inconstantiam, quam furibundam et cæcam fretorum
of-the-winds inconstancy as the-furious and blind of-the-straits
rabiem videas audacter attentare. Terra triticea; piscibus
rage you-may-see boldly to-brave a-land wheat-bearing with-fish
marinis, vinoque venali copiose referta; et, quod omnibus
of-the-sea and-with-wine for-sale copiously stuffed and what all
præstat, ex Hiberniæ confinio aeris salubritate temperata.
surpasses from of-Ireland the-vicinity of-air by-the-salubrity tempered
Terrarum igitur omnium Kambriæ totius, septem cantaredis
of-lands therefore all of-Wales whole with-seven cantreds
conserta Demetia tam pulcherrima est quam potissima;
made-up Dyfed as-much most-beautiful is as most-powerful
Demetiæ vero, Pembrochia; Pembrochiæ quidem, terra
of-Dyfed however Pembroke of-Pembroke indeed the-land
præscripta. Restat igitur, ut Kambriæ totius locus sit hic
described it-remains therefore that of-Wales whole the-place be this
amœnissimus.
most-pleasant
Non itaque mirandum, non venia indignum, si natale
not therefore to-be-wondered-at not of-pardon unworthy if his-native
solum, genialeque territorium, profusioribus laudum titulis
soil and-natal territory with-more-lavish of-praises titles
auctor extulerit.
the-author has-extolled
In his autem Pembrochiæ partibus nostris accidit temporibus,
in these however of-Pembroke parts in-our it-happened times
spiritus immundos cum hominibus non visibiliter sed sensibiliter
spirits unclean with men not visibly but perceptibly
conversatos. In domibus namque primo Stephani cujusdam
to-have-conversed in the-houses for first of-Stephen a-certain

Wiriet, et postea processu temporis Willelmi Not, jactu
Wiriet and afterward in-the-course of-time of-William Not by-the-throwing
sordium, et eorum quibus illudere potius quam lædere
of-dirt and of-those-things by-which to-mock rather than to-harm
videntur, sui præsentiam ostendebant. In domo Guillelmi, non
they-seem their presence they-showed in the-house of-William not
absque frequenti tam hospitis quam hospitum damno, tam
without frequent as-much of-the-host as of-the-guests loss as-much
lineis quam laneis scissuras in vestibus atque foramina faciebat;
in-linen as in-woolen rents in clothes and holes it-made
a quibus eas incommodis nulla poterat diligentia, nulla penitus
from which them discomforts no could diligence no at-all
sera tueri. In domo Stephani, majori miraculo, cum hominibus
bolt protect in the-house of-Stephen with-greater wonder with men
sermocinari consueverat; et conviciantibus ei, quod plerique
to-converse it-was-accustomed and at-those-reviling it which many
ludrico faciebant, a nativitatis tempore gesta, quæ minus ab
in-jest did from of-birth the-time deeds which less by
aliis vel audiri vel sciri voluerant, palam improperabat.
others either to-be-heard or to-be-known they-had-wished openly it-taunted
Si causam quæris eventus hujus et rationem, assignare
if the-cause you-ask of-event this and the-reason to-assign
non præsumo: nisi quod subitæ mutationis, vel paupertatis
not I-presume except that of-sudden change either of-poverty
in divitias, vel potius divitiarum in paupertatem et
into riches or rather of-riches into poverty and
desolationem, præsagium, ut dicitur, esse solebat: sicut et
desolation a-presage as it-is-said to-be it-was-wont as also
in his ambobus paulo post compertum fuit.
in these both a-little after found it-was

Illud autem hic notabile censui, quod nec aquæ benedictæ
that however here notable I-judged that neither of-water blessed
respersione, non tantum communis sed etiam magnæ,
by-the-sprinkling not only common but also great
nec ullius ecclesiastici sacramenti remedio, ab illusionibus
nor of-any ecclesiastical sacrament by-the-remedy from illusions
hujusmodi loca mundantur. Quinimmo sacerdotes ipsi,
of-this-kind places are-cleansed nay-rather priests themselves
cum devotione intrantes, et tam cruce bajula quam
with devotion entering and as-much with-the-cross carried as
aqua benedicta muniti, statim inter primos sordium
with-water blessed fortified at-once among the-first of-dirt
jactu dehonestantur. Ex quibus constare videtur, quod
by-the-throwing are-dishonored from which to-be-evident it-seems that
a nocivis, non innocuis, a læsionibus, non illusionibus,
from harmful-things not harmless from injuries not illusions
tam sacramentalia quam sacramenta tuentur.
as-much sacramentals as sacraments protect
Notandum hic autem, his nostris diebus in Pictavia
to-be-noted here however in-these our days in Poitou
energumenam fuisse a diabolo possessam, qui et per
a-demoniac to-have-been by the-devil possessed who also through
os ejus loquebatur, disserens et disputans acute et
the-mouth her spoke discoursing and disputing sharply and
artificiose cum literatis et disertis. Exprobrabat etiam
artfully with the-lettered and the-eloquent he-reproached also
interdum hominibus ea quæ secretius gesserant, et
sometimes to-men those-things which more-secretly they-had-done and
quæ minus audire voluerant. Cum autem liber evangelicus,
which less to-hear they-had-wished when however the-book of-the-gospels
vel sanctorum reliquiæ, super os obsessæ quandoque
or of-the-saints relics upon the-mouth of-the-possessed sometimes

ponerentur, ad inferiorem gutturis partem fugiebat: et cum
were-placed to the-lower of-the-throat part he-fled and when
ibi ponerentur, in ventrem descendebat. Apparebat autem
there they-were-placed into the-belly he-descended he-appeared moreover
per inflationes quasdam et commotiones partium illarum
through swellings certain and commotions of-the-parts those
quas possidebat: et cum iterum ponerentur reliquiæ ad partes
which he-possessed and when again were-placed the-relics on the-parts
inferiores in quibus apparebat, statim redibat ad superiores.
lower in which he-appeared at-once he-returned to the-upper
Cum autem demum attulissent corpus Christi, et laboranti
when however at-last they-had-brought the-body of-Christ and to-the-sufferer
dedissent, respondit dæmon; "Stulti, nihil est quod agitis;
had-given answered the-demon fools nothing is-it that you-do
non enim cibus est corporis sed animæ quod ei datis. Mihi
not for food it-is of-the-body but of-the-soul which to-her you-give to-me
autem non est data potestas in animam, sed in corpus." Cum
however not is given power over the-soul but over the-body when
autem hi, quibus secretiora sua improperaverat, confessione
however those to-whom more-secret-things their he-had-taunted with-confession
super his facta et pœnitentia secuta, redissent, nihil eis
about these-things made and penance following had-returned nothing to-them
improperabat. Quinimmo quibusdam dicebat, "Scivi quidem,
did-he-taunt nay-rather to-some he-said I-knew indeed
scivi; sed nunc ignoro:" aliis autem quasi convicium hoc
I-knew but now I-do-not-know to-others however as-if a-reproach this
emittebat, "At ego taceo; [quod enim scio, nescio."] Ex
he-sent-forth but I keep-silent what for I-know I-do-not-know from
quibus apparet, quia post confessionem et pœnitentiam vel
which it-appears that after confession and penance either
omnino hominum peccata dæmones nesciunt, vel ad damnum
wholly of-men the-sins demons do-not-know or for the-loss

eorum et dedecus ea nesciunt. Quia, ut ait Augustinus,
their and shame them do-not-know because as says Augustine
"Si homo tegit, Deus detegit; si homo detegit, Deus tegit."
if man covers God uncovers if man uncovers God covers
Nonnullos etiam movere solet, quod fulmina frequenter
some also to-move is-wont that lightnings often
ecclesias nostras et templa cadendo dejiciunt; cruces quoque
churches our and temples by-falling throw-down crosses also
et Crucifixi imagines, coram oculis cuncta cernentis et
and of-the-Crucified the-images before the-eyes all-things of-the-one-discerning and
hoc permittentis, plerumque feriendo diminuunt. Quibus nihil
this permitting often by-striking diminish to-whom nothing
aliud ad præsens nisi illud Ovidii respondere dignum duxi;
else for the-present except that of-Ovid to-answer worthy I-thought

"Summa petit livor, perflant altissima venti,
"The-highest seeks envy, blow-through the-loftiest the-winds,
Summa petunt dextra fulmina missa Jovis."
The-highest seek by-the-right-hand lightnings sent of-Jupiter."

Sicut et Petrus Abaelardus egregie suo in tempore, in
as also Peter Abelard excellently in-his in time in
præsentia Philippi Francorum regis, cuidam Judæo respondisse
the-presence of-Philip of-the-Franks king to-a-certain Jew to-have-answered
memoratur, hæc et similia in opprobrium fidei
is-recorded these-things and like-things in reproach of-the-faith
objicienti. "Verum," inquit, "quia fulmina, ab alto descendentia
objecting true he-says because lightnings from high descending
domicilio, ad ea quæ in terris sublimiora reperiunt,
dwelling to those-things which on earth higher they-find
suæque naturæ similiora, se frequentius applicant.
and-to-their nature more-similar themselves more-often apply

"Interdum etiam ministerio dæmonum et malitia, dum
sometimes also by-the-ministry of-demons and malice while
nubium collisione exorta pariter et extorta vage per
of-clouds by-the-collision risen equally and wrested at-random through
aerem in ima feruntur, inter res prædictas, aut ipsas
the-air to the-depths they-are-carried among things aforesaid or the-very
etiam hominum personas, ut vel fidem lædere valeant
even of-men persons that either faith to-harm they-may-be-able
vel fideles, impelli permittuntur. Ideoque in synagogas
or the-faithful to-be-driven they-are-permitted and-therefore on synagogues
vestras nunquam fulmina cadunt, quia nec in cloacas
your never lightnings fall because nor on sewers
unquam ea cecidisse vel vidit quispiam vel audivit."
ever them to-have-fallen either has-seen anyone or has-heard
Unde et hic notabile censui, quod cum in Francia nostris
whence also here notable I-judged that when in France in-our
diebus inter monachos Cisterciensis ordinis et militem
days between the-monks of-the-Cistercian order and a-knight
quemdam, super metis agrorum et terrarum suarum
certain about the-bounds of-fields and of-lands their
terminis, contentio sæpe fuisset, et acciderit aliquando vi
the-limits a-contention often had-been and it-happened once with-force
tempestatis ingruente culturam monachorum, damno eorundem
of-a-storm pressing the-tilled-land of-the-monks with-loss of-the-same
non modico, nocte quadam funditus destructam et demolitam
not small on-night a-certain wholly destroyed and demolished
fuisse, cultura militis ei contermina et quasi
to-have-been with-the-tilled-land of-the-knight to-it adjoining and as-if
continua indemni penitus et illæsa manente, miles ea
continuous unharmed wholly and uninjured remaining the-knight on-that
occasione in monachos insolenter invectus, monachorum
occasion against the-monks insolently inveighing of-the-monks

injuriam in agri illius possessione divinitus declaratam publice
the-wrong in of-field that the-possession divinely declared publicly
proclamavit. Abbas autem, hoc audito, satis facete respondit,
proclaimed the-abbot however with-this heard quite wittily answered
nequaquam ita esse, sed plures habuisse militem amicos
by-no-means so to-be but more to-have-had the-knight friends
in illo equitatu quam monasterium, monachos e contra
in that cavalcade than the-monastery monks on the-contrary
hostes ibidem plures et inimicos, verius esse demonstravit.
enemies there more and foes more-truly to-be he-showed
In hac eadem provincia de Pembroch, tertio in loco, domo
in this same province of Pembroke in-a-third in place in-the-house
videlicet Eliodori de Stakepole, circa eadem fere tempora, non
namely of-Elidyr of Stackpole about the-same almost times not
solum sensibiliter sed et visibiliter, sub juvenis rufi specie,
only perceptibly but also visibly under of-a-youth red-haired the-form
qui et Simonem se vocabat, quidam apparuit. Hic primo
who also Simon himself called a-certain-one appeared he first
claves a clavigero præripiens, se ad seneschaliam domus
the-keys from the-key-keeper snatching himself to the-stewardship of-the-house
regendam impudenter ingessit. Eam tamen tam provide, ut
to-be-ruled impudently thrust it however so providently as
videbatur, tamque prudenter administrabat, ut omnia sub
it-seemed and-so prudently he-administered that all-things under
ejus manibus abundare, nullusque defectus in domo fieri
his hands to-abound and-no want in the-house to-happen
posse videretur. Quicquid autem herus et hera ad
could it-seemed whatever moreover the-master and the-mistress for
quotidianos usus vel esus aut præmeditati fuerant, aut secreto
daily uses or eatings either premeditated had or secretly
prælocuti, id ipse non præmonitus, non invitatus,
had-spoken-of-beforehand that he not forewarned not invited

mirabili explebat agilitate, dicens, "Id fieri vultis,
with-wonderful fulfilled agility saying this to-be-done you-wish
hoc vobis fiet." Thesauros autem ipsorum, et secretas
this for-you will-be-done the-treasures moreover their and secret
repositiones omnes sciebat, eisque aliquoties exprobrabat.
stores all he-knew and-to-them sometimes reproached
Nam quoties avare aliquid aut parce nimis agi volebant,
for whenever greedily something or sparingly too to-be-done they-wished
dicebat; "Ut quid acervum illum aut illum auri vel argenti
he-said to what that heap or that of-gold or of-silver
tangere timetis et expendere? Brevissimi nempe dies vestri
to-touch do-you-fear and to-spend very-short indeed days your
sunt: pecuniaque, quam tantopere congeritis, nunquam vobis
are and-the-money which so-much you-heap-up never to-you
erit ad usus aliquos proventura." Rusticis autem, ministrisque
will-be for uses any about-to-come to-the-rustics however and-servants
domus mercenariis, pretiosiora libentius cibaria atque pocula
of-the-house hired the-more-precious more-gladly foods and drinks
ministrabat, dicens ea illis præcipue cum abundantia largiri
he-supplied saying them to-them especially with abundance to-bestow
debere, quorum erant laboriosis operibus acquisita. Quicquid
ought whose they-were by-laborious works acquired whatever
autem agi statuerat, quanquam id domino vel dominæ
however to-be-done he-had-decided although it to-the-lord or to-the-lady
displiceret, quoniam secreta eorum, ut diximus, omnia noverat,
displeased since the-secrets their as we-have-said all he-knew
et quoniam cuncta fere tam expedite tamque mature
and since all-things almost so expeditiously and-so timely
gerebat, sine omni contradictione complebat. Ecclesiam autem
he-did without all contradiction he-completed the-church however
nunquam adibat, nec verbum aliquod catholicum unquam
never did-he-approach nor word any catholic ever

pronunciabat. In domo nocte non jacebat, sed mane
did-he-pronounce in the-house at-night not he-lay but in-the-morning
quotidie ad obsequia promptus astabat. Observatus tandem a
daily for services ready he-stood-by watched at-length by
familia domus cum forte fuisset, circa molendinum et
the-household of-the-house when by-chance he-had-been around the-mill and
aquæ stagnum nocturna ejusdem inventa est conversatio.
of-the-water the-pond nocturnal his found was the-converse
Quo comperto, statim in crastino coram domino domus
which discovered at-once on the-morrow before the-lord of-the-house
constitutus et domina, claves, quas quadraginta diebus
set and the-lady the-keys which for-forty days
vel amplius gestaverat, eis licentiam accipiendo porrexit.
or more he-had-carried to-them leave taking he-handed
Interrogatus autem in discessu et obtestatus quisnam esset,
asked however at the-departure and adjured who he-might-be
respondit, se in uxore rustici cujusdam de parochia eadem
he-answered himself in the-wife of-a-rustic certain of the-parish same
sub specie mariti ab incubo spiritu fuisse progenitum,
under the-form of-her-husband by an-incubus spirit to-have-been begotten
nominans virum ac vitricum suum jam defunctum, et matrem
naming the-man and stepfather his now dead and mother
suam adhuc superstitem. Cujus inquisita diligentius rei
his still surviving of-which inquired more-diligently of-the-thing
certitudine, sic in veritate fuisse palam mulier est professa.
the-certainty so in truth to-have-been openly the-woman has professed
Similis hujus in Dacia nostris diebus casus accidit.
like to-this in Denmark in-our days a-case happened
Archiepiscopo namque clericus quidam ignotus adhæsit,
to-an-archbishop for a-cleric certain unknown attached-himself
qui sub obtentu obsequii, quia diligens et discretus
who under pretext of-service because diligent and discreet

esse videbatur, literarum etiam et historiarum omnium
to-be he-seemed of-letters also and of-histories all
promptissimam habebat notitiam atque memoriam, magnam
most-ready he-had knowledge and memory great
cum ipso familiaritatem in brevi contraxit. Quadam autem die,
with him familiarity in short he-contracted on-a-certain moreover day
cum narraret archiepiscopo de historiis antiquis et ignotis
when he-was-telling the-archbishop about histories ancient and unknown
rerum eventibus, unde ipsum libenter et frequenter audiebat,
of-things events whence him gladly and often he-heard
accidit ut de tempore incarnationis Dominicæ loqueretur;
it-happened that about the-time of-the-incarnation of-the-Lord he-spoke
qui et inter alia et hoc subjunxit; "Antequam Christus
who also among other-things also this added before Christ
carnem sumpsisset, magnam habebant dæmones in genus
flesh had-taken great had demons over the-race
humanum potestatem; sed in adventu ipsius valde diminuta
human power but at the-coming his greatly diminished
fuerat eorum potestas; adeo quidem ut a facie ipsius
had-been their power so-much indeed that from the-face his
undique diffugerint et dissipaverint. Alii namque in mare
on-all-sides they-fled and scattered some for into the-sea
se præcipitaverunt; alii in concavitates arborum, et rimas
themselves threw others into the-hollows of-trees and cracks
petrarum; et ego ipse in fontem quemdam insilii." Quo
of-rocks and I myself into a-spring certain leapt which
dicto, quasi verecundans erubuit, et surgens statim exivit.
said as-if ashamed he-blushed and rising at-once went-out
Archiepiscopus autem, et qui cum eo fuerant, vehementer
the-archbishop however and who with him had-been vehemently
admirantes, cœperunt de verbo illo ad invicem inquirere,
wondering began about word that to each-other to-inquire

et plurima conjecturare. Et cum moram aliquantam
and very-many-things to-conjecture and when a-delay some
ille fecisset, putabatur enim statim reversurus, præcepit
he had-made he-was-thought for at-once about-to-return ordered
archiepiscopus cuidam suorum illum vocare. Ipse vero,
the-archbishop a-certain-one of-his-men him to-call he however
vocatus et quæsitus undique, nusquam comparuit. Nec longe
called and sought everywhere nowhere appeared nor long
post duo clerici, quos archiepiscopus Romam miserat, reversi
after two clerics whom the-archbishop to-Rome had-sent returned
sunt. Quibus cum archiepiscopus et sui rem gestam et
have to-whom when the-archbishop and his-men the-thing done and
eventum illum retulisset, cœperunt illi inquirere diem eventus
event that had-related began they to-ask the-day of-event
illius et horam. Quod cum audissent, dixerunt quod eodem
that and the-hour which when they-had-heard they-said that on-the-same
die et hora eadem obviaverat eis in Alpibus, dicens se
day and hour same he-had-met them in the-Alps saying himself
propter negotia domini sui, scilicet archiepiscopi, nuper
on-account-of the-business of-lord his namely the-archbishop lately
emersa, ad curiam Romanam fuisse transmissum. Sicque
arisen to the-court Roman to-have-been sent and-thus
compertum est dæmonem ipsos in humano corpore delusisse.
found it-was the-demon them in human body to-have-deluded
De falconibus quoque partium istarum egregiis et generosis,
about the-falcons also of-parts these excellent and noble
qui gravissimam in aves tam fluviales quam campestres
which a-most-grievous over birds as-much river as field
tyrannidem exercent, prætereundum non putavi. Unde et
tyranny exercise to-be-passed-over not I-thought whence also
Anglorum rex Henricus secundus, cum in partibus istis iter
of-the-English king Henry second when in parts these the-journey

in Hiberniam parando moram aliquamdiu faceret, et avium
into Ireland by-preparing a-stay for-some-while made and of-birds
aliquando volatu delectari voluisset, "falconem nobilem
once by-the-flight to-be-delighted had-wished a-falcon noble
in saxo quodam sedentem cum forte conspiceret, eundem
on a-rock certain sitting when by-chance he-saw it
lateraliter ambiendo, accipitrem Norwagiensem generosum
sideways by-going-around a-hawk Norwegian noble
et grandem quem gestabat a læva projecit. Falco vero,
and large which he-carried from the-left he-cast-off the-falcon however
quanquam in primis tardior, ad alta tamen vix
although at first slower to the-heights nevertheless scarcely
subvectus, iraque vindice vice versa de præda prædo
borne and-with-anger avenging in-turn reversed from the-prey the-predator
jam effectus, a summis impetuosius ad ima descendens,
now made from the-highest more-impetuously to the-depths descending
quadrati pectoris ictu vehementi, præpositaque talorum
of-its-square breast with-a-blow vehement and-with-put-forward of-the-talons
armatura, talionem reddens, ad pedes regios accipitrem
the-armor retaliation rendering at the-feet royal the-hawk
confodiendo prostravit. Unde et ab hac hora singulis rex
by-piercing laid-low whence also from this hour in-the-several the-king
annis, circa nidificationis tempora, propter falcones terræ
years about of-nesting the-times for the-falcons of-land
illius qui marinis in rupibus excluduntur, mittere consuevit.
that which on-sea on rocks are-hatched to-send was-accustomed
Nec in terra sua nobiliores illis aut præstantiores invenit."
nor in land his nobler than-those or more-excellent did-he-find
Sed hæc hactenus: ad viam de cetero revertamur.
but these-things thus-far to the-way for the-rest let-us-return

De transitu per Kamros et Neugol, cum notabilibus suis.
about the-passage through Camrose and Newgale with notable-things its
Iter igitur ab Haverfordia versus Meneviam, quasi miliaribus
the-journey therefore from Haverford toward St-Davids about by-miles
duodecim inde distantem, aggredientes, primo per Kamros;
twelve thence distant undertaking first through Camrose
ubi pro juvenis egregii, Giraldi scilicet filii Guillelmi nece,
where for of-the-youth excellent Gerald namely son of-William the-killing
multorum cædibus cruentam nimis et gravem, tempore
of-many with-slaughters bloody too and heavy in-the-time
Stephani regis, propinqui et necessarii sui, quanquam minus in
of-Stephen king kinsman and relative his although less in
hoc necessarii, vindictam in Rosenses exercuerant; deinde
this necessary vengeance against the-men-of-Rhos had-exercised then
per sabulum de Neugol transivimus; ubi et ea tempestate
over the-sand of Newgale we-passed where also at-that time
qua prædictus Anglorum rex Henricus secundus in Hiberniæ
in-which the-aforesaid of-the-English king Henry second in of-Ireland
finibus hyemavit, necnon et aliis fere cunctis partium illarum
the-bounds wintered and-also also at-other almost all of-parts those
portubus ab occidente marinis, res contigit non indigna
harbors on the-west of-the-sea a-thing happened not unworthy
memoratu. "Ex nimia" nimirum "præter solitum procellæ
of-remembrance from too-great indeed beyond the-usual of-the-storm
vehementia, sabulosis australis Kambriæ litoribus solo
vehemence with-the-sandy of-southern Wales shores to-the-ground
tenus sabulo nudatis, longis operta retro seculis terræ
down with-sand stripped by-long covered back by-ages of-the-earth
facies apparuit; arborumque in ipsum mare stipites stantium
the-face appeared and-of-trees in the-very sea the-trunks standing
undique præcisarum, ictusque securium tanquam hesterni,
everywhere cut-off and-the-strokes of-axes as-if of-yesterday

terra quoque nigerrima, lignaque truncorum ebeno simillima;
the-earth also very-black and-the-wood of-the-trunks to-ebony most-like
mirandis rerum mutationibus, ut olim navium via nunc
by-wonderful of-things changes so-that once of-ships the-way now
navibus invia, non litus jam sed lucus esse videretur, aut forte
to-ships pathless not a-shore now but a-grove to-be it-seemed either perhaps
a diluvii tempore, aut potius longo post, antiquitus tamen
from of-the-flood the-time or rather long after anciently however
tam præcisus, quam maris violentia, semper excrescentis et
as-much cut-down as of-the-sea by-the-violence always increasing and
terram amplius eluentis, paulatim absumptus et absorptus."
the-land more washing-away little-by-little consumed and swallowed
Contigit etiam inaudita tempestatis ejusdem rabie congros,
it-happened also by-unheard-of of-storm the-same rage conger-eels
aliosque marinos pisces perplurimos, trans rupes maris
and-other sea fish very-many across the-rocks of-the-sea
altissimas vi ventorum intra dumeta projectos a multis
highest by-the-force of-the-winds into thickets thrown by many
reperiri. Apud Meneviam igitur a loci ejusdem antistite Petro,
to-be-found at St-Davids therefore by of-place same the-bishop Peter
viro videlicet personali et liberali, qui nobis individuus hactenus
a-man namely personable and liberal who to-us inseparable thus-far
in via comes extiterat, decenter exhibiti pernoctavimus.
on the-way companion had-been decently entertained we-spent-the-night
Explicit Liber primus.
ends Book first

Incipit secundus

BOOK TWO · ST DAVIDS

Gerald laments St Davids, once a metropolitan see. David moved it from Caerleon to this remote rock; twenty-five archbishops sat from him to Samson, who fled a plague to Brittany with the pallium, and nineteen bishops followed, Morgeneu killed for eating meat. Since Henry I they have been consecrated at Canterbury, and Bernard claimed the see's rights but squandered its lands. Henry II walked across the stone Llech-lafar in spite of Merlin's prophecy, and a jester said he was not the king who would conquer Ireland. William Rufus boasted of a bridge of ships to Ireland, and Muirchertach of Leinster feared no man who trusted only his own power.

Quoniam igitur caput est Kambriæ Menevia, et urbs
since therefore the-head is of-Wales St-Davids and a-city
olim metropolitana, quanquam hodie plus nominis habens
once metropolitan although today more of-name having
quam ominis, antiquæ tamen et authenticæ matris nostræ
than of-omen of-the-ancient however and authentic mother our
tanquam exsequias plangere, et funus prosequi lamentabile,
as-if the-obsequies to-lament and the-funeral to-follow lamentable
cineresque semisepultæ lacrimosis deplorare singultibus non
and-the-ashes half-buried with-tearful to-deplore sobs not
abstinui. Qualiter huc igitur, et unde, et a quo tempore
I-have-refrained how hither therefore and whence and from what time
pallium allatum, et qualiter ablatum, quot palliis induti
the-pallium brought and how taken-away how-many with-pallia clothed
antistites, et quot spoliati, eorumque nomina, usque ad
prelates and how-many stripped and-their names up-to to
hæc tempora nostra paucis absolvam.
these times our in-few-words I-shall-relate

De sede Menevensi, cum notabilibus suis.
about the-see of-St-Davids with notable-things its
Sicut Britannicæ referunt historiæ, apud urbem Legionum,
as British relate histories at the-city of-the-Legions
in curia illa magna quam prætaxavimus, beatus Dubricius,
in court that great which we-have-mentioned blessed Dubricius
loci ejusdem tunc temporis archiepiscopus, David, qui
of-place same at-that of-time archbishop to-David who
regis Arthuri ut dicitur avunculus extiterat, propter ætatis
of-king Arthur as is-said the-uncle had-been on-account-of of-age
defectum, et quoniam contemplationi potius indulgere
the-failing and because to-contemplation rather to-give-himself
volebat, cessit honorem: et ex tunc, procurante David,
he-wished yielded the-honor and from then with-procuring David
usque Meneviam sedis facta est translatio: quanquam tamen
to St-Davids of-the-see made was the-translation although nevertheless
prior ille locus, sicut in priori Libro descripsimus, longe
former that place as in the-former Book we-have-described far
metropolitanæ sedi plus congruerit. Hic etenim angulus est
to-a-metropolitan see more would-have-suited this for corner is
supra Hibernicum mare remotissimus: terra saxosa, sterilis,
above the-Irish sea most-remote a-land rocky sterile
et infecunda; nec silvis vestita, nec fluminibus distincta,
and unfruitful neither with-woods clothed nor by-rivers distinguished
nec pratis ornata; ventis solum et procellis semper
nor by-meadows adorned to-the-winds only and storms always
exposita; inter hostiles hodie populos, hinc Flandrensem,
exposed between hostile today peoples on-this-side the-Flemish
inde Kambrensem, frequenter attrita. Ex industria namque
on-that the-Welsh often worn on purpose for
viri sancti talia sibi delegerunt habitacula, ut populares
men holy such for-themselves chose dwellings that popular

strepitus subterfugiendo, vitamque eremiticam longe pastorali
noises by-escaping and-the-life of-hermits far to-the-pastoral
præferendo, parti liberius quæ non auferetur indulgerent.
by-preferring to-the-part more-freely which not will-be-taken-away they-might-indulge
Fuerat autem David sanctitate conspicuus et religione, sicut
had-been moreover David for-holiness conspicuous and religion as
de vita ipsius testatur liber conscriptus. Inter omnia vero
about the-life his testifies the-book written among all however
quæ de ipso leguntur miracula, tria mihi videntur admiratione
which about him are-read miracles three to-me seem of-wonder
dignissima: de origine videlicet ipsius et conceptione; et
most-worthy about the-origin namely his and conception and
triginta annis ante ortum præelectione; et quod omnibus
by-thirty years before his-birth the-foreordaining and what all
præstat, de terra quæ apud Brevi, vidente populo
surpasses about the-earth which at Llanddewi-Brefi with-seeing the-people
et admirante, sub pedibus prædicantis in collem excrevit.
and wondering under the-feet of-him-preaching into a-hill grew
Sederunt autem a tempore David, successivis temporum
sat moreover from the-time of-David in-successive of-times
curriculis, archiepiscopi ibidem viginti quinque, quorum
courses archbishops there twenty five of-whom
hæc nomina: David, Eliud qui et Theliau vocatur, Keneu,
these the-names David Eliud who also Teilo is-called Ceneu
Morwal, Haernueu, Elwaid, Gurnueu, Leudiwit, Gorwiust,
Morwal Haernueu Elwaid Gurnueu Leudiwit Gorwiust
Gogaun, Cledauc, Aman, Eludged, Elduven, Elave, Mailswid,
Gogaun Cledauc Aman Eludged Elduven Elave Mailswid
Sadurnueu, Catulus, Sulhaithuai, Novis, Sadurnueu, Doithwal,
Sadurnueu Catulus Sulhaithuai Novis Sadurnueu Doithwal
Asser, Archuail, Sampson.
Asser Arthwael Samson

Tempore Sampsonis hujus, pallium in hunc modum est
in-the-time of-Samson this the-pallium in this manner was
translatum. Ingruente per Kambriam, isto præsidente,
transferred with-pressing through Wales with-him presiding
peste quadam, qua catervatim plebs occubuit, quam flavam
a-plague certain by-which in-crowds the-people fell which the-yellow
pestem vocabant, quam et physici ictericiam dicunt passionem,
plague they-called which also physicians the-icteric call passion
præsul, quanquam sanctus et ad mortem intrepidus, tamen
the-prelate although holy and to death fearless nevertheless
ad suorum instantiam navem scandens, flante Circio,
at of-his-men the-urging a-ship boarding with-blowing the-northwest-wind
cum suis indemnem in Armorica Britannia se suscepit:
with his-men unharmed in Armorican Brittany himself received
ubi et vacante tunc forte sede Dolensi, statim ibidem
where also with-vacant then by-chance the-see of-Dol at-once there
in episcopum est assumptus. Unde contigit ut ob
as bishop was taken-up whence it-happened that on-account-of
pallii gratiam, quod Sampson secum hinc illuc attulerat,
of-the-pallium the-favor which Samson with-him from-here thither had-brought
succedentes ibi episcopi usque ad nostra hæc fere tempora,
the-succeeding there bishops up-to to our these almost times
quibus prævalente Turonorum archipræsule adventitia dignitas
in-which with-prevailing of-Tours the-archprelate the-adventitious dignity
evanuit, pallia semper obtinuerunt. Nostri vero vel propter
vanished pallia always obtained ours however either on-account-of
ignaviam vel paupertatem, aut potius propter Anglorum
sloth or poverty or rather on-account-of of-the-English
adventum in insulam, et Saxonicam interpositam hostilitatem,
the-coming into the-island and the-Saxon interposed hostility
ea occasione continue pristina caruerunt dignitate. Semper
on-that occasion continually the-former lacked dignity always

tamen usque ad plenam, quæ per Anglorum regem Henricum
nevertheless up-to to the-full which by of-the-English king Henry
primum facta est, Kambriæ subactionem, episcopi Gualliæ
first made was of-Wales the-subjugation the-bishops of-Wales
a Menevensi antistite sunt consecrati; et ipse similiter ab
by the-St-Davids prelate were consecrated and he likewise by
aliis tanquam suffraganeis est consecratus; nulla penitus
the-others as-if suffragans was consecrated with-no at-all
alii ecclesiæ facta professione vel subjectione.
to-another church made profession or subjection
Sederunt autem a Sampsonis ibidem tempore, usque ad
sat moreover from of-Samson there the-time up-to to
prædicti Henrici primi tempora, novemdecim, quorum hæc
of-the-aforesaid Henry first the-times nineteen of-whom these
nomina; Kuielm, Retherth, Eluin, Lunuerc, Nergu, Sulidir,
the-names Kuielm Rhydderch Elwyn Lunuerc Nergu Sulidir
Eneuris, Morgeneu; qui primus inter episcopos Meneviæ carnes
Eneuris Morgeneu who first among the-bishops of-St-Davids meat
comedit, et ibidem a piratis interfectus est; unde et eadem
ate and there by pirates killed was whence also on-the-same
nocte quam duxit extremam apparuit cuidam episcopo in
night which he-spent as-his-last he-appeared to-a-certain bishop in
Hibernia, ostendens vulnera sua et dicens, "Quia carnes
Ireland showing wounds his and saying because meat
comedi, caro factus sum;" Nathan, Iewan, hic Iewan una sola
I-ate flesh made I-am Nathan Ieuan this Ieuan one only
nocte vixit episcopus, Arwistel, Morgenennith, Eruin, Tramerin,
night lived as-bishop Arwystl Morgenennith Ervin Tramerin
Joseth, Bleidhud, Sulghein, Abraham, Wilfre. Post hos vero,
Joseph Bleiddud Sulien Abraham Wilfred after these however
subacta jam Wallia, usque hodie tres: tempore regis Henrici
with-subjugated now Wales up-to today three in-the-time of-king Henry

primi Bernardus, tempore regis Stephani David secundus,
first Bernard in-the-time of-king Stephen David second
tempore regis Henrici secundi Petrus Cluniacensis monachus.
in-the-time of-king Henry second Peter of-Cluny monk
Qui tres, regio urgente mandato, Cantuariæ consecrationem
who three by-royal urging command at-Canterbury consecration
susceperunt. Sicut et quartus, his succedaneus tempore
received as also a-fourth to-these successor in-the-time
regis Johannis, nomine Gaufredus, Lanthoniensis prior et
of-king John by-name Geoffrey of-Llanthony prior and
canonicus, per operam Huberti Cantuariensis archiepiscopi
canon through the-work of-Hubert of-Canterbury archbishop
in eadem sede promotus, et ab eodem consecratus.
in the-same see promoted and by the-same consecrated
De nullo vero Cantuariensi antistite legitur, vel post
about no however of-Canterbury prelate is-it-read either after
subjectionem istam vel ante, Kambriæ fines intrasse,
subjection this or before of-Wales the-bounds to-have-entered
præter hunc solum; qui legationis hujus occasione, et
except this-one alone who of-legation this on-the-occasion and
salutiferæ crucis obsequio, terram tam hispidam, tam
of-the-saving cross for-the-service a-land so rough so
inaccessibilem et remotam laudabili devotione circuivit,
inaccessible and remote with-laudable devotion went-around
et in singulis cathedralibus ecclesiis, tanquam investituræ
and in each cathedral church as-if of-investiture
cujusdam signum, missam celebravit.
a-certain the-sign mass celebrated
Adeo autem, ante finales hos dies et tempora novissima,
so-much moreover before final these days and times latest
Menevensis ecclesia Cantuariensem nullo subjectionis vinculo
the-St-Davids church to-the-Canterbury-church by-no of-subjection bond

respiciebat, ut etiam in Anglicana Historia, Beda referente,
looked that even in the-English History with-Bede relating
legatur; Augustinum Anglorum episcopum, post conversionem
it-is-read Augustine of-the-English bishop after the-conversion
regis Æthelfridi et Anglorum populi, episcopos Gualliæ
of-king Æthelfrith and of-the-English people the-bishops of-Wales
in confinio Occidentalium Saxonum et Britonum, tanquam
on the-border of-the-West Saxons and of-the-Britons as-if
sedis apostolicæ legatus, convocasse. Et cum septem episcopi
of-the-see apostolic legate to-have-convoked and when seven bishops
venissent, quoniam Augustinus in sella sedens venientibus
had-come since Augustine on a-chair sitting to-those-coming
Romano fastu non assurrexit, eum superbiæ notantes, sumpto
with-Roman pride not rose him of-pride marking with-taken
quidem a viro quodam anachorita de gente sua sanctissimo
indeed from a-man certain anchorite of people their most-holy
experimenti illius documento, tam ipsum quam ejus statuta
of-test that proof as-much him as his statutes
statim reversi spreverunt; nec ipsum pro archiepiscopo se
at-once returned they-spurned nor him for archbishop themselves
habituros publice proclamabant; testantes ad invicem quia
to-hold publicly proclaimed testifying to each-other that
"Si nunc nobis assurgere noluit, quanto magis, si ei
if now to-us to-rise he-was-unwilling how-much more if to-him
subdi cœperimus, jam nos pro nihilo contemnet?"
to-be-subject we-shall-have-begun now us for nothing will-be-despise
Quod autem septem tunc erant episcopi Britonum, cum
that however seven then were the-bishops of-the-Britons when
hodie non nisi quatuor, hæc ratio assignari potest; quia
today not except four this reason to-be-assigned can because
plures tunc forte fuerant in hoc Gualliæ spatio, quam
more then perhaps there-had-been in this of-Wales space than

nunc sunt, sedes cathedrales; vel potius, se tunc ampliori
now are sees cathedral or rather itself then with-wider
Guallia fine, quia usque ad Sabrinæ fluvium, dilatabat.
Wales bound because up-to to of-the-Severn the-river extended
Inter tot igitur episcopos tanto privatos honore, solus
among so-many therefore bishops of-so-great deprived honor alone
Bernardus ille, primus Francorum apud Meneviam episcopus,
Bernard that first of-the-French at St-Davids bishop
ecclesiæ suæ jura publice protestans, post multas sumptuosas
of-church his the-rights publicly protesting after many costly
et graves ad curiam Romanam vexationes, demum nisi
and heavy at the-court Roman vexations at-last unless
professionis factæ, et subjectionis exhibitæ Cantuariensi ecclesiæ
of-profession made and of-subjection shown to-the-Canterbury church
veri aut falsi testes, coram Eugenio papa Meldis in Francia palam
true or false witnesses before Eugenius pope at-Meaux in France openly
prodiissent, non inefficaciter reclamasset. Tribus igitur fultus
had-come-forth not ineffectually would-have-protested by-three therefore supported
auxiliis, tam formidabiles tantæ causæ conflictus confidenter
aids so formidable of-so-great a-cause the-conflicts confidently
est aggressus; regis videlicet Henrici primi familiaritate subnixus
has undertaken of-king namely Henry first by-the-familiarity supported
plurima et favore, tempore pacifico gaudens, et pacis sequela
very-much and by-favor in-time peaceful rejoicing and of-peace by-the-sequel
sufficienti. Adeo quidem, ex nimiæ securitatis audacia, debito
sufficient so-much indeed from of-too-great security boldness in-the-due
de jure [confidebat] quandoque [et] præsumpsit, ut et crucem
by right he-trusted sometimes also he-presumed that also the-cross
interdum sibi præferri per Kambriæ fines attemptasset.
sometimes before-himself to-be-carried through of-Wales the-bounds he-attempted

Bernardus iste, quanquam in aliquo commendabilis,
Bernard this although in something commendable
pompositatis tamen et ambitionis vitio trans modestiam
of-pomposity nevertheless and of-ambition by-the-vice beyond modesty
notabilis fuerat. Quoniam enimvero de curia exierat,
notable had-been since indeed from the-court he-had-come-out
et plantatio regis extiterat, ad Anglicanas opulentias per
and the-planting of-the-king had-been to English opulences by
translationem semper anhelans, quo morbo laborant [fere]
translation always panting with-which disease labor almost
singuli ab Angliæ finibus hic intrusi, terras ecclesiæ suæ
all-men from of-England the-bounds here intruded the-lands of-church his
plurimas infructuose penitus et inutiliter alienavit. Alias
very-many fruitlessly wholly and uselessly he-alienated others
vero tam improvide et tam indiscrete divisit, ut ubi
however so improvidently and so indiscreetly he-divided that where
militaribus officiis decem terræ carucatas, viginti, vel triginta
for-military offices ten of-land carucates twenty or thirty
amplissima manu largiretur, ibi divinis sanctique David
with-a-most-ample hand he-bestowed there for-the-divine and-of-Saint David
obsequiis et canonicis, ab ipso misere nimis et infeliciter
services and for-the-canons by him wretchedly too and unhappily
institutis, vix unam, vix duas vel tres impertiret.
instituted scarcely one scarcely two or three he-imparted
De duabus autem sedibus istis de quibus facta est
about the-two moreover sees these about which made has-been
mentio, Cantuariensi videlicet et Menevensi, quod mihi videtur
mention of-Canterbury namely and of-St-Davids what to-me seems
juxta moderna tempora paucis edisseram. Illinc hodie
according-to modern times in-few-words I-shall-set-forth there today
regum favor, opum affluentia, suffraganeorum antistitum
of-kings the-favor of-wealth the-abundance of-suffragan prelates

opulenta numerositas, literatorum et juris-peritorum copia
an-opulent number of-the-lettered and of-lawyers a-plenty
multa; hinc autem omnium istorum defectus, et jus remotum.
great here however of-all these-things the-lack and right remote
Quapropter, nisi per regnorum forte mutationes, rerumque
wherefore unless through of-kingdoms perhaps changes and-of-things
vicissitudines magnas, quæ variis et inopinatis eventibus
vicissitudes great which by-various and unexpected events
accidere solent, difficilis erit [antiqui juris] recuperatio.
to-happen are-wont difficult will-be of-the-ancient right the-recovery
Dicitur autem locus ubi ecclesia Menevensis sita est, et
is-called moreover the-place where the-church of-St-Davids situated is and
in honore beati Andreæ apostoli primo fundata, Vallis
in the-honor of-blessed Andrew apostle first founded the-Valley
Rosina. Quæ tamen marmorea potius quam vel rosea vel
Rosina which however marble rather than either rosy or
rosina dici posset; quoniam rosis minime, marmore
rosina to-be-called could since in-roses least in-marble
vero plurimum abundat.
however most abounds
Labitur hic autem Aluni fluvius, aqua turbida et
glides here moreover the-Alun river with-water muddy and
infecunda, cœmiterium lateraliter a borea disterminans,
unfruitful the-cemetery sideways on the-north bounding
sub lapide Lechlavar marmoreo pedibus transeuntium
under the-stone Llech-lafar marble by-the-feet of-passers-by
perpolito; de cujus quantitate, qualitate, et nominis ratione,
polished about whose size quality and of-the-name reason
in Vaticinali Historia disseruimus. Ubi rex Anglorum
in the-Prophetic History we-have-discoursed where the-king of-the-English
Henricus secundus, ab Hibernia rediens, per eundem
Henry second from Ireland returning over the-same

lapidem transeundo devote Sancti Andreæ Sanctique David
stone by-crossing devoutly of-Saint Andrew and-of-Saint David
ecclesiam intrasse describitur, in hunc modum.
the-church to-have-entered is-described in this manner
"Relictis ergo demum custodibus; apud Dubliniam videlicet
with-left therefore at-last guards at Dublin namely
Hugone de Lacy, cui jam Midiam in feodum donaverat,
with-Hugh of Lacy to-whom already Meath in fee he-had-given
cum militibus viginti, Stephanide quoque et Mauricio
with knights twenty with-FitzStephen also and Maurice
Giraldide, cum aliis viginti; Guaterfordiæ vero Humfredo
FitzGerald with other twenty at-Waterford however with-Humphrey
Bohonensi, Roberto filio Bernardi, et Hugone de Gundevilla,
of-Bohun Robert son of-Bernard and Hugh of Gundeville
cum militibus quadraginta; Gueisefordiæ Guillelmo Aldelini filio,
with knights forty at-Wexford with-William of-Aldelin son
et Philippo de Breusa, cum viginti; Paschali luce secunda,
and Philip of Braose with twenty on-the-Easter day second
sole recens orto, apud Gueisefordiam, exteriore scilicet
with-the-sun freshly risen at Wexford outer namely
portus limbo, navem scandens, circio flante,
of-the-harbor on-the-rim a-ship boarding with-the-northwest-wind blowing
prospero navigio in portu Menevensi circa meridiem rex
with-prosperous voyage in the-harbor of-St-Davids about noon the-king
applicuit. Accedens itaque Meneviam devote, peregrinantium
landed approaching therefore St-Davids devoutly of-pilgrims
more, pedes baculoque suffultus, canonicorum ecclesiæ
in-the-manner on-foot and-with-a-staff supported of-the-canons of-the-church
processionem, ipsum debita reverentia et honore suscipientium,
the-procession him with-due reverence and honor receiving
apud albam portam obviam invenit.
at the-white gate coming-to-meet-him he-found

"Accidit autem ut procedente seriatim processione, et rite
it-happened moreover that with-advancing in-order the-procession and duly
præcedente, mulier Kambrica ad pedes regis se subito
going-before a-woman Welsh at the-feet of-the-king herself suddenly
provolveret; quæ et, querimonia de loci illius episcopo
threw who also with-complaint about of-place that the-bishop
facta, et regi per interpretis linguam exposita, quoniam
made and to-the-king through of-an-interpreter the-tongue set-forth since
jus suum incontinenti non est assecuta, voce altisona
right her immediately not she-has obtained with-voice high-sounding
et proterva, cum manuum quoque complosione non modica,
and impudent with of-hands also clapping not moderate
cœpit coram omnibus exclamando ingeminare, 'Vindica nos
began before all by-crying-out to-repeat avenge us
hodie, Lechlavar; vindica genus et gentem de homine
today Llech-lafar avenge the-race and the-nation on man
hoc.' Cumque ab illis qui Britannicam linguam noverant
this and-when by those who the-British tongue knew
inhiberetur et expelleretur, ipsa quoque tanto fortius et
she-was-restrained and driven-off she also so-much more-strongly and
acrius in hunc modum vociferabat; alludens illi fictitio
more-sharply in this manner shouted alluding to-that fictitious
vulgari, nec vero Merlini proverbio, quo dici solebat,
common nor true of-Merlin proverb by-which to-be-said it-was-wont
Angliæ regem Hiberniæ triumphatorem, ab homine cum rubra
of-England the-king of-Ireland the-conqueror by a-man with a-red
manu in Hibernia vulneratum, per Meneviam redeundo super
hand in Ireland wounded through St-Davids in-returning upon
Lechlavar moriturum. Erat autem hoc nomen lapidis, qui
Llech-lafar about-to-die was moreover this the-name of-the-stone which
trans flumen Aluni, quod cœmiterium a boreali ecclesiæ
across the-river Alun which the-cemetery on the-northern of-the-church

parte præterfluendo disterminat, jacens, [quo] vice pontis
side by-flowing-past bounds lying in-which in-place of-a-bridge
fungebatur. Erat autem lapis hic marmoreus et pulcher,
it-served was moreover stone this marble and beautiful
transeuntium pedibus superficie tenus perpolitus, decem pedes in
of-passers-by by-the-feet on-the-surface down polished ten feet in
longum et sex in latum præferens, et unius pedis spissitudinem
length and six in breadth displaying and of-one foot thickness
habens. Sonat autem Lechlavar Britannica lingua Lapis loquax.
having sounds moreover Llech-lafar in-the-British tongue the-stone talkative
Erat enim de lapide hoc ab antiquo vulgata relatio, quod
was for about stone this from of-old a-common account that
cum hominis cadaver super illum aliquando deferretur, eadem
when of-a-man a-corpse over it once was-carried at-the-same
hora in sermonem erumpens ipso conatu crepuit medius,
hour into speech breaking-out by-the-very effort it-cracked in-the-middle
fissuram adhuc per medium prætendens. Unde et de barbarica
a-split still through the-middle displaying whence also from barbaric
superstitione illi antiquitus exhibita, usque in hodiernum
the-superstition to-it anciently shown up-to into today
quoque per ipsum mortuorum corpora non efferuntur.
also over it of-the-dead the-bodies not are-carried-out
“Accedens igitur ad lapidem rex, quia forte illius vaticinii
approaching therefore to the-stone the-king because perhaps of-that prophecy
mentionem audierat, ad pedem lapidis paulisper gradum
mention he-had-heard at the-foot of-the-stone for-a-little his-step
sistens, et eundem acriter intuens, incunctante tamen passu
halting and it sharply gazing-at with-unhesitating nevertheless pace
audacter pertransiit, Verso itaque vultu ad lapidem respiciens,
boldly passed-over with-turned therefore face to the-stone looking-back
in vatem invectus, verbum hoc indignanter emisit;
against the-prophet inveighing word this indignantly he-sent-forth

‘Merlino mendaci quis de cetero fidem habeat?’” Lecator
to-Merlin the-liar who for the-rest belief will-have a-jester
autem ibi cum aliis astans, et rei eventum observans,
however there with others standing-by and of-the-thing the-outcome observing
ut vatis injuriam vindicaret, sic alta voce subjecit; ‘Tu
that of-the-prophet the-wrong he-might-avenge thus with-high voice added you
vero non es rex ille, qui Hiberniam conquirere debet; nec de
however not are king that who Ireland to-conquer is-to nor about
te Merlinus mentionem fecit.’ “Et sic rex intrans ecclesiam, in
you Merlin mention made and so the-king entering the-church in
Sancti Andreæ Sanctique David honore fundatam, fusis
of-Saint Andrew and-of-Saint David honor founded with-poured-forth
devote orationibus, et missa solemniter audita, a capellano
devoutly prayers and with-mass solemnly heard from a-chaplain
quodam quem solum inter tot loci illius presbyteros ea
certain whom alone among so-many of-place that priests at-that
hora jejunum tanquam ad hoc divina reservaverat providentia,
hour fasting as-if for this the-divine had-reserved providence
cœna ibidem sumpta, statim ad castrum Haverfordiæ,
with-supper there taken at-once to the-castle of-Haverford
quasi per miliaria duodecim abinde distans, transmigravit.”
about by miles twelve thence distant moved
Hoc autem mihi notabile videtur, quod nostris temporibus,
this however to-me notable it-seems that in-our times
præsidente videlicet David secundo, tam fluvium hunc vino
with-presiding namely David second both the-river this with-wine
manare, quam fontem quem Pistildewi, id est, Fistulam
to-flow and the-spring which Pistyll-Dewi that is the-Pipe
David vocant, quia quasi per fistulam quamdam in
of-David they-call because as-if through a-pipe certain into

cœmiterium ab oriente fons dilabitur, lac stillare constat
the-cemetery from the-east the-spring glides milk to-drip it-is-agreed
aliquoties esse compertum.
several-times to-have-been found
Aves quoque loci istius, quæ monedulæ dicuntur, ex
the-birds also of-place this which jackdaws are-called from
longo pacis usu a clericis ecclesiæ eis exhibitæ, adeo
long of-peace experience by the-clerics of-the-church to-them shown so
quasi mansuetas et domesticas invenies, ut homines nigris
as-if tame and domestic you-will-find that men in-black
indutos non refugiant.
clothed not they-flee
Ab hinc autem sereno tempore montes Hiberniæ prospici
from here moreover in-clear weather the-mountains of-Ireland to-be-seen
possunt; mari Hibernico tantum uno contractiore
can with-the-sea Irish only by-one shorter
transnavigabili die interjacente. Unde et Guillelmus, Guillelmi
navigable day lying-between whence also William of-William
regis bastardi filius, et Normannorum in Anglia rex
king the-bastard son and of-the-Normans in England king
secundus, qui et rex Rufus est agnominatus, Kambriam
second who also king Rufus is surnamed Wales
suo in tempore animose penetrans et circumdans, cum
in-his in time boldly penetrating and surrounding when
a rupibus istis Hiberniam forte prospiceret, dixisse
from rocks these Ireland by-chance he-saw to-have-said
memoratur; “Ad terram istam expugnandam, ex navibus
is-recorded for land that to-be-conquered from the-ships
regni mei huc convocatis, pontem adhuc faciam.” Quo
of-kingdom my hither summoned a-bridge yet I-shall-make which
verbo ad Murchardum tunc Lageniæ principem in Hiberniam
word to Muirchertach then of-Leinster prince into Ireland

forte translato, cum aliquamdiu propensius inde cogitasset,
by-chance transferred when for-some-while more-intently on-it he-had-thought
fertur respondisse; "Numquid tantæ comminationis verbo
he-is-said to-have-answered surely-not of-so-great of-a-threat to-the-word
rex ille 'Si Deo placuerit' adjecit?" Audito vero quod
king that if to-God it-shall-have-pleased added having-heard however that
nullam prorsus Dei mentionem in hoc suo sermone rex
no at-all of-God mention in this his speech the-king
fecisset, tanquam prognostico gaudens certissimo, "Quoniam,"
had-made as-if over-an-omen rejoicing most-certain since
inquit, "homo iste de humana tantum confidit potentia,
he-says man this in human only trusts power
non divina, ejus adventum non formido."
not divine his coming not I-fear

From St Davids the archbishop went through Cemais to meet Rhys at Cardigan. In Cemais a youth was devoured by toads, and a man who dreamed of a golden torque in a spring was bitten by a viper. Rhys, urged by his son Gruffydd, took Nevern castle from his son-in-law against his oaths, and was himself imprisoned there by his sons while he held Cynog's torque. At Cardigan a mother gave thanks for her son's cross, and a wife who held her husband back smothered her child, after which he took the cross. The people marked the preaching place for a chapel, where many were healed.

De transitu per Kemmeis, et monasterium Sancti
about the-passage through Cemais and the-monastery of-Saint
Dogmaelis, cum notabilibus suis.
Dogmael with notable-things its
Cum igitur archiepiscopus in ecclesia Sancti David, et ara
when therefore the-archbishop in the-church of-Saint David and the-altar
principali, missam summo diluculo celebrasset, relicto ibidem
principal mass at-first dawn had-celebrated with-left there
Menevensi archidiacono prætaxato, eique ad populum
the-St-Davids archdeacon aforementioned and-on-him toward the-people
officio sermonis injuncto, obviam Reso principi per
with-the-office of-the-sermon enjoined to-meet Rhys the-prince through
Kemmeis versus Aberteivi properavit.
Cemais toward Cardigan he-hurried
Duo vero quæ in provincia de Kemmeis, alterum his
two however which in the-province of Cemais one in-these
nostris diebus, alterum parum ante contigerant, mihi non
our days the-other a-little before had-happened to-me not
reticenda succurrunt.
to-be-kept-silent occur

Hoc itaque nostro tempore contigit [scilicet] juvenem
this therefore in-our time happened namely a-youth
quemdam, de finibus his oriundum, tantam a bufonibus
certain from bounds these sprung so-great by toads
in ægritudinis lecto persecutionem fuisse perpessum, ut
in of-sickness the-bed persecution to-have-been suffered that
omnes totius provinciæ tanquam ex condicto in ipsum
all of-the-whole province as-if from agreement against him
concurrerent. Et cum a custodibus et amicis ipsius interfecti
ran-together and when by the-guards and friends his killed
fuissent infiniti, semper tamen undique confluentes
they-had-been countless always however from-all-sides flowing-together
tanquam Hydræ capita sine numero succreverunt. Tandem
as-if of-the-Hydra heads without number they-grew-up at-length
vero, lassatis universis tam necessariis quam extraneis,
however with-wearied all as-much kinsmen as strangers
in arbore quadam excelsa, mutilata frondibus et levigata,
in a-tree certain lofty stripped of-leaves and smoothed
in loculo quodam est sublimatus. Nec ibi venenosis
in a-box certain he-was raised-up nor there from-venomous
tutus ab hostibus; immo certatim in arborem rependo
safe from enemies nay-rather vying into the-tree by-creeping
petitus, et usque ad ossa consumptus interiit. Nomen
sought and up-to to the-bones consumed he-perished the-name
vero juvenis fuerat Seisillus Eskeirhir, id est, Tibia longa.
however of-the-youth had-been Seisyll Esgair-hir that is Shank long
Similem quoque legitur, occulto Dei judicio sed nunquam
a-similar also is-read by-hidden of-God judgment but never
injusto, murium majorum, qui vulgariter Rati dicuntur, in
unjust of-mice larger which commonly rats are-called against
virum quemdam olim factam persecutionem.
a-man certain once made persecution

In eadem provincia, tempore regis Henrici primi, contigit ut
in the-same province in-the-time of-king Henry first it-happened that
vir quidam locuples, a boreali montium de Presseleu
a-man certain wealthy on the-northern of-the-mountains of Preseli
latere mansionem habens, tribus noctibus continue in
side a-dwelling having for-three nights continuously in
somnis moneretur, quatinus in fonte proximo, qui Sancti
sleep was-admonished that in the-spring nearest which of-Saint
Bernaci fons dicebatur, lapidi qui scaturigini fontis
Bernach the-spring was-called under-the-stone which the-source of-the-spring
supereminebat manum submittens, aureum inde torquem
overtopped his-hand putting-under a-golden thence torque
extraheret. Qui die tertio monitis obtemperans,
he-should-draw-out who on-the-day third the-warnings obeying
vipereo ibidem morsu letalem in digito læsionem suscepit.
by-a-viper's there bite a-deadly in the-finger hurt received
Sed quoniam multos, e diverso, thesauros per somnia
but since many on the-contrary treasures through dreams
constat inventos fuisse, mihi quidem verisimile videtur,
it-is-agreed found to-have-been to-me indeed likely it-seems
sicut rumoribus sic et somniis credi oportere et non
as to-rumors so also to-dreams be-believed ought and not
oportere locum communem esse.
ought a-place common to-be
Quod autem in principali de Kemmeis castro, scilicet apud
what moreover in the-principal of Cemais castle namely at
Nanhever, nostro notabile contigit ævo, hic non prætereo.
Nevern in-our notable happened age here not I-pass-over
Resus filius Griphini, instinctu Griphini filii sui viri
Rhys son of-Gruffydd at-the-instigation of-Gruffydd son his a-man
versipellis et versuti, viro nobili Willelmo filio Martini
shifty and cunning from-the-man noble William son of-Martin

genero suo, contra sacramenta plurima eidem super
son-in-law his against oaths very-many to-the-same about
indemnitate et securitate sua sibi tanquam filio perpetuo
indemnity and security his to-him as-if to-a-son perpetually
conservanda pluries super reliquias pretiosissimas corporaliter
to-be-preserved many-times upon relics most-precious bodily
præstita, castrum suum de Nanhever ei viribus armatis
sworn the-castle his of Nevern from-him by-forces armed
et obsidione sustulit, et Griphino filio suo tradidit; contra
and by-siege took-away and to-Gruffydd son his handed-over against
sacramentum etiam de castro eodem ei nominatim non
the-oath also about castle the-same to-him by-name not
tradendo specialiter datum. Sed quoniam
to-be-handed-over specially given but since

"Non habet eventus sordida præda bonos,"
"Not has outcomes foul plunder good,"

Dominus, qui per prophetam suum clamat, "Mihi vindictam,
the-Lord who through prophet his cries to-me vengeance
et ego retribuam," in brevi post machinatori sceleris et
and I will-repay in short after from-the-contriver of-the-crime and
auctori Griphino munitionem auferri, hominique sub
author Gruffydd the-fortification to-be-taken-away and-to-the-man under
sole quem magis exosum habebat, Mailgoni scilicet fratri
the-sun whom more hated he-held to-Maelgwn namely brother
suo, tradi fecit. Resus quoque, circa biennium post,
his to-be-handed-over caused Rhys also about two-years after
ibidem ubi filiam suam immo filias duas et nepotes
there where daughter his nay daughters two and grandsons
exheredare curavit, exquisito divinitus vindictæ modo,
to-disinherit he-took-care by-an-exquisite divinely of-vengeance manner

in bellico conflictu a filiis est captus, et in eodem
in warlike conflict by his-sons was captured and in the-same
castro incarceratus. Et sic ubi turpitudinem majorem et
castle imprisoned and so where shame greater and
enormiorem excessum perpetravit, ibi dedecus e contra
more-enormous excess he-perpetrated there disgrace on the-contrary
majus, et ampliorem suscipere meruit confusionem.
greater and fuller to-receive he-deserved confusion
Illud et hic notabile censui, quod eodem quo istud ei
that also here notable I-judged that at-the-same in-which this to-him
accidit tempore, torquem Sancti Kanauci de Brecheniauc
happened time the-torque of-Saint Cynog of Brecknock
apud Dinevur captam tenebat et inclusam. Per quod et
at Dinevor captured he-held and shut-up through which also
ipse ultione divina capi meruit et includi.
he-himself by-vengeance divine to-be-captured deserved and to-be-shut-up
Apud cœnobium itaque Sancti Dogmaelis pernoctantes, tam
at the-monastery therefore of-Saint Dogmael spending-the-night as-much
ibi in crastino quam versus Aberteivi, id est, casum Teivi
there on the-morrow as toward Cardigan that is the-fall of-the-Teifi
fluminis in mare, ubi a Reso principe ea nocte decenter
river into the-sea where by Rhys the-prince on-that night decently
exhibiti fuimus, ex latere tamen Kemmeisensi, non procul
entertained we-were on the-side however of-Cemais not far
a ponte, convocato partium illarum populo, et tam
from the-bridge with-called-together of-parts those the-people and as-much
Reso quam duobus filiis suis, Mailgone scilicet et Griphino,
Rhys as two sons his Maelgwn namely and Gruffydd
præsentibus, verbo Domini tam ab archiepiscopo quam
present with-the-word of-the-Lord as-much by the-archbishop as
Menevensi archidiacono persuasorie prolato, ad obsequium
by-the-St-Davids archdeacon persuasively uttered to the-service

crucis multos alleximus. Quorum uno crucesignato,
of-the-cross many we-enticed of-whom with-one signed-with-the-cross
quanquam unico filio et unico matris solatio jam senio
although only son and only of-his-mother comfort now with-old-age
confectæ, eundem statim mater intuita, et divinitus ut
worn-out him at-once the-mother looking-at and divinely as
videbatur inspirata, subjecit; "Gratias tibi, carissime Domine
it-seemed inspired added thanks to-you dearest Lord
Christe Jhesu, intimas ago, quod talem mihi filium quem
Christ Jesus inmost I-give that such to-me a-son whom
tuo dignareris obsequio parere concessisti."
for-your you-might-deign service to-bear you-have-granted
Fuit et alia ibidem mulier, matrona videlicet de Aberteivi,
there-was also another there woman a-matron namely of Cardigan
animo a priore longe dissimili; quæ virum suum, ne ad
in-mind from the-former far unlike who husband her lest to
archiepiscopum iret, neve crucem susciperet, per pallium et
the-archbishop he-should-go or the-cross take by the-cloak and
zonam firmiter tenens, coram cunctis impudenter retrahebat. Sed
belt firmly holding before all impudently drew-back but
eadem, tertia post nocte, terribilem hanc in somnis vocem
the-same on-the-third after night terrible this in sleep voice
audivit; "Servientem meum mihi abstulisti; quamobrem
heard servant my from-me you-have-taken-away wherefore
et a te quoque quod plurimum diligis auferetur." Qua
also from you also what most you-love will-be-taken-away with-which
visione viro cum utriusque tam admiratione quam
vision to-her-husband with of-each as-much wonder as
terrore relata, cum iterum obdormisset, filium parvulum, quem
terror related when again she-had-fallen-asleep son little whom
secum in toro materna plus dilectione quam diligentia jacentem
with-her in bed with-maternal more love than care lying

habebat, non minus infeliciter quam insuaviter oppressit. Et
she-had not less unhappily than unpleasantly she-smothered and
statim vir, diocesano episcopo tam visionem referens quam
at-once the-man to-the-diocesan bishop as-much the-vision relating as
vindictam, crucem suscepit; uxore favente, ipsaque signum
the-vengeance the-cross took with-his-wife favoring and-she the-sign
sponte propriis manibus armo virili insuente.
of-her-own-accord with-her-own hands on-the-shoulder manly sewing
In loco vero prædicationis, juxta caput pontis, tanquam
in the-place however of-preaching near the-head of-the-bridge as-if
tanti conventus memoriale, locum capellæ in viridi planitie
of-so-great an-assembly a-memorial the-place of-a-chapel on the-green plain
statim plebs devota signavit; ubi vestigia loquendo ad
at-once the-people devout marked where his-footsteps in-speaking to
populum archiepiscopus fixerat, altare designantes. Ubi et multa
the-people the-archbishop had-fixed an-altar designating where also many
miracula languentium turbis huc undique confluentibus,
miracles of-the-sick with-the-crowds hither from-all-sides flowing-together
quæ singula referre longum esset, certum est contigisse.
which one-by-one to-relate long it-would-be certain it-is to-have-happened

THE TEIFI AND ITS BEAVERS

The Teifi, richest in salmon of the Welsh rivers, has the salmon leap at Cenarth, and alone of the rivers of Wales and England it has beavers. Beavers haul timber with their own kind as carts, build lodges of willow in deep water, muddy the water to escape the hunter, and in the east castrate themselves to save the rest. Their broad, hairless tails are eaten as fish in Lent. At Crug Mawr near Cardigan, where Gruffydd son of Rhys defeated the English after Richard de Clare's death, a tomb on the summit fits any man's stature, and arms left there are found broken by morning.

De fluvio Teivi, et Keirdigan, et Emelyn, cum notabilibus
about the-river Teifi and Cardigan and Emlyn with notable-things
suis.
its

Labitur autem hic fluvius egregius, cui nomen Teivi, præ
glides moreover here a-river excellent to-which the-name Teifi beyond
cunctis Kambriæ fluviis salmone præpingui fecundissimus.
all of-Wales rivers in-salmon very-fat most-fruitful
Habet et piscariam copiosam juxta Kilgarran, in summitate
it-has also a-fishery copious near Cilgerran on the-summit
rupis cujusdam, Sancti Leudoci manibus olim exsculptam, in
of-a-rock certain of-Saint Llawddog by-the-hands once carved in
loco qui dicitur Kenarthmaur, per quam aqua prædicta
the-place which is-called Cenarth-Mawr through which the-water aforesaid
transcurrens ab alto ut assolet cum strepitu magno ad
running from on-high as it-is-wont with din great to
ima descendit. Ubi et salmones ab imis ad summam
the-depths descends where also the-salmon from the-depths to the-top
rupis concavitatem, quantum hastæ longissimæ est altitudo,
of-the-rock hollow as-much-as of-a-lance the-longest is the-height
saltu mirabili transferuntur, et, nisi piscis proprietas
with-a-leap wonderful are-carried and unless of-the-fish the-property

hoc exigeret, miraculoso. Hoc etenim piscium genus saltum
this demanded miraculous this for of-fishes kind the-leap
appetit ex natura: unde et a saltu Salmo nomen accepit.
seeks from nature whence also from the-leap salmon its-name it-has-received
"Modus autem saliendi et proprietas," sicut in Hibernica
the-manner moreover of-leaping and the-property as in the-Irish
Topographia descripsimus, "hæc est. Pisces hujusmodi
Topography we-have-described this is fish of-this-kind
naturaliter aquæ cursum contra nitentes, — sicut enim
naturally of-the-water the-course against striving as for
avibus contra flatus, sic et piscibus contra fluctus mos
to-birds against blasts so also to-fishes against waves the-custom
est eniti, — cum obstaculum inveniunt valde præruptum
is to-strive when an-obstacle they-find very steep
caudam ad os replicant; interdum etiam, ad majorem
the-tail to the-mouth they-fold-back sometimes even for greater
saltus efficaciam, caudam ipsam ore comprimunt;
of-the-leap efficacy the-tail itself with-the-mouth they-press
dumque a circulo hujuscemodi se subito resolvunt,
and-while from circle of-this-kind themselves suddenly they-release
cum impetu quodam, tanquam subita virgæ circulatæ
with force a-certain as-if by-the-sudden of-a-rod bent
explicatione, se ab imis ad alta cum intuentium
unfolding themselves from the-depths to the-heights with of-the-onlookers
admiratione longe transmittunt."
wonder far they-send
Stant autem simul, in angusto scilicet terræ arpento, ecclesia
stand moreover together in a-narrow namely of-land acre the-church
sancti illius, molendinum, cum ponte et piscaria, et
of-saint that the-mill with the-bridge and the-fishery and
pomerium cum horto delectabili.
the-orchard with a-garden delightful

Habet et aliud fluvius iste sua specialitate notabile.
it-has also another-thing river this by-its specialty notable
Inter universos namque Kambriæ seu etiam Loegriæ fluvios,
among all for of-Wales or even of-England rivers
solus hic castores habet. In Albania quoque, ut fertur,
alone this beavers has in Scotland also as is-said
fluvio similiter unico habentur, sed rari.
in-a-river likewise single they-are-had but rare
De hujus autem bestiæ natura, qualiter a silvis ad
about of-this moreover beast the-nature how from the-woods to
aquas materiam vehant; quanto artificio ex attracta
the-waters material they-carry with-how-great art from drawn
materia mediis in fluctibus munimenta connectant; quam
material in-the-middle in the-waves fortifications they-join what
defensionis artem contra venatores in occidente prætendant,
of-defense art against hunters in the-west they-display
quam in oriente; de caudis quoque pisceis, ut aiunt, potius
what in the-east about the-tails also fishy as they-say rather
quam carneis, pauca interserere non inutile reputavi.
than fleshy a-few-things to-insert not useless I-reckoned
Castores enim, ut castra sibi in fluviis construant,
beavers for that castles for-themselves in rivers they-may-construct
sui generis servis pro rheda utentes, a silvis ad aquas
of-their kind slaves for a-wagon using from the-woods to the-waters
lignea robora miro vecturæ modo contrahunt et
wooden timbers in-a-wonderful of-conveyance manner they-draw-together and
conducunt. Quidam enim ex his, naturæ imperio servire
bring some for of these of-nature by-the-command to-serve
parati, ligna ab aliis præcisa ventrique supino imposita
ready the-timbers by others cut-off and-on-the-belly supine placed
quatuor pedibus complectentes, lignoque in ore ex
with-four feet embracing and-with-wood in the-mouth from

transverso locato dentibus ab aliis hinc inde cohærentibus,
across placed by-the-teeth by others on-this-side on-that clinging
retrogradeque trahentibus, non absque intuentium admiratione
and-backward drawing not without of-the-onlookers wonder
simul cum oneribus attrahuntur. Simili quoque naturæ
together with the-loads are-drawn by-like also of-nature
artificio, in scrobium purgatione, quas sibi pedibus in
art in of-their-burrows the-cleaning which for-themselves with-the-feet in
terram fodiendo scalpendoque conformant, meloti utuntur. In
the-earth by-digging and-scraping they-shape badgers use in
utroque vero animalium genere servi notabiles inveniuntur,
each however of-animals kind slaves notable are-found
tam degenerante quadam naturæ deformitate, quam
as-much by-degenerating a-certain of-nature deformity as
abrasa et attrita dorsorum depilatione.
by-the-scraped and worn of-backs hairlessness
In aliquo vero profundissimo fluvii angulo et pacifico, in
in some however deepest of-the-river corner and peaceful in
castrorum constructione tanto artificio ligna connectunt,
of-castles the-construction with-so-great art the-timbers they-join
ut nec aquæ stilla penetrando subintret, nec procellæ
that neither of-water a-drop by-penetrating may-enter nor of-storm
vis labefactando concutiat; nec violentiam quamlibet præter
the-force by-shaking may-shake nor violence any except
humanam, et hanc ferro munitam reformident.
human and this with-iron fortified do-they-fear
Ex salicum autem ramis in castrorum constructione
from of-willows moreover the-branches in of-castles the-construction
ligna connectunt; soliisque variis in altum, quantum
the-timbers they-join and-with-floors various on high as-much-as
aqua excrescere solet et ultra, ostiis interius a solio
the-water to-rise is-wont and beyond with-doors inside from floor

in solium aptatis, machinam distinguunt; ut juxta
to floor fitted the-structure they-distinguish that according-to
fluminis incrementa fluctuantes undas, cum voluerint, ab
of-the-river the-increases the-fluctuating waves when they-wish from
alto despicere valeant: ex salicibus autem, ut
on-high to-look-down-on they-may-be-able from willows moreover so-that
per annuos crescendo salicum saltus hispidum exterius
through annual by-growing of-willows the-thicket a-shaggy outside
silvescat arbustum, tota interius arte latente.
may-grow-wild shrubbery with-all inside the-art lying-hidden
Hoc animal in aquis ad libitum perdurat; et sub eisdem,
this animal in the-waters at will endures and under the-same
more bufonum, velutique phocæ pilosæ, quæ fluxum
in-the-manner of-toads and-as-if seals hairy which the-flow
maris atque refluxum lenitate pilorum et hispiditate
of-the-sea and ebb by-the-smoothness of-their-hair and roughness
declarant, halitum fovet.
declare its-breath keeps
Sub aquis igitur indifferenter et sub divo, tria hæc
under the-waters therefore indifferently and under the-sky three these
animalium genera spiritum trahunt. Suntque tibiis curtis,
of-animals kinds breath draw and-they-are with-legs short
corpore lato, caudis nullis vel quasi mutilatis, et talpis
with-body broad with-tails none or as-if docked and to-moles
quodammodo sive melotis in corporis compositione conformia.
in-a-way or badgers in of-the-body the-composition conformable
Notandum etiam quod quatuor hæc solum bestia dentes
to-be-noted also that four this alone beast teeth
præfert; oris anteriori parte duos supra, et duos inferius
displays of-the-mouth on-the-front part two above and two below

e contra; eisque, latis plurimum et acutis, tanquam
on the-contrary and-them broad very-much and sharp as-if
dolabris utitur ad secandum.
hatchets it-uses for cutting
Habent autem in proxima castris ripa scrobes subterraneas,
they-have moreover in the-nearest to-their-castles bank burrows underground
latibulaque in sicco munitissima. Ad quæ venator explorans
and-hiding-places on dry-land most-fortified to which the-hunter exploring
dum præacutis sudibus desuper transpenetrare molitur, ictum
while with-sharpened stakes from-above to-pierce he-strives the-blow
audiens et violentiam timens, quam citius ad castri
hearing and the-violence fearing as quickly-as-possible to of-the-castle
munimenta se bestia confert. Sed primo ad ipsum foraminis
the-defenses itself the-beast betakes but first at the-very of-the-hole
ingressum in ripa residens, aquam exsufflat, terram pedibus
entrance on the-bank sitting the-water it-blows-out the-earth with-its-feet
scalpens immiscet, et ex limpida visuique pervia turbidam
scraping it-mixes-in and from clear and-to-sight penetrable muddy
reddit et cœnulentam; ut sic hostis a ripa cum
it-renders and miry that so of-the-enemy from the-bank with
fuscina ferrea saltum observantis artem arte deludat.
a-trident iron the-leap watching the-art by-art it-may-elude
In eois autem regionibus, cum canes narium sagacitate
in eastern moreover regions when the-dogs of-nostrils by-the-keenness
sequaces se nullatenus effugere posse præsentit, ut damno
pursuing itself in-no-way to-escape be-able it-foresees that with-the-loss
partis totum redimat, partem quam appeti naturali industria
of-a-part the-whole it-may-redeem the-part which to-be-sought by-natural industry
novit projiciendo in venatoris prospectu seipsam bestia castrat.
it-knows by-throwing-away in of-the-hunter the-sight itself the-beast castrates
Unde et a castrando Castor nomen accepit. Præterea, si
whence also from castrating castor its-name it-has-received moreover if

bestiam præcastratam canes iterum forte persequantur, ad
the-beast castrated-before the-dogs again by-chance pursue to
eminentem statim se conferens locum, coxa in altum
a-prominent at-once itself betaking place with-the-haunch on high
elevata, partem venatori quam appetit præcisam ostendit.
raised the-part to-the-hunter which he-seeks cut-off it-shows
De quibus Cicero in Scauriana; "Redimunt se ex illa
about which Cicero in the-Scauriana they-redeem themselves with that
parte corporis, propter quam maxime expetuntur." Juvenalis;
part of-the-body for which most they-are-sought Juvenal

"Qui se
"Who himself
Eunuchum ipse facit, cupiens evadere damno
A-eunuch himself makes, desiring to-escape by-the-loss
Testiculi."
Of-the-testicle."

Et Bernardus;
and Bernard

"Prodit item castor proprio de corpore velox
"Gives-up likewise the-beaver its-own from body swift
Reddere quas sequitur hostis avarus opes."
To-render which pursues the-enemy greedy riches."

Sic igitur ut hinc pellem, quæ in occidente quæritur,
so therefore that on-this-side the-skin which in the-west is-sought
tueri valeat, illinc partis medicinalis quæ in oriente
to-protect it-may-be-able on-that-side of-the-part medicinal which in the-east
diligitur largitione, totum quanquam tamen non totum
is-prized by-the-giving the-whole although nevertheless not the-whole

conservet, mirabili, ne dicam ingenio, vi quadam
it-may-preserve by-a-wonderful not to-say by-ingenuity by-force a-certain
ingenita et quasi discretiva, venatoris astutiam vitare molitur.
inborn and as-if discerning of-the-hunter the-cunning to-avoid it-strives
Notandum quoque quod castores caudas habent latas et
to-be-noted also that beavers tails have broad and
non longas, in modum palmæ humanæ spissas; quibus
not long in the-manner of-a-palm human thick with-which
tanquam pro remigio natando funguntur. Cumque totum
as-if for oarage in-swimming they-make-use and-since the-whole
corpus reliquum valde pilosum habeant, hanc partem omni
body remaining very hairy they-have this part of-all
pilositate carentem, in morem phocæ marinæ, planam habent
hairiness lacking in the-manner of-a-seal of-the-sea flat they-have
et levigatam. Unde et in Germania, arctoisque regionibus,
and smooth whence also in Germany and-northern regions
ubi abundant beveres, caudis hujusmodi, piscium ut aiunt
where abound beavers on-tails of-this-kind of-fish as they-say
naturam tam sapore quam colore sortitis, viri etiam
the-nature as-much in-flavor as in-color having-obtained men even
magni et religiosi jejuniorum tempore pro pisce vescuntur.
great and religious of-fasts in-the-time for fish feed
Videtur tamen, quod juris in toto quoad totum, hoc in
it-seems nevertheless that of-right in the-whole as-to the-whole this in
parte quoad partem: nec pars a toto tanta generis
the-part as-to the-part nor the-part from the-whole by-so-great of-kind
diversitate distare consuevit.
diversity to-differ is-wont
Transivimus autem a castro prædicto versus Pontem
we-passed moreover from the-castle aforesaid toward the-Bridge
Stephani; Crugmaur, id est, colle magno, juxta Aberteivi
of-Stephen with-Crug-Mawr that is the-hill great near Cardigan

a sinistro latere relicto. Ubi Griphinus filius Resi filii
on the-left side left where Gruffydd son of-Rhys son
Theodori, post obitum Anglorum regis Henrici primi, in
of-Tewdwr after the-death of-the-English of-king Henry first in
bello publico, de Anglorum populo, per necem nobilis
war public on of-the-English the-people through the-killing of-the-noble
viri Ricardi Clarensis juxta Abergevenni, ut dictum est,
man Richard of-Clare near Abergavenny as said has-been
paulo ante interempti, sine capite relicto, et ob hoc
a-little before slain without a-head left and on-account-of this
in impetu primo statim confecto, stragem non modicam
in the-attack first at-once finished a-slaughter not moderate
fecit. In summitate collis ejusdem tumulus reperitur, quem
made on the-summit of-hill the-same a-tomb is-found which
se cuilibet staturæ præstare conformem incolæ testantur.
itself to-any stature to-show conformable the-inhabitants testify
Et si arma quæcunque vespere ibidem integra relinquantur,
and if arms any in-the-evening there whole are-left
mane confracta vulgari assertione reperientur.
in-the-morning broken by-common assertion they-will-be-found

After sermons at Lampeter the party lodged at Strata Florida; beyond it Cynwrig son of Rhys, tall, fair, and barefoot, met them, and of Rhys's three sons Maelgwn promised to go with the archbishop to the king's court. At Llanddewi Brefi a hill rose beneath David as he preached against the Pelagians, and he was made archbishop. Llanbadarn Fawr has a lay abbot, a Welsh and Irish abuse; a Breton knight, seeing its abbot come armed among twenty youths, ended his travels. Crossing the Dovey into Merioneth, the roughest land of Wales, where lances excel, the party met Gruffydd son of Cynan, and his brother Maredudd gave his own cloak to a new crusader.

De transitu per Pontem Stephani, per monasterium
about the-passage through the-Bridge of-Stephen through the-monastery
quoque de Stratflur, per Brevi, et ecclesiam Paterni
also of Strata-Florida through Brefi and the-church of-Paternus
magni, cum notabilibus suis.
the-great with notable-things its
Apud Stephani vero Pontem sermone in crastino facto, tam
at of-Stephen however the-Bridge with-a-sermon on the-morrow made as-much
ab archiepiscopo quam Menevensi archidiacono, necnon et
by the-archbishop as by-the-St-Davids archdeacon and-also also
abbatibus Cisterciensis ordinis duobus, de Alba domo scilicet
by-abbots of-the-Cistercian order two of the-White House namely
Johanne et de Stratflur Seisillo, qui nobis in partibus istis et
John and of Strata-Florida Seisyll who to-us in parts these and
usque in Norwalliam fideliter astiterunt, plurimis quoque ad
up-to into North-Wales faithfully stood-by with-very-many also to
crucis obsequium allectis, ea nocte apud Stratflur moram
of-the-cross the-service enticed on-that night at Strata-Florida a-stay
fecimus. Progressis inde parum, montanis de Moruge
we-made with-advanced thence a-little with-the-mountains of Moruge

magnis et immensis, quæ Kambrice dicuntur Elennith, a
great and immense which in-Welsh are-called Elennith on
latere dextro relictis, in silvæ cujusdam ora obviavit
the-side right left on of-a-forest certain the-edge met
nobis Kenewricus filius Resi, juventute septus expeditissima.
us Cynwrig son of-Rhys by-youth surrounded most-unencumbered
Adolescens ipse flavus et crispus, pulcher et procerus, ut
a-young-man himself yellow-haired and curly handsome and tall that
patriæ gentique morem gereret, pallio tenui solum et
to-his-country and-people the-custom he-might-observe in-a-cloak thin only and
interula indutus, tibiis et pedibus nudis tribulos et spinas
a-shirt clothed with-legs and feet bare thistles and thorns
non formidantibus; vir non arte quidem, sed natura munitus;
not fearing a-man not by-art indeed but by-nature fortified
plurimum quippe dignitatis ex se præferens, ex adjuncto
very-much indeed of-dignity from himself displaying from what-was-added
parum. Sermone igitur tribus filiis adultis, Griphino scilicet,
little with-a-sermon therefore to-three sons grown Gruffydd namely
Mailgoni, et Kenewrico, in præsentia patris ibidem facto,
Maelgwn and Cynwrig in the-presence of-their-father there made
et altercantibus de crucis susceptione fratribus, tandem
and with-disputing about of-the-cross the-taking the-brothers at-length
Mailgo se cum archiepiscopo ad curiam regis iturum
Maelgwn himself with the-archbishop to the-court of-the-king about-to-go
firma sponsione concessit, et tam regis quam archiepiscopi
by-firm promise granted and as-much of-the-king as of-the-archbishop
consilio, nisi per ipsos steterit, obtemperaturum.
the-counsel unless through them it-shall-have-stood about-to-obey
Transivimus inde per Landewi Brevi, id est, ecclesiam David
we-passed thence through Llanddewi Brefi that is the-church of-David
de Brevi, quæ sita est in collis vertice, qui sub pedibus
of Brefi which situated is on of-a-hill the-summit which under the-feet

ejusdem David prædicantis olim excreverat: in illa scilicet
of-the-same David preaching once had-grown in that namely
synodo magna episcoporum omnium et abbatum Kambriæ
synod great of-the-bishops all and abbots of-Wales
totius, necnon et cleri universi ibidem una cum populo
whole and-also also of-the-clergy all there together with the-people
collecta, propter Pelagianam hæresim, quanquam olim a
assembled on-account-of the-Pelagian heresy although once by
beato Germano Autisiodorensi episcopo ab insula Britannica
blessed Germanus of-Auxerre bishop from the-island British
deletam, his denuo tamen in partibus recidivo morbo
deleted in-these anew nevertheless in parts by-a-relapsing disease
redivivaque peste jam tunc emersam. Ubi et unanimi
and-a-reviving plague already then emerged where also by-the-unanimous
totius conventus tam electione quam acclamatione, ob
of-the-whole assembly as-much election as acclamation on-account-of
tanti miraculi signum, quanquam invitus et renitens, David
of-so-great a-miracle the-sign although unwilling and resisting David
in archiepiscopum est sublimatus. Præsertim cum beatus
to archbishop was raised especially since blessed
quoque Dubricius, in memorata Urbis Legionum curia,
also Dubricius in the-mentioned of-the-City of-the-Legions court
eidem paulo ante sua tam destinatione quam nuncupatione
to-the-same a-little before by-his as-much designation as nomination
cessisset honorem: sede metropolitana ab Urbe Legionum
had-yielded the-honor with-the-see metropolitan from the-City of-the-Legions
usque Meneviam abhinc translata. Ea igitur nocte apud
to St-Davids thence transferred on-that therefore night at
Lanpadern maur, id est, ecclesiam Paterni magni, mora
Llanbadarn Fawr that is the-church of-Paternus the-great with-a-stay
facta, mane ad Christi obsequium plures alleximus.
made in-the-morning to of-Christ the-service many we-enticed

Notandum autem quod hæc ecclesia, sicut et aliæ per
to-be-noted moreover that this church as also other through
Hiberniam et Walliam plures, abbatem laicum habet.
Ireland and Wales many an-abbot lay has
Usus enim inolevit et prava consuetudo, ut viri in
a-usage for has-grown-up and depraved custom that men in
parochia potentes, primo tanquam œconomi seu potius
the-parish powerful at-first as-if stewards or rather
ecclesiarum patroni et defensores a clero constituti, postea
of-the-churches patrons and defenders by the-clergy appointed afterward
processu temporis aucta cupidine totum sibi jus
in-the-course of-time with-increased greed all to-themselves the-right
usurparent, et terras omnes cum exteriore possessione
usurped and the-lands all with the-outward possession
sibi impudenter appropriarent: solum altaria cum decimis
to-themselves impudently appropriated only the-altars with the-tithes
et obventionibus clero relinquentes; et hæc ipsa filiis
and offerings to-the-clergy leaving and these very-things to-sons
suis clericis et cognatis assignantes. Tales itaque defensores
their clerics and kinsmen assigning such therefore defenders
seu potius ecclesiarum destructores abbates se vocari
or rather of-the-churches destroyers abbots themselves to-be-called
fecere; et tam nomen indebitum quam rem sibi
caused and as-much the-name undue as the-thing to-themselves
quoque assignari præsumpsere. In hoc statu ecclesiam hanc
also to-be-assigned presumed in this state church this
invenimus destitutam; veteri quodam et inveterato dierum
we-found destitute with-an-old a-certain-man and grown-old of-days
malorum, cui nomen Ethenoweyn filius Withfoit, se
evil to-whom the-name Eden-Owain son of-Gwyddfoed himself
abbatem gerente, et filiis ejusdem altari incumbentibus.
abbot acting and with-sons of-the-same at-the-altar attending

Tempore tamen regis Henrici primi, Anglorum potestate
in-the-time however of-king Henry first of-the-English with-power
per Kambriam vigente, cœnobium Sancti Petri Gloverniæ
through Wales flourishing the-monastery of-Saint Peter of-Gloucester
prædictam ecclesiam quiete possedit. Sed post obitum regis
the-aforesaid church quietly possessed but after the-death of-king
ejusdem, Anglis expulsis, monachi quoque sunt ejecti,
the-same with-the-English expelled the-monks also were ejected
et more præfato tam clerici interius quam laici
and in-the-manner aforesaid as-much clerics within as laymen
exterius violenter intrusi.
without violently intruded
Contigit autem, regnante Stephano, qui successit Henrico
it-happened moreover with-reigning Stephen who succeeded Henry
primo, militem quemdam de Armorica oriundum Britannia,
first a-knight certain from Armorican sprung Brittany
peragratis regionibus multis ut variarum gentium tam
with-traversed regions many that of-various peoples as-much
urbes quam mores discerneret, huc tandem forte fortuitu
the-cities as the-manners he-might-discern hither at-length by-chance accidentally
advectum esse. Cum itaque, die quodam festivo, ad
brought to-have-been when therefore on-a-day certain festal for
missæ celebrationem adventum abbatis tam clerus quam
of-mass the-celebration the-coming of-the-abbot as-much the-clergy as
populus exspectaret, demum abbati venienti cum aliis
the-people awaited at-last with-the-abbot coming with others
occursans, vidit turbam juvenum venire circiter viginti,
running-to-meet he-saw a-crowd of-youths come about twenty
more gentis expeditam et armis munitam. Cumque
in-the-manner of-the-people unencumbered and with-arms fortified and-when
quærenti, quisnam illorum abbas esset, virum quemdam
to-him-asking who of-them the-abbot was a-man certain

ostenderent alios cum lancea longa præcedentem, intuens in
they-showed the-others with a-lance long going-before gazing on
eum et admirans ait; "Numquid ne alium habitum, aliumve
him and wondering he-said surely-not not another habit or-another
baculum, abbas iste quam illum quem nunc præfert habet?"
staff abbot this than that which now he-displays has
Responderunt, "Nequaquam." At ille; "Sat," inquit, "hodie
they-answered by-no-means but he enough he-says today
novitatis vidi, satque miraculi jam audivi." Et ab illa
of-novelty I-have-seen and-enough of-marvel now I-have-heard and from that
statim hora reversus, finem labori posuit et explorationi.
at-once hour returned an-end to-labor he-put and to-exploration
Jactat autem gens hæc et generatio prava, episcopum
boasts moreover people this and generation depraved a-bishop
quemdam ecclesiæ istius, quia cathedralis aliquando fuerat,
certain of-church this because cathedral once it-had-been
a decessoribus suis interemtum. Et hac præcipue allegatione
by predecessors their slain and by-this especially allegation
in loco eodem jus sibi vindicant et proprietatem.
in place the-same right to-themselves they-claim and property
Elegimus itaque has potius enormitates ad præsens sub
we-chose therefore these rather enormities for the-present under
dissimulatione transire, quam, nullo ibidem querimoniam
dissimulation to-pass-over than with-no-one there a-complaint
deponente, gentem iniquam exasperare.
lodging a-people wicked to-exasperate

De fluvio Devi navigio transcurso, et terra filiorum
about the-river Dovey by-ship crossed and the-land of-the-sons
Canani, cum notabilibus suis.
of-Cynan with notable-things its
Accedentes igitur ad aquam Devi, quæ Norwalliam secernit a
approaching therefore to the-water Dovey which North-Wales separates from
Sudwallia, reversis jam Menevensi episcopo et Reso Griphini
South-Wales with-returned now of-St-Davids the-bishop and Rhys of-Gruffydd
filio, qui nos a castro de Aberteivi per Kereticam regionem
son who us from the-castle of Cardigan through the-Cardigan region
usque ad aquam istam laudabili in principe liberalitate deduxit,
up-to to water this with-laudable in a-prince liberality led
transcurso navigio flumine, et Menevensi diocesi jam post
with-crossed by-ship the-river and with-the-St-Davids diocese now behind
terga relicta, terram filiorum Chanani, scilicet Merionyth, et
our-backs left the-land of-the-sons of-Cynan namely Merioneth and
primam ea ex parte Venedotiæ provinciam, et episcopatum
the-first on-that from side of-Gwynedd the-province and the-bishopric
Bangoriensem intravimus, apud Teweyn pernoctantes.
of-Bangor we-entered at Towyn spending-the-night
In crastino vero, mane, occurrit nobis filius Chanani
on the-morrow however in-the-morning met us the-son of-Cynan
Griphinus, quod diutius obviam archiepiscopo venire distulisset
Gruffydd because too-long to-meet the-archbishop to-come he-had-delayed
humiliter et devote veniam petens. Transivimus eodem
humbly and devoutly pardon seeking we-crossed on-the-same
die navigio bifurcum Maviæ flumen; ubi Mailgo filius
day by-ship the-forked Mawddach river where Maelgwn son
Resi, qui individuum archiepiscopo ad curiam regis se
of-Rhys who inseparable to-the-archbishop to the-court of-the-king himself
comitem dederat, juxta mare tamen vadum invenit. Ea
companion had-given near the-sea nevertheless a-ford found on-that

nocte jacuimus apud Lanmeir, id est, ecclesiam Mariæ, in
night we-lay at Llanfair that is the-church of-Mary in
provincia de Ardudoe.
the-province of Arudwy
Hæc autem terra Chanani, et præcipue Merionyth, omnium
this moreover land of-Cynan and especially Merioneth of-all
totius Kambriæ terrarum hispida magis est et horribilis. Habet
of-whole Wales the-lands rough more is and horrible it-has
enim montes altissimos, arctos tamen et in modum arcis
for mountains very-high narrow however and in the-manner of-a-citadel
acutissimos, nec raros quidem sed creberrimos, et tanta
very-sharp nor rare indeed but very-frequent and with-so-great
inæqualitate consertos, ut in summis eorum verticibus pastores
unevenness packed that on the-highest their summits the-shepherds
confabulantes ad invicem vel conviciantes, si concurrere forte
conversing with each-other or wrangling if to-run-together perhaps
statuerint, a mane in vesperam vix convenient.
they-should-decide from morning into evening scarcely will-they-meet
Sunt autem his in partibus lanceæ longissimæ. Sicut enim
are moreover in-these in parts lances very-long as for
arcu prævalet Sudwallia, sic lanceis præstat Venedotia:
in-the-bow excels South-Wales so in-lances is-preeminent Gwynedd
adeo ut ictum hic lancea cominus datum ferrea loricæ
so that a-blow here by-a-lance at-close-quarters given the-iron of-the-hauberk
tricatura minime sustineat.
plaiting least can-sustain
In crastino obviavit nobis filius Chanani junior, cui
on the-morrow met us the-son of-Cynan younger to-whom
nomen Meredutius, in transitu pontis cujusdam, cum plebe
the-name Maredudd at the-crossing of-a-bridge certain with the-people
provinciæ illius. Ubi quamplurimis ad crucem allectis, tandem
of-province that where with-very-many to the-cross enticed at-length

uno de familia ipsius crucesignato juvene pervalido,
with-one of household his signed-with-the-cross a-youth very-strong
eique familiarissimo, quoniam pallium cui crux assui
and-to-him most-intimate because the-cloak to-which the-cross to-be-sewn
debuerat tenue nimis et vile videbatur, cum uberrimo
should-have thin too and cheap seemed with a-most-abundant
lacrimarum fonte suum ei Meredutius pallium projecit.
of-tears fountain his to-him Maredudd cloak threw

NEFYN, BARDSEY, AND BANGOR

The party crossed Traeth Mawr and Traeth Bychan, where two new stone castles stand, and at Nefyn, on the eve of Palm Sunday, Gerald found the long-sought Merlin Silvester. *On Bardsey, off Llŷn, the monks die only of old age, and countless saints lie buried. Past Caernarfon the party walked a steep valley on foot; resting on a fallen oak, the archbishop heard a bird whistle and, told that the nightingale never entered Wales, called it wise and themselves foolish. At Bangor Bishop Gwion was pressed into taking the cross amid his people's lamentation.*

De Traitmaur et Traitbochan transcursis; de Nevin quoque,
about Traeth-Mawr and Traeth-Bychan crossed about Nefyn also
Kairarvon, et Bangor, cum notabilibus suis.
Caernarfon and Bangor with notable-things its
Transivimus inde Traitmaur et Traitbochan, id est, tractum
we-passed thence Traeth-Mawr and Traeth-Bychan that is the-tract
maris majorem et tractum minorem, ubi duo castra lapidea
of-sea greater and the-tract lesser where two castles of-stone
de nova sita fuerunt; unum in Evionyth versus montana
from new situated were one in Eifionydd toward the-mountains
borealia, quod erat filiorum Chanani, cui nomen Deutrait;
northern which was of-the-sons of-Cynan to-which the-name Deudraeth

alterum vero ex alia fluvii parte versus mare in capite
the-other however on the-other of-the-river side toward the-sea at the-head
Lhein, quod erat filiorum Oenei, cui nomen Karnmadrun.
of-Llŷn which was of-the-sons of-Owain to-which the-name Carn-Madryn
Dicitur autem Trait, lingua Kambrica, sabulum mari
is-called moreover traeth in-tongue Welsh sand by-the-sea
influente, longius et se retrahente nudatum. Transieramus
flowing-in far and itself withdrawing laid-bare we-had-crossed
tamen aquas antea non ignobiles, Dyssenyth inter Maviam
however waters before not ignoble the-Dysynni between the-Mawddach
et Traitmaur, Arthro inter Traitmaur et Traitbochan. Ea
and Traeth-Mawr the-Artro between Traeth-Mawr and Traeth-Bychan on-that
nocte jacuimus apud Newein, vigilia videlicet Paschæ floridi.
night we-lay at Nefyn on-the-eve namely of-Easter flowery
Ubi Merlinum Silvestrem, diu quæsitum desideratumque,
where Merlin Silvester long sought and-desired
archidiaconus Menevensis dicitur invenisse.
the-archdeacon of-St-Davids is-said to-have-found
Jacet autem extra Lhein insula modica, quam monachi
lies moreover off Llŷn an-island small which monks
inhabitant religiosissimi, quos Cœlibes vel Colideos vocant.
inhabit most-religious whom Celibates or Culdees they-call
Hæc autem insula, vel ab aeris salubritate quam ex
this moreover island either from of-the-air the-salubrity which from
Hiberniæ confinio sortitur, vel potius aliquo ex miraculo et
of-Ireland the-vicinity it-obtains or rather from-some from miracle and
sanctorum meritis, hoc mirandum habet, quod in ea seniores
of-the-saints the-merits this wonderful-thing has that in it the-elder
præmoriuntur, quia morbi in ea rarissimi; et raro vel nunquam
die-first because diseases in it very-rare and rarely or never
hic quispiam moritur, nisi longa senectute confectus. Hæc insula
here anyone dies unless by-long old-age worn-out this island

Enthli Kambrice vocatur, et lingua Saxonica Berdeseie. Et
Enlli in-Welsh is-called and in-the-tongue Saxon Bardsey and
in ea, ut fertur, infinita sanctorum sepulta sunt corpora; ibique
in it as is-said countless of-saints buried are the-bodies and-there
jacere testantur corpus beati Danielis Banchorensis episcopi.
to-lie they-testify the-body of-blessed Daniel of-Bangor bishop
Plurimis igitur in crastino ad archipræsulis sermonem
with-very-many therefore on the-morrow at of-the-archprelate the-sermon
crucesignatis, versus Bangor iter arripientes transivimus
signed-with-the-cross toward Bangor the-journey taking we-passed
per Kairarvon, id est, castrum de Arvon. Dicitur autem
through Caernarfon that is the-castle of Arfon is-called moreover
Arvon provincia contra Mon, eo quod sita sit contra
Arfon the-province opposite Môn on-that because situated it-is opposite
Moniam insulam.
Anglesey island
Venientibus itaque nobis ad vallem via duce, tam
with-coming therefore us to a-valley with-the-way leading as-much
in ascensu quam descensu valde præruptam, cuncti ab
in ascent as descent very steep all from
equis dilapsi pedites perreximus, ex condicto, tanquam
the-horses dismounted on-foot we-proceeded by agreement as-if
Ierosolimitanæ peregrinationis sicut tunc credebatur jamjam
of-the-Jerusalem pilgrimage as then it-was-believed already
instantis quædam præludia facientes. Valle igitur
impending certain preludes making with-the-valley therefore
transmeata, cum ad partem oppositam transcenderemus,
crossed when to the-part opposite we-climbed
fatigatis universis, in quercu quadam vi ventorum
with-wearied all on an-oak certain by-the-force of-the-winds
stirpitus avulsa et prostrata, quiescendi respirandique
by-the-roots torn-up and laid-low of-resting and-of-breathing

gratia cum archiepiscopus resedisset, laudabilem in tanto
for-the-sake when the-archbishop had-sat-down laudable in so-great
tam gravitatis authenticæ viro resolutus in jocunditatem,
so of-gravity authentic a-man relaxed into cheerfulness
circumstantibus ait; "Quis vestrum in hac turba sibilando
to-those-standing-around he-said who of-you in this company by-whistling
aures delectare nunc prævalet fatigatas?" Quod fessis ex
the-ears to-delight now can wearied which for-the-tired from
itinere fieri solet difficile. Ipso vero se id posse
a-journey to-happen is-wont difficult with-himself however himself this to-be-able
si vellet protestante, auditur in silva propinqua sibilus
if he-wished protesting is-heard in the-wood nearby the-whistle
aviculæ dulcisonus, quam alii picum, alii verius aureolum
of-a-little-bird sweet-sounding which some a-woodpecker others more-truly an-oriole
dixere. Dicitur autem picus avicula, lingua Gallica Spec dicta,
said is-called moreover picus a-little-bird in-tongue French spec called
quæ rostro robusto quercum perforans, majores viribus
which with-beak strong the-oak piercing greater with-strength
ictus ingeminat. Dicitur et aureolus avicula aureo croceoque
blows redoubles is-called also aureolus a-little-bird by-golden and-saffron
colore conspicua, dulcemque suo in tempore pro cantu sibilum
color conspicuous and-sweet its in time for song a-whistle
reddens; quæ et aureolus ab aureo colore nomen accepit.
rendering which also aureolus from golden color its-name received
Ad hæc igitur quodam dicente, nunquam philomenam
to these-things therefore with-a-certain-one saying never a-nightingale
partes istas intrasse, subjunxit archiepiscopus, modesta
parts these to-have-entered added the-archbishop with-modest
quadam subrisus significantia; "Philomena quidem sapienti freta
a-certain of-a-smile meaning the-nightingale indeed on-wise relied

est consilio, quæ Kambriæ fines non intravit; nos autem
has counsel which of-Wales the-bounds not entered we however
insipienti, qui Kambriam et penetravimus et circuivimus."
on-unwise who Wales both have-penetrated and have-gone-around
Ea igitur nocte moram fecimus apud Bangor, cathedralem
on-that therefore night a-stay we-made at Bangor the-cathedral
videlicet Venedotiæ sedem, a loci ejusdem episcopo decenter
namely of-Gwynedd see by of-place same the-bishop decently
exhibiti. In crastino vero, missa in principali altari ab
entertained on the-morrow however with-mass at the-principal altar by
archipræsule celebrata, sedis ejusdem antistes, cui nomen
the-archprelate celebrated of-see the-same the-prelate to-whom the-name
Guianus, a dextris altaris ad tam archiepiscopi quam
Gwion on the-right of-the-altar at as-much of-the-archbishop as
aliorum plurium magnam instantiam, et importunam magis
of-others very-many great insistence and importunate more
quam persuasoriam, ad crucis susceptionem est compulsus;
than persuasive to of-the-cross the-taking was compelled
cum magna suorum ipsa in ecclesia lamentatione,
with great of-his-people in-the-very in church lamentation
miserabilique sub barbara quadam vociferatione utriusque
and-wretched under barbarous a-certain outcry of-each
sexus hominum tam clamore quam mœrore.
of-sex of-people as-much with-clamor as grief

In Anglesey only the young men of Rhodri son of Owain refused the cross, and within three days, chasing robbers, some were killed and others wounded. Rhodri, who had married a kinswoman to win Rhys's help against his nephews, was soon driven from his lands by them. The island has 363 townships and feeds all Wales with grain; a thigh-shaped stone there returns wherever it is taken. Earl Hugh of Chester, whose dogs went mad in St Tyfrydog's church, was shot through the eye by Magnus, an Orkney pirate, and the islanders routed Henry II's plundering fleet. Gerald's uncle Henry was killed there and Robert FitzStephen barely escaped. On Priestholm mice spoil the hermits' food when they quarrel. A docked dog Gerald saw in Anglesey bore docked pups, Erchembald of Devon and his son Stephen bore his father's split lip, and Earl Aubrey de Vere's son his father's mark, perhaps shaped by a parent's memory.

De Monia insula, cum notabilibus suis.
about Anglesey island with notable-things its
His ita peractis, transivimus in Moniam insulam, quasi
these-things thus accomplished we-crossed into Anglesey island about
milibus passuum duobus inde distantem, brevi maris
by-thousands of-paces two thence distant with-a-short of-the-sea
brachio transnavigato. Ubi junior Oenei filius Rothericus,
arm sailed-across where the-younger of-Owain son Rhodri
cum insulæ totius necnon et terrarum adjacentium populo,
with of-the-island whole and-also also of-the-lands adjacent the-people
nobis devotus occurrit. Facta igitur in loco quodam
to-us devoted ran-to-meet with-made therefore in a-place certain
non procul a ripa consessione, petrosis in rupibus in
not far from the-shore a-sitting rocky on crags in
theatri modum orbiculariter circumstantibus, ad sermonem
of-a-theater the-manner in-a-circle standing-around at the-sermon
archiepiscopi, et ejusdem loci archidiaconi, scilicet interpretis
of-the-archbishop and of-the-same place of-the-archdeacon namely interpreter

nostri Alexandri, necnon et abbatis de Stratflur Seisilli,
our Alexander and-also also of-the-abbot of Strata-Florida Seisyll
multi de plebe ad crucis obsequium sunt allecti. Sedebant
many of the-people to of-the-cross the-service were enticed sat
autem in opposita rupe de familia Rotherici juvenes electi,
however on the-opposite rock of the-household of-Rhodri youths chosen
quorum nullus allici potuit; quanquam tamen illos, quasi
of-whom none to-be-enticed could although nevertheless them as-if
mel frustra de petra elicere conantes, et oleum de saxo,
honey in-vain from the-rock to-draw trying and oil from the-stone
tam archiepiscopus quam alii, præcipue ad ipsos sermone
as-much the-archbishop as others especially to them with-the-sermon
directo, verbis suasoriis nec persuasoriis invitarent.
directed with-words suasive nor persuasive invited
Contigit autem post infra triduum, tanquam divina ultione
it-happened however after within three-days as-if with-divine vengeance
secuta, quod juvenes iidem cum aliis multis prædones
following that youths the-same with others many robbers
patriæ persequerentur; qui statim a prædonibus confecti
of-the-country pursued who at-once by the-robbers beaten
et in fugam dati, interemtis quibusdam, et aliis letaliter
and into flight put with-killed some and others mortally
vulneratis, crucem quam antea spreverant in carne sibi
wounded the-cross which before they-had-spurned in the-flesh on-themselves
invicem jam ultronei affixerunt.
mutually now of-their-own-accord fixed
Rothericus quoque, qui sanguine sibi propinquam, et
Rhodri also who in-blood to-himself near and
in tertio gradu cognatam, Resi principis filiam paulo
in the-third degree related of-Rhys prince the-daughter a-little
ante incestuoso sibi contubernio copulaverat, ut contra
before in-an-incestuous to-himself union had-joined that against

fratrum filios quos exheredaverat se Resi auxilio
of-his-brothers the-sons whom he-had-disinherited himself of-Rhys by-the-help
fortius tueretur, salutaribus archiepiscopi monitis super
more-strongly he-might-protect to-the-salutary of-the-archbishop warnings about
hoc non obtemperans, a tota quam possederat terra in
this not obeying from all which he-had-possessed land in
brevi postmodum ab eisdem est ejectus: unde sibi illicite
short afterward by the-same was ejected whence for-himself unlawfully
speraverat defensionem, inde merito reportans confusionem.
he-had-hoped defense thence deservedly bringing-back confusion
Habet autem hæc insula Moniæ trecentas et sexaginta tres
has moreover this island of-Anglesey three-hundred and sixty three
villas, et pro tribus tamen Kantaredis reputatur. Dicitur
townships and for three nevertheless cantreds is-reckoned is-called
autem Kantaredus composito vocabulo, tam Britannica
moreover a-cantred by-a-compound word as-much in-British
quam Hibernica lingua, tanta terræ portio quanta centum
as in-Irish the-tongue so-great of-land a-portion as a-hundred
villas continere solet.
townships to-contain is-wont
Adjacent autem insulæ Britannicæ tres lateraliter diversis
lie-adjacent moreover to-the-island British three sideways from-different
ex partibus insulæ, quæ ejusdem fere quantitatis esse
from parts islands which of-the-same almost size to-be
perhibentur; ab austro Vecta, a zephyro Monia, a circio
are-said on the-south Wight on the-west Anglesey on the-northwest
Mania. Sed duæ priores propinquius adjacent, modicis
Man but the-two former more-nearly lie-adjacent by-small
distinctæ maris interstitiis. Tertia vero, quæ Mania dicitur,
separated of-sea intervals the-third however which Man is-called

medio inter Hibernicam Ultoniam et Scoticas Galwedias
in-the-middle between Irish Ulster and the-Scottish Galloways
libramine jacens, remotius extenditur.
in-balance lying more-remotely extends
Est autem Monia arida tellus et saxosa, deformis aspectu et
is moreover Anglesey a-dry land and rocky misshapen in-aspect and
inamœna; terræ de Pebidiauc, quæ adjacet Meneviæ, exteriori
unpleasant to-the-land of Pebidiog which lies-adjacent to-St-Davids in-outward
qualitate simillima, verumtamen interiori naturæ dote longe
quality most-similar but in-the-inner of-nature endowment far
dissimilis. Est etenim hæc insula præ cunctis Kambriæ finibus
unlike is for this island beyond all of-Wales the-bounds
triticeo gramine incomparabiliter fecunda: adeo ut proverbialiter
with-wheat grass incomparably fruitful so that proverbially
dici soleat lingua Britannica, Mon mam Kembre, quod
to-be-said it-is-wont in-the-tongue British Môn mam Cymru which
Latine sonat, Monia mater Kambriæ. Quoniam aliis undique
in-Latin sounds Anglesey mother of-Wales since with-other on-all-sides
terris deficientibus, hæc sola gleba præpingui uberique
lands failing this alone soil very-rich and-abundant
frugum proventu Kambriam totam sustentare consuevit.
of-crops by-the-yield Wales whole to-sustain has-been-wont
Sed quoniam in hac insula digna memoratu multa
but since in this island worthy of-remembrance many-things
reperies, quædam ex his excerpere et hic interserere non
you-will-find some from these to-excerpt and here to-insert not
superfluum duxi. Est igitur hic lapis humano femori
superfluous I-thought there-is therefore here a-stone to-a-human thigh
fere conformis, cui insita virtus hoc habet, ut spatio
almost conformable to-which an-implanted power this has that by-a-space
quantolibet asportatus proxima per se nocte revertatur, sicut
however-great carried-away on-the-next by itself night it-returns as

ab accolis pluries est compertum. Unde et comes Hugo
by the-neighbors many-times has-been found whence also earl Hugh
Slopesburiensis, qui tempore regis Henrici primi tam insulam
of-Shrewsbury who in-the-time of-king Henry first as-much island
istam, quam terras adjacentes viriliter occupaverat, audita
this as the-lands adjacent manfully had-occupied having-heard
hac lapidis virtute, ipsum alii lapidi longe majori ferreis
this of-the-stone power it to-another stone far greater with-iron
catenis fortiter ligatum, probandi causa, procul in mare
chains strongly bound of-testing for-the-sake far into the-sea
projici fecit. Qui tamen summo diluculo, cum multorum
to-be-thrown caused which nevertheless at-earliest dawn with of-many
admiratione, pristino more loco in suo repertus est. Cujus
wonder in-the-former manner in-place in its found was of-which
rei occasione publico comitis edicto prohibitum est, ne
thing on-the-occasion by-a-public of-the-earl edict forbidden it-was that-not
quis de cetero lapidem a loco movere præsumat.
anyone for the-rest the-stone from the-place to-move presume
Contigit aliquando rusticum quemdam, experiendi gratia, ad
it-happened once a-rustic certain of-testing for-the-sake to
femur suum lapidem ligasse: sed putrefacto statim femore
thigh his the-stone to-have-bound but with-putrefied at-once thigh
ad locum pristinum lapis evasit. Dicitur etiam quod si
to the-place former the-stone escaped it-is-said also that if
venereum opus in loco eodem vel prope fieri contigerit,
venereal work in place the-same or near to-be-done it-shall-have-happened
sicut aliquoties probatum est, statim lapis guttis
as several-times proved it-has-been at-once the-stone with-drops
magnis desudabit. Similiter etiam si procacitatem ibidem vir
great will-sweat likewise also if wantonness there a-man
et mulier exercuerint. Ex venere quoque ibidem expleta
and a-woman shall-have-exercised from intercourse also there completed

nunquam genitura provenit. Unde et ob hoc, casula
never offspring comes-forth whence also on-account-of this with-the-hut
deserta penitus quæ ibidem olim esse solebat, tantum muro
deserted wholly which there once to-be was-wont only by-a-wall
lapideo fatalem hodie lapidem videas circuiri.
stone the-fateful today stone you-may-see to-be-encircled
Est et in eadem insula collis saxosus, non magnus et
there-is also in the-same island a-hill rocky not great and
parum altus, cujus ex una parte si clamaveris, ex
little high of-which on one side if you-shall-have-shouted on
altera nequaquam audieris; et vocatur ab incolis,
the-other by-no-means will-you-have-heard and it-is-called by the-inhabitants
per antiphrasin, Rupis audientium.
by antiphrasis the-Rock of-the-hearers
In boreali quoque majoris Britanniæ latere, quod ab
in the-northern also of-greater Britain side which from
Humbro flumine, quasi trans Humbrum in boream, ab
the-Humber river as-if across the-Humber to the-north from
Anglis nomen accepit, est collis haud dissimilis; cujus
the-English its-name received there-is a-hill not unlike of-which
ex uno latere si cornu altisonum vel tubæ clangor
on one side if a-horn high-sounding or of-a-trumpet the-blare
experiatur, opposito in latere non audietur.
is-tried on-the-opposite on side not it-will-be-heard
Est et in hac insula ecclesia Sancti Tevredauci confessoris,
there-is also in this island the-church of-Saint Tyfrydog confessor
in qua comes Hugo Cestrensis, quoniam et ipse fines [et]
in which earl Hugh of-Chester since also he-himself bounds also
hos Kambriæ suo in tempore subjugaverat, cum canes nocte
these of-Wales in-his in time had-subjugated when dogs at-night
posuisset, insanos omnes mane recepit: et ipsemet infra
he-had-placed mad all in-the-morning he-received and he-himself within

mensem miserabiliter exstinctus occubuit. Accesserant enim ad
a-month wretchedly extinguished fell had-approached for to
insulæ portum ab Orchadum insulis piratæ in navibus longis:
of-the-island the-harbor from of-the-Orkney islands pirates in ships long
quorum adventum ubi comes audivit, statim eis usque in
whose coming when the-earl heard at-once them up-to into
ipsum mare, forti residens equo, animose nimis occurrit.
the-very sea on-a-strong sitting horse boldly too he-ran-to-meet
Et ecce navium princeps, cui nomen Magnus, primæ navis
and behold of-the-ships the-chief to-whom the-name Magnus of-the-first ship
in prora cum arcu prostans sagittam direxit. Et quanquam
on the-prow with a-bow standing-out an-arrow directed and although
comes a vertice capitis usque ad talum pedis, præter oculos
the-earl from the-crown of-the-head up-to to the-heel of-the-foot except the-eyes
solum, ferro fideliter esset indutus, tamen dextro percussus
only with-iron faithfully was clothed nevertheless in-the-right struck
in lumine, perforato cerebro, in mare corruit moribundus. Quem
in eye with-pierced brain into the-sea he-fell dying whom
cum sic corruentem victor ab alto despiceret, superbe in
when thus falling the-victor from on-high looked-down-on proudly against
victum et insolenter invectus, dixisse memoratur lingua
the-vanquished and insolently inveighing to-have-said he-is-recorded in-the-tongue
Danica, "Leit loupe," quod Latine sonat Sine salire. Et ab
Danish leit loupe which in-Latin sounds let leap and from
hac in posterum hora potestas Anglorum in Monia cessavit.
this into the-future hour the-power of-the-English in Anglesey ceased
Nostris quoque temporibus, Anglorum rege Henrico
in-our also times of-the-English with-the-king Henry
secundo in Venedotiam exercitum ducente, ubi et in arcto
second into Gwynedd an-army leading where also in a-narrow
silvestri apud Coleshulle, id est, Carbonis collem, bellicam
wooded-place at Coleshill that is of-Coal the-hill of-war

aleam expertus est, classe in Moniam transmissa, cum
the-die tried has with-a-fleet into Anglesey sent when
prædictæ ecclesiæ aliisque sanctorum per insulam locis
to-the-aforesaid church and-to-other of-the-saints through the-island places
spoliando prædando minime deferrent, divina secuta vindicta,
by-despoiling by-plundering least they-deferred with-divine following vengeance
accolæ tandem in advenas, pauci in multos, inermes
the-inhabitants at-length against the-newcomers few against many unarmed
in armatos subito irruentes, multis interemptis, multisque
against armed suddenly rushing with-many killed and-many
captis et in vincula datis, victoria potiti sunt cruentissima.
captured and into chains given the-victory gained have most-bloody
Quemadmodum enim Hibernica testatur Topographia, sicut
as for the-Irish testifies Topography as
natio Hibernica, necnon et Kambrica, præ aliis gentibus
the-nation Irish and-also also the-Welsh beyond other peoples
præcipites in iram et ad vindictam in vita proni reperiuntur,
headlong into anger and to vengeance in life prone are-found
sic et in morte vitali terrarum earundem sancti præ aliis
so also in death vital of-lands the-same the-saints beyond others
animi vindicis esse videntur.
of-mind avenging to-be seem
Fuerant autem duo nobiles viri, et ejus qui scripsit hæc
there-had-been moreover two noble men and of-him who wrote these-things
avunculi, cum aliis huc a rege transmissi; Henricus scilicet
uncles with others hither by the-king sent Henry namely
regis Henrici primi filius, et secundi avunculus, ex nobili
of-king Henry first the-son and of-the-second the-uncle by the-noble
Nesta, Resi filii Theodori filia, in australi Kambria Demetiæ
Nest of-Rhys son of-Tewdwr daughter in southern Wales of-Dyfed
finibus oriundus; et Robertus Stephani filius, Henrici frater
in-the-bounds sprung and Robert of-Stephen son of-Henry brother

non germanus sed uterinus; vir quidem qui nostro primus
not full but uterine a-man indeed who in-our first
tempore aliis viam præbens, Hibernicam non longe post
time to-others the-way furnishing the-Irish not long after
aggressus est expugnationem; cujus quoque præconia Vaticinalis
undertook has conquest whose also praises the-Prophetic
depromit Historia. Henricus igitur, nimia fretus audacia,
sets-forth History Henry therefore by-too-great relying boldness
bonaque destitutus omnino sequela, cum magno suorum dolore
and-of-good lacking wholly following with great of-his-men grief
inter primos lanceis confossus occubuit. Robertus vero, de
among the-first with-lances pierced fell Robert however of
defensione diffidens, vix ad naves graviter vulneratus evasit.
defense distrusting scarcely to the-ships gravely wounded escaped
Est et insula modica, collateralis Moniæ et fere continua,
there-is also an-island small beside Anglesey and almost continuous
quam solum eremitæ labore manuum viventes et Deo
which only hermits by-the-labor of-hands living and God
servientes inhabitant. De quibus hoc mirandum, quod cum
serving inhabit about whom this to-be-wondered-at that when
aliquando forte motibus humanis discordes ad invicem
sometimes by-chance by-impulses human at-odds with each-other
inventi fuerint, statim mures minutissimi, quibus
found they-shall-have-been at-once mice very-small in-which
abundat insula, escas eorum omnes et potiones tam
abounds the-island the-foods their all and drinks as-much
consumunt quam corrumpunt. Cessante vero discordia,
consume as spoil with-ceasing however the-discord
continuo cessat et incommodum.
immediately ceases also the-trouble

Nec mirandum si Dei famuli discordes interdum
nor to-be-wondered-at if of-God the-servants at-odds sometimes
inveniantur; quoniam in Rebeccæ utero Jacob et Esau bella
be-found since in of-Rebecca the-womb Jacob and Esau wars
gessere, Paulus et Barnabas contentiose ab invicem discessere.
waged Paul and Barnabas contentiously from each-other departed
Inter discipulos quoque Jhesu facta est contentio, quis eorum
among the-disciples also of-Jesus made was a-contention which of-them
videretur esse major. Infirmitatis enim humanæ temptationes
seemed to-be the-greater of-weakness for human temptations
sunt hæ: verumtamen et virtus plerumque in infirmitate
are these but also strength often in weakness
perficitur, et fidei constantia tribulationibus augmentatur.
is-perfected and of-faith constancy by-tribulations is-increased
Dicitur autem insula prædicta Kambrice Enislannach, id
is-called moreover the-island aforesaid in-Welsh Ynys-Lannog that
est, Insula ecclesiastica; propter copiam sanctorum, quorum
is the-Island ecclesiastical on-account-of the-plenty of-saints whose
ibi corpora jacent. Et hanc insulam feminæ non intrant.
there bodies lie and this island women not enter
Præterea vidimus in Monia canem curtum, non natura
moreover we-saw in Anglesey a-dog docked not by-nature
quidem sed casu solo cauda mutilatum. Cujus et progenies
indeed but by-accident only in-tail mutilated whose also offspring
plurima, tam a genitore descendens quam genitura,
very-many as-much from the-begetter descending as by-birth
similem jam naturaliter pati defectum ostensa est. Mirum
like now naturally to-suffer the-defect shown has-been strange
enimvero quod solum parenti casus adjecit, hoc sibi
indeed that only for-the-parent accident added this for-itself
prolem in posterum tanquam a natura conformare.
the-offspring into the-future as-if by nature to-conform

Militem quoque in Anglia vidimus, ex Devoniæ finibus
a-knight also in England we-saw from of-Devon the-bounds
oriundum, cui nomen Erchembaldus: de quo contigit, ut
sprung to-whom the-name Erchembald about whom it-happened that
dum matris in alvo gestaretur patre partum penitus
while of-his-mother in the-womb he-was-carried with-the-father the-offspring wholly
abnegante, et matrem zelotypiæ causa ex sola suspicione
denying and the-mother of-jealousy for-the-sake from mere suspicion
fortiter accusante, puero in lucem prodeunte, sola litem per
strongly accusing with-the-boy into light coming-forth alone the-dispute by
se natura diremit. Fissuram namque, quam ictu lanceæ
herself nature settled the-cleft for which by-the-blow of-a-lance
militari exercitio per medium sub nare superius labrum
in-military exercise through the-middle under the-nose the-upper lip
genitor olim susceperat, laudabili naturæ miraculo eodem in
the-begetter once had-received by-a-laudable of-nature miracle in-the-same in
loco genitura prætendit. Erchembaldi quoque filium vidimus,
place the-offspring displayed of-Erchembald also the-son we-saw
cui nomen Stephanus, eodem indicio patrissantem;
to-whom the-name Stephen by-the-same sign taking-after-his-father
casuali læsione tanquam in naturam jam conversa.
with-the-accidental injury as-if into nature now turned
Item in comite Alberico, Alberici comitis de Ver filio, simile
likewise in earl Aubrey of-Aubrey earl of Vere the-son a-similar
naturæ miraculum vidimus. Cum enim pater ejusdem,
of-nature miracle we-saw when for the-father his
matre jam prægnante, filia scilicet Henrici de
with-the-mother already pregnant the-daughter namely of-Henry of
Essexia, ob ignominiosum patris eventum jam ad
Essex on-account-of the-ignominious of-her-father event already for
divortium modis omnibus elaborasset, partu prodeunte,
divorce by-means all had-labored with-the-birth coming-forth

quem pater in oculo casuali læsione sustinuit, eadem
which the-father in the-eye by-accidental injury bore in-the-same
in parte defectus in filio parentavit.
in part the-defect in the-son took-after-the-parent
Sed forsitan ex rei visæ memoria, quæ per aspectum
but perhaps from of-a-thing seen the-memory which through the-sight
contrahitur et reservatur, hujusmodi proprietas in prolem
is-contracted and is-kept-back of-this-kind a-property into the-offspring
descendit. Sicut de regina legitur, quæ, quoniam Ethyopem
descends as about a-queen is-read who since an-Ethiopian
in thalamo depictum inspicere consueverat, ex inopinato
in the-bedchamber painted to-look-at was-accustomed from the-unexpected
Ethiopem peperit; quam et Quintilianus per picturam
an-Ethiopian bore whom also Quintilian through the-picture
excusavit. Similiter et de ovibus variis contigit, quas
excused likewise also about the-sheep spotted it-happened which
Laban nepoti suo Jacob de grege concessit, per virgarum
Laban to-nephew his Jacob from the-flock granted through of-the-rods
præfixarum variationem multiplicatis.
set-before the-variation multiplied
Nec tantum ex mulieris, verum etiam ex imaginaria viri
nor only from of-the-woman but also from the-imaginary of-the-man
memoria partus interdum informatur. Compertum est enim
memory the-offspring sometimes is-formed found it-is for
de quodam, qui cum forte transeundo hominem inspiceret
about a-certain-man who when by-chance in-passing a-man he-looked-at
se ante et retro continua passione moventem, ad uxorem
himself forward and backward with-continual affliction moving to his-wife
illico accedens, eamque cognoscens, quoniam motionis illius
forthwith approaching and-her knowing because of-motion that

memoria a mente excidere præ admiratione non potuit,
the-memory from his-mind to-fall-away for wonder not could
eadem hora puerum genuit simili passione percussum.
in-the-same hour a-boy bore with-like affliction struck

DINAS EMRYS, SNOWDON, AND COLESHILL

Back at Bangor the party was shown the tomb of Owain, who had died excommunicate for marrying his cousin, and the bishop was told to remove his body. At Dinas Emrys Merlin Ambrosius prophesied before Vortigern; Merlin Silvester, maddened in battle, is another. Owain's grandson Llywelyn, from about twelve, drove his uncles David and Rhodri, born of that marriage, out of nearly all Gwynedd. Eryri could pasture all the herds of Wales; one lake has a wandering island, another one-eyed fish, and an eagle there awaits war. Past Rhuddlan's ebbing spring, St Asaph, the silver mines, and Basingwerk lies Coleshill, where Henry II, trusting men strange to the March, was nearly beaten, and a greyhound guarded its master's body for eight days.

De Cunewe fluvio navigio transcurso, et Dynas Emereis,
about the-Conwy river by-ship crossed and Dinas Emrys
cum notabilibus suis.
with notable-things its
Reversis a Monia Bangor iterum, ostensum est nobis
with-returned from Anglesey at-Bangor again shown was to-us
principis Oenei sepulchrum, qui in presbyterio coram altari,
of-the-prince Owain the-tomb who in the-presbytery before the-altar
cum fratre juniore Cadwaladro, in spelunca duplici jacebant:
with brother younger Cadwaladr in a-vault double lay
quanquam tamen Oeneus, ob publicum cum consobrina
although nevertheless Owain on-account-of public with his-cousin
incestum, a beato martyre Thoma excommunicatus obierit.
incest by blessed martyr Thomas excommunicated died

Injuncto itaque loci illius episcopo ut visa opportunitate,
with-enjoined therefore of-place that on-the-bishop that with-seen opportunity
et occasione captata, corpus ab ecclesia quantocius
and occasion taken the-body from the-church as-quickly-as-possible
ejiceret, per litora maritima, hinc rupibus præruptis,
he-should-cast-out along the-shores of-the-sea on-this-side by-rocks steep
illinc fluctibus æquoreis arctati, versus Cunewe flumen,
on-that-side by-waves of-the-sea confined toward the-Conwy river
marinis undis non impermixtum, iter incunctanter
with-sea waves not unmixed the-journey without-delay
arripuimus. Non procul ab ortu Cunewe in capite
we-took not far from the-source of-the-Conwy on the-head
montis Ereri, quod ex hac parte in boream extenditur,
of-the-mountain of-Eryri which from this side into the-north extends
stat Dynas Emereis, id est, promontorium Ambrosii, ubi
stands Dinas Emrys that is the-promontory of-Ambrosius where
Merlinus prophetizavit, sedente super ripam Vortigerno. Erant
Merlin prophesied with-sitting on the-bank Vortigern there-were
enim Merlini duo; iste qui et Ambrosius dictus est, quia
for Merlins two this-one who also Ambrosius called was because
binomius fuerat, et sub rege Vortigerno prophetizavit, ab
two-named he-had-been and under king Vortigern prophesied by
incubo genitus, et apud Kaermerdyn inventus; unde et ab
an-incubus begotten and at Carmarthen found whence also from
ipso ibidem invento denominata est Kaermerdyn, id est, urbs
him there found named was Caerfyrddin that is the-city
Merlini; alter vero de Albania oriundus, qui et Celidonius
of-Merlin the-other however from Scotland sprung who also Celidonius
dictus est, a Celidonia silva in qua prophetizavit, et Silvester,
called was from the-Caledonian forest in which he-prophesied and Silvester
quia cum inter acies bellicas constitutus monstrum
because when among the-battle-lines warlike set a-monster

horribile nimis in aera suspiciendo prospiceret, dementire
horrible too in the-air by-looking-up he-beheld to-go-mad
cœpit, et ad silvam transfugiendo silvestrem usque ad obitum
he-began and to the-forest by-fleeing a-woodland up-to to his-death
vitam perduxit. Hic autem Merlinus tempore Arthuri fuit, et
life he-led this however Merlin in-the-time of-Arthur was and
longe plenius et apertius quam alter prophetasse perhibetur.
far more-fully and more-openly than the-other to-have-prophesied is-said
Quid autem, mortuo Oeneo, vel etiam in extremis agente, filii
what however with-dead Owain or even in extremities acting the-sons
ejusdem, pravo dominandi ambitu, fraterna non respicientes
of-the-same by-depraved of-ruling ambition fraternal not regarding
fœdera, diebus nostris inter se gesserint, hic prætereo.
the-bonds in-our days among themselves have-done here I-pass-over
Illud autem, quod nostris hic diebus notabile censui,
that however which in-our here days notable I-judged
prætereundum non putavi. Oeneus filius Griphini, princeps
to-be-passed-over not I-thought Owain son of-Gruffydd prince
Norwalliæ, inter multos quos genuit filios tantum unum
of-North-Wales among the-many whom he-begot sons only one
legitimum suscepit, scilicet Ierverdum Troyndun, quod Kambrice
legitimate received namely Iorwerth Drwyndwn which in-Welsh
simus sonat, agnominatum: qui et filium similiter legitimum
snub-nosed sounds surnamed who also a-son likewise legitimate
suscepit Luelinum. Hic in transitu nostro patruis suis David
received Llywelyn he at the-passage our the-uncles his David
et Rotherico, quos de consobrina sua cui nomen Christiana
and Rhodri whom of cousin his to-whom the-name Christiana
Oeneus susceperat, quanquam puer tunc quasi duodennis,
Owain had-received although a-boy then about twelve-years-old
infestare cœpit. Et licet totam Venedotiam, præter terram
to-harass began and though all Gwynedd except the-land

Canani, inter se pro herili portione divisissent; licet etiam
of-Cynan between themselves for lordly portion they-had-divided though also
propter hoc David Anglicano fulciretur auxilio, puta qui
on-account-of this David by-English was-supported help namely who
sororem regis Henrici secundi sibi matrimonio copulaverat,
the-sister of-king Henry second to-himself in-marriage had-joined
ex qua et filium quoque susceperat; tamen intra paucos
from whom also a-son also he-had-received nevertheless within few
postmodum annos, de publico incestu natos, divitiis pariter et
afterward years of public incest born with-riches equally and
divitum auxilio fultos, legitimus iste, terris omnino carens et
of-the-rich with-the-help supported legitimate this-one of-lands wholly lacking and
thesauris, a Venedotia fere tota, divina opitulante vindicta,
treasures from Gwynedd almost whole with-divine assisting vengeance
viriliter ejecit: nihil eisdem nisi ultroneo motu, bonorumque
manfully cast-out nothing to-them except by-voluntary motion and-of-good
virorum consilio, misericorditer et ex pietate relinquens.
men by-the-counsel mercifully and from piety leaving
Argumentum adulterinos et incestuosos Domino displicere.
a-proof that-adulterous and incestuous-people to-the-Lord are-displeasing
De montanis Ereri, cum notabilibus suis.
about the-mountains of-Eryri with notable-things its
Montana vero quæ a Kambris Ereri, ab Anglis vero
the-mountains however which by the-Welsh Eryri by the-English however
Snaudune, id est Nivium montes dicuntur, quæ a terra
Snowdon that is of-Snows the-mountains are-called which from the-land
filiorum Canani paulatim incrementa suscipiunt, et prope
of-the-sons of-Cynan little-by-little increases receive and near
Dugannu in boream se protendunt, contra Moniam
Deganwy into the-north themselves extend opposite Anglesey
vero turribus aereis nimis enormiter usque ad nubes
however with-towers airy too enormously up-to to the-clouds

excrescunt, sub silentio non sunt prætereunda. Tantæ
rise under silence not are to-be-passed-over of-so-great
siquidem et tam immensæ quantitatis esse perhibentur,
indeed and so immense size to-be they-are-said
ut antiquo proverbio dici soleat; sicut Moniam insulam
that by-an-old proverb to-be-said it-is-wont as Anglesey island
hominibus in annona, sic Ereri in pascuis, coactis in
for-men in grain so Eryri in pastures with-gathered into
unum armentis omnibus, toti posse Walliæ sufficere.
one herds all to-the-whole be-able Wales to-suffice
Unde et his pascuis illud Virgilianum adaptari potest;
whence also to-these pastures that Virgilian-line to-be-adapted can

"Et quantum longis carpunt armenta diebus,
"And as-much-as in-long crop the-herds days,
Exigua tantum gelidus ros nocte reponit."
In-a-short so-much the-cold dew in-a-night restores."

In summis autem montium istorum verticibus duo lacus
on the-highest moreover of-mountains these summits two lakes
reperiuntur, sua non indigni admiratione. Alter enim
are-found of-their not unworthy wonder one for
insulam habet erraticam, vi ventorum impellentium ad
an-island has wandering by-the-force of-the-winds driving to
oppositas plerumque lacus partes errabundam. Hic armenta
the-opposite mostly of-the-lake parts roaming here herds
pascentia nonnunquam pastores ad longinquas subito partes
grazing sometimes the-shepherds to distant suddenly parts
translata mirantur.
transferred marvel

Fieri namque potuit ut pars aliqua ripæ olim
to-be-done for could that part some of-the-bank once
avulsa, radicibus salicum aliorumque fruticum naturaliter
torn-off by-the-roots of-willows and-of-other shrubs naturally
insertorum vinculis astricta et colligata, paulatim postea
inserted by-the-bonds bound and tied-together little-by-little afterward
per alluvionem incrementa susceperit. Et quoniam violenta
through alluvion increases received and since by-the-violent
ventorum rapacitate, quæ loco tam arduo fere continua
of-the-winds rapacity which in-a-place so steep almost continuous
reperitur, ad varias creberrime ripas impellitur, firmas
is-found to various very-often banks it-is-driven firm
solo tenus et altas figere radices non permittitur.
to-the-ground down and deep to-fix roots not it-is-permitted
Alter vero miro et inaudito miraculo pollet: quia
the-other however by-a-wonderful and unheard-of miracle prevails because
cum trium generum piscibus abundet, anguillis, turtris, et
while of-three kinds with-fish it-abounds eels trout and
perchiis, omnes in eo pisces monoculi reperiuntur, oculum
perch all in it the-fish one-eyed are-found the-eye
dextrum habentes et sinistro carentes. Si rei tam
right having and the-left lacking if of-a-thing so
novæ tamque stupendæ rationem scrupulosus lector efflagites,
new and-so astounding the-reason a-scrupulous reader you-demand
assignare non præsumo.
to-assign not I-presume
Notandum etiam quod in Albania quoque, duobus in locis,
to-be-noted also that in Scotland also in-two in places
uno ad mare orientale, altero ad occidentale, pisces marini
one by the-sea eastern the-other by the-western fish of-the-sea

qui Mulvelli dicuntur monoculi reperiuntur, dextrum oculum
which mulvelli are-called one-eyed are-found the-right eye
habentes et sinistro carentes.
having and the-left lacking
In eisdem montanis de Ereri aquila fabulosa frequentat;
in the-same mountains of Eryri an-eagle fabulous haunts
quæ qualibet quinta feria lapidi cuidam insidens fatali,
which on-every fifth weekday on-a-stone certain sitting fateful
ut interemptorum cadavere famem satiet, bellum eodem
that of-the-slain with-the-corpse its-hunger it-may-sate a-war on-the-same
die futurum fertur exspectare; lapidemque prædictum, cui
day to-be is-said to-await and-the-stone aforesaid on-which
consuevit insidere, jam prope, rostrum purgando pariter et
it-is-accustomed to-sit now nearly with-its-beak by-cleaning equally and
exacuendo, perforasse. Unde et aquila locum ubi prædam
by-sharpening to-have-pierced whence also the-eagle the-place where prey
invenire debeat scire dicitur, sed non tempus: corvus autem
to-find it-should to-know is-said but not the-time the-raven however
tempus, sed non locum.
the-time but not the-place
De transitu per Dugannu et Rudhelan, sedem quoque
about the-passage through Deganwy and Rhuddlan the-see also
Lanelvensem; de vivo sabulo, et Koleshulle; cum
of-St-Asaph about the-living sand and Coleshill with
notabilibus suis.
notable-things its
Transnavigato deinde Cunewe fluvio, vel potius maris
with-crossed then the-Conwy river or rather of-the-sea
brachio sub Dugannu, monasterio Cisterciensis ordinis
arm below Deganwy with-the-monastery of-the-Cistercian order
super Cunewe ab occidua fluvii parte a dextra relicto,
above the-Conwy on the-western of-the-river side on the-right left

usque Ruthelan, nobile similiter castrum primævi Oenei
up-to Rhuddlan a-noble likewise castle of-the-eldest of-Owain
filii [de consobrina] David super Cloid fluvium, via
son by cousin David above the-Clwyd river with-the-way
duce pervenimus. Ubi et ab ipso, ad instantiam ejusdem
leading we-came where also by him at the-urging of-the-same
magnam, ea nocte decenter exhibiti fuimus.
great on-that night decently entertained we-were
Est fons non procul a Rudhelan in provincia de
there-is a-spring not far from Rhuddlan in the-province of
Tegengel, quem non bis tantum die naturali more
Tegeingl which not twice only in-a-day natural in-the-manner
marino, sed vicissim et crebro, diebus et noctibus, nunc
of-the-sea but alternately and frequently by-days and nights now
undis deficere, nunc exuberare certum est.
in-its-waters to-fail now to-overflow certain it-is
Item refert Trogus Pompeius, quod Gramantum est
likewise relates Trogus Pompeius that of-the-Garamantes there-is
oppidum in quo fons ebullit, qui vicissim nocte dieque
a-town in which a-spring bubbles which alternately by-night and-by-day
friget et fervet.
is-cold and boils
Multis itaque mane ad Christi obsequium allectis,
with-many therefore in-the-morning to of-Christ the-service enticed
ad pauperculam sedis Lanelvensis ecclesiam parum inde
to the-poor-little of-the-see of-St-Asaph church a-little thence
distantem transivimus; ubi et missa ab archipræsule celebrata,
distant we-passed where also with-mass by the-archprelate celebrated

iter incontinenti aggressi sumus; et per divitem venam
the-journey immediately undertaken we-have and through a-rich vein
fructuosumque argenti scrutinium, ubi penitima scrutando
and-fruitful of-silver search where the-inmost-parts by-searching

"Itum est in viscera terræ,"
"Gone was into the-bowels of-the-earth,"

transeuntes, in cellula de Basingeworc pernoctavimus.
passing at the-cell of Basingwerk we-spent-the-night
In crastino vero, longum vivumque per loca sabulum non
on the-morrow however a-long and-living in places sand not
absque formidine permeantes, silvestria de Coleshulle, id
without fear crossing the-woods of Coleshill that
est, Carbonis colle, a dextra reliquimus; ubi Anglorum
is of-Coal the-hill on the-right we-left where of-the-English
rex Henricus secundus, nostris diebus cum primo Walliam
king Henry second in-our days when first Wales
hostiliter intravit, juvenili impetu et inconsulto calore arctum
hostilely he-entered with-youthful impetus and ill-advised heat narrow
illud silvestre penetrare præsumens, cum detrimento suorum
that wood to-penetrate presuming with loss of-his-men
et damno non modico ambiguam bellorum aleam expertus est.
and damage not moderate the-doubtful of-wars die tried has
Ter enim prædictus rex in manu forti Walliam intravit;
three-times for the-aforesaid king in hand strong Wales entered
primo, Norwalliam, prænotato in loco; secundo, Sudwalliam,
first North-Wales the-noted in place second South-Wales
per maritimam de Wlatmorgan et Goher viam, versus
by the-coastal of Glamorgan and Gower road toward
Kaermerdhin et usque Pencadeir, id est, Cathedræ caput,
Carmarthen and up-to Pencader that is of-the-Chair the-head

intrando, et per Elennyth ac Mailennyth usque Radenoram
by-entering and through Elennith and Maelienydd up-to Radnor
revertendo; tertio vero, Powisiam, apud Oswaldestreo.
by-returning third however Powys at Oswestry
His autem expeditionibus cunctis rex ideo minime
in-these however expeditions all the-king therefore least
profecit, quoniam probis patriæ viris, proceribusque
profited because to-upright of-the-country men and-to-the-nobles
provinciæ gnaris et peritis, fidem non habuit; solum in
of-the-province knowing and skilled trust not he-had only in
his viros a Marchia remotos, mores gentis et
these-things men from the-March remote the-manners of-the-people and
modos prorsus ignorantes, consiliarios habens principales.
the-ways wholly ignorant as-counselors having principal
"In qualibet nimirum expeditione, sicut artifici credendum
in any indeed expedition as the-craftsman must-be-believed
in sua facultate, sic horum præcipue standum est arbitrio,
in his skill so of-these especially to-be-stood it-is by-the-judgment
qui circa similia patriæ negotia conversati diutius et
who around like of-the-country affairs having-dealt long and
usitati, mores gentis et modos agnoscunt; quorumque
practiced the-manners of-the-people and ways recognize and-to-whom
magnopere refert ut gens inimica, quacum ex crebris
greatly it-matters that the-people hostile with-which from frequent
belli diutini conflictibus hostilitatem plurimam et odium
of-war long conflicts hostility very-much and hatred
implacabile contraxerunt, eorundem opera vel debilitari
implacable they-have-contracted by-their work either to-be-weakened
possit vel deleri," sicut in Vaticinali Historia declaravimus.
can or to-be-destroyed as in the-Prophetic History we-have-declared

In hac eadem silva de Koleshulle, interfecto juvene quodam
in this same wood of Coleshill with-killed a-youth certain
Kambrensi per exercitum prædicti regis transeuntem,
Welsh by the-army of-the-aforesaid king passing
leporarius ejusdem inventus est per octo fere dies absque
a-greyhound of-his found was for eight almost days without
cibo domini cadaver non deserens, sed illud a canibus,
food of-its-master the-corpse not deserting but it from dogs
lupis, et avibus prorsus indemne fideliter et admiranda in
wolves and birds wholly unharmed faithfully and with-wonderful in
bruto dilectione conservans.
a-brute love preserving
Quis itaque patri filius, quisve Eurialo Nisus, quis
what therefore to-a-father son or-what to-Euryalus Nisus what
Tydeo Polinices, quis Piladi Horestes, hunc dilectionis
to-Tydeus Polynices what to-Pylades Orestes this of-love
affectum exhiberet? Ob hujus igitur eventus gratiam,
affection would-show on-account-of of-this therefore event the-thanks
leporariique favorem, diutina fere jam fame confecti, ab
and-of-the-greyhound the-favor by-long almost now hunger exhausted by
Anglorum populo, Kambriæ gentibus inimicissimo, corpus
of-the-English the-people of-Wales to-the-peoples most-hostile the-body
jam fœtidum debito humanitatis officio est tumulatum.
now fetid with-the-due of-humanity office was entombed

The party crossed the Dee, which divides Wales from England and foretells by shifting its fords which nation will prevail. Chester claims the Emperor Henry and King Harold as hermits who died there, and shows deer cheeses, a cow sired by a stag, and a handless woman who sewed with her feet. At Oswestry Gruffydd son of Madog renounced his cousin-wife, and a youth who refused the cross until he had avenged his lord saw his lance break and took it. When Henry II's army burned Welsh churches, Owain urged greater reverence for churches, and a flood drove the king back. At Shrewsbury Owain of Cyfeiliog, who once mocked the king by eating an alms loaf, was excommunicated. Three princes are praised for justice.

De fluvio Deiæ transcurso, et Cestria, cum notabilibus suis.
about the-river Dee crossed and Chester with notable-things its
Transvadato tandem Deiæ fluvio sub Cestria, quem Kambri
with-forded at-length the-Dee river below Chester which the-Welsh
Deverdoeu dicunt, feria tertia ante Pascha, die
Dyfrdwy call on-the-weekday third before Easter on-the-day
videlicet absolutionis, Cestriam venimus. Sicut enim Waia
namely of-absolution to-Chester we-came as for the-Wye
ab austro sub castro Strigulensi, sic Deia a borea sub
on the-south below the-castle of-Striguil so the-Dee on the-north below
Cestrensi castro Gualliam ab Anglia separat et secernit.
Chester's castle Wales from England separates and divides
Item, ut asserunt accolæ, aqua ista singulis mensibus
likewise as assert the-inhabitants water this in-the-several months
vada permutat; et utri finium, Angliæ scilicet an
its-fords changes and on-which of-the-bounds of-England namely or
Kambriæ, alveo relicto magis incubuerit, gentem illam
of-Wales with-the-channel left more it-shall-have-leaned the-people that

eo in anno succumbere, et alteram prævalere, certissimum
in-that in year to-succumb and the-other to-prevail a-most-certain
prognosticum habent.
prognostic they-hold
Fluvius iste de lacu quodam cui nomen Pemmelesmere
river this from a-lake certain to-which the-name Pemblemere
originem ducit; et cum salmonibus fluvius abundet, nunquam
its-origin draws and while with-salmon the-river abounds never
tamen in lacu piscis hujusmodi reperitur. Hoc etiam
however in the-lake fish of-this-kind is-found this also
de eodem fluvio notabile reperies, quod pluviis nunquam,
about the-same river notable you-will-find that by-rains never
frequenter autem et fere semper ventis exuberat.
often however and almost always by-winds it-overflows
Imperatorem itaque Romanum Henricum se jactat hæc urbs
the-emperor therefore Roman Henry itself boasts this city
habere sepultum. Qui, quoniam suis diebus tam patrem
to-have buried who since in-his days as-much his-father
carnalem, quam etiam spiritualem, summum pontificem scilicet
carnal as also spiritual the-supreme pontiff namely
Paschalem incarceraverat, demum pœnitentia ductus, et
Paschal had-imprisoned at-last by-penitence led and
ultroneus exul effectus, sanctam in eremo finibus istis vitam,
a-voluntary exile made a-holy in the-hermitage in-bounds these life
ut fertur, consummavit. Similiter et Haroldum regem se
as is-said consummated likewise also Harold the-king themselves
habere testantur: qui, ultimus de gente Saxonica rex in Anglia,
to-have they-testify who the-last of the-people Saxon king in England
publico apud Hastinges bello cum Normannis congrediens,
in-public at Hastings battle with the-Normans engaging
pœnas succumbendo perjurii luit; multisque, ut aiunt,
the-penalty by-succumbing of-perjury paid and-with-many as they-say

confossus vulneribus, oculoque sinistro sagitta perdito ac
pierced wounds and-with-eye left by-an-arrow lost and
perforato, ad partes istas victus evasit: ubi sancta conversatione
pierced to parts these vanquished escaped where in-holy converse
cujusdam urbis ecclesiæ jugis et assiduus contemplator
of-a-certain of-the-city to-the-church a-constant and assiduous contemplative
adhærens, vitamque tanquam anachoriticam ducens, viæ
clinging and-life as-if an-anchorite's leading of-the-way
ac vitæ cursum, ut creditur, feliciter consummavit. Ex
and of-life the-course as is-believed happily consummated from
utriusque, ut fertur, ultimi articuli confessione, veritas antea
of-each as is-said of-the-last moment by-the-confession the-truth before
non comperta demum prodiit publicata.
not found at-last came-forth published
Vidimus hic quod in oculis nostris novum apparuit, caseos
we-saw here what to eyes our new appeared cheeses
scilicet cervinos. Comitissa namque, et comitis mater,
namely of-deer the-countess for and of-the-earl the-mother
cervas habens domesticas, ex earundem lacte coagulato tres
does having domestic from of-the-same milk curdled three
caseos [modicos] expressos et fiscella formatos archiepiscopo
cheeses small pressed and in-a-basket formed to-the-archbishop
præsentavit.
presented
Eisdem quoque finibus, his nostris diebus, visa est vacca
in-the-same also bounds in-these our days seen was a-cow
cervina. "Ad vaccam enim cervus accesserat; unde et vacca
deer-like to a-cow for a-stag had-approached whence also a-cow
cervina processit. Parte enim anteriore tota usque ad inguina
deer-like came-forth in-the-part for front whole up-to to the-groin
bos erat, coxas subinde cum cauda, et tibias, et pedes,
an-ox it-was the-haunches thereafter with the-tail and the-legs and the-feet

expresse cum pilositate et colore cervinos habens. Sed quia
expressly with hairiness and color of-a-deer having but because
plus pecoris quam feræ præferebat, inter armenta resedit."
more of-cattle than of-a-wild-beast it-displayed among the-herds it-remained
Contigit eisdem in partibus, nostris quoque temporibus,
it-happened in-the-same in parts our also in-times
canem, ex simia prægnantem, catulos tandem produxisse,
a-bitch by an-ape pregnant whelps at-length to-have-produced
parte anteriore tota simiam præferentes, in canem vero
in-the-part front whole an-ape displaying into a-dog however
versus posteriora descendentes. Quos cum aulæ militaris
toward the-hinder-parts descending which when of-the-hall military
custos rusticus intueretur, prodigiorum novitate stupescens,
the-keeper a-rustic beheld of-the-prodigies at-the-novelty astounded
et tam deformes biformis naturæ formas abhorrens, baculo
and so misshapen of-double nature forms abhorring with-the-staff
quem manu gestabat, non absque damno proprio, et
which in-his-hand he-carried not without loss his-own and
domini, re comperta, indignatione quamplurima,
of-his-lord with-the-thing discovered indignation very-great
cunctos statim interemit.
all at-once he-killed
Visa est et in urbe Cestrensi nostris diebus mulier manca,
seen was also in the-city of-Chester in-our days a-woman maimed
manibusque carens a nativitate; cui tamen contra defectum
and-in-hands lacking from birth to-whom however against defect
istum tale natura remedium dederat, ut pedes tam flexibiles,
this such nature a-remedy had-given that feet so flexible
tamque delicaciter articulatos haberet, quod articulorum
and-so delicately jointed she-had that of-the-joints
proceritate pariter et flexibilitate, non minus subtiliter quam
by-the-length equally and the-flexibility not less finely than

aliæ mulieres acu suere consueverit. Et quicquid
other women with-a-needle to-sew she-was-accustomed and whatever
filo ac forfice manibus fieri solet, citra defectum
with-thread and scissors by-hands to-be-done is-wont without defect
omnem, cum intuentium admiratione pedibus ista compleret.
any with of-the-onlookers wonder with-her-feet she completed
De transitu per Album monasterium et Oswaldestreo;
about the-passage through White minster and Oswestry
Powisiam quoque et Slopesburiam; cum notabilibus suis.
Powys also and Shrewsbury with notable-things its
Hic itaque Paschali festo debita solemnitate completo,
here therefore with-the-Easter feast with-due solemnity completed
multis quoque ad archiepiscopi monita crucesignatis, versus
with-many also at of-the-archbishop the-warnings signed-with-the-cross toward
Album monasterium iter aggressi sumus: et inde versus
White minster the-journey undertaken we-have and thence toward
Oswaldestreo: ubi, tanquam in ipsa regionis Powisiensis ora,
Oswestry where as-if on the-very of-the-region of-Powys edge
occurrerunt nobis Powisiæ principes, Griphinus Madoci filius,
met us of-Powys the-princes Gruffydd of-Madog son
Elisset, et alii, cum populo terræ suæ. Ubi nonnullis ad crucem
Elise and others with the-people of-land their where with-some to the-cross
allectis, — ab episcopo namque loci illius Reynerio multitudo
enticed by the-bishop for of-place that Reiner a-multitude
fuerat ante signata, — a Griphino quoque terræ illius principe
had-been before signed by Gruffydd also of-land that prince
consobrina sua, Angharat scilicet Oenei principis filia, quam,
with-cousin his Angharad namely of-Owain prince daughter whom
publico gentis illius vitio, diu pro uxore tenuerat, coram
by-the-public of-people that vice long for wife he-had-held before
archipræsule palam abjurata, apud Oswaldestroe, id est, Oswaldi
the-archprelate openly abjured at Oswestry that is of-Oswald

arborem, pernoctavimus; a Guillelmo Alani filio, juvene nobili
the-tree we-spent-the-night by William of-Alan son a-youth noble
ac liberali, ad importunam ejusdem instantiam, Anglicanæ
and liberal at the-importunate his insistence of-English
sumptuositatis more splendide nimis et laute procurati.
sumptuousness in-the-manner splendidly too and lavishly provided
Acciderat autem his in partibus paulo ante, Reinerio
it-had-happened moreover in-these in parts a-little before with-Reiner
episcopo crucem prædicante, juvenem quemdam pervalidum,
bishop the-cross preaching a-youth certain very-strong
cum a sociis crucesignatis ad ejusdem signi susceptionem
when by companions signed-with-the-cross to of-the-same sign the-taking
cum instantia magna verbis suasoriis invitaretur, demum
with insistence great with-words persuasive he-was-invited at-last
respondisse; "Priusquam," inquit, "domini mei mortem
to-have-answered before he-says of-lord my the-death
hac lancea quam manu gesto vindicavero, monitis
with-this lance which in-hand I-carry I-shall-have-avenged to-the-warnings
non acquiescam;" Oeneum significans Madoci filium, virum
not I-shall-assent Owain meaning of-Madog son a-man
egregium, ab Oeneo de Keveiliauc consobrino suo dolose
excellent by Owain of Cyfeiliog cousin his treacherously
nuper et scelerose peremptum. Et inter loquendum, cum
lately and wickedly slain and in speaking when
ira vindice defervens lanceam fortiter excuteret, ipsa
with-anger avenging boiling the-lance strongly he-shook it
forte, ex utraque manus excutientis parte confracta, statim
by-chance on each of-the-hand of-the-shaker side broken at-once
in terram decidit; tantum trunculo quem manu claudebat
to the-ground fell only with-the-stump which in-his-hand he-clasped
ei remanente. Quo prognostico perterritus plurimum et
to-him remaining by-which omen terrified very-much and

consternatus, tanquam certissimo crucis suscipiendæ signo
dismayed as-if by-a-most-certain of-the-cross to-be-taken sign
provocatus, crucem illico sponte suscepit.
provoked the-cross forthwith of-his-own-accord took
In hac tertia Gualliæ portione, quæ Powisia dicitur, sunt equitia
in this third of-Wales portion which Powys is-called are studs
peroptima; et equi emissarii laudatissimi, de Hispaniensium
most-excellent and horses stallions most-praised from of-Spanish
equorum generositate, quos olim comes Slopesburiæ Robertus de
horses the-nobility which once the-earl of-Shrewsbury Robert of
Beleme in fines istos adduci curaverat, originaliter propagati.
Bellême into bounds these to-be-brought had-caused originally propagated
Unde et qui hinc exeunt equi, cum nobili formæ pictura,
whence also which hence go-out horses with noble of-form depicting
ipsa protrahente natura, tam membrosa sui majestate, quam
the-very drawing nature as-much by-well-limbed its majesty as
incomparabili velocitate, valde commendabiles reperiuntur.
by-incomparable speed very commendable are-found
Hic Anglorum rex Henricus secundus, cum expeditione,
here of-the-English king Henry second with an-expedition
quanquam inutili, sumptuosa tamen et nobili, nostris
although useless costly nevertheless and noble in-our
temporibus Powisiam intravit. Ubi demembratis solum
times Powys entered where with-mutilated only
obsidibus, quos antea susceperat, subita et inopinata
the-hostages whom before he-had-received by-a-sudden and unexpected
pluvialium aquarum inundatione frustra reverti compulsus
of-rainy waters flood in-vain to-return compelled
est. Die namque præcedente Anglicani exercitus satrapæ
was on-the-day for preceding of-the-English army the-satraps
Walensium ecclesias aliquot, cum villis et cœmeteriis, igne
of-the-Welsh churches some with townships and cemeteries with-fire

apposito combusserunt. Unde et Oenei magni filii, cum
applied burned whence also of-Owain the-great the-sons with
expedita exercitus juventute, patrem aliosque principes suos
the-unencumbered of-the-army youth father and-other princes their
super hoc acriter convenerunt, dicentes et asserentes se
about this sharply addressed saying and asserting themselves
Anglorum ecclesiis de cetero nullatenus deferre velle. Cumque
of-the-English to-the-churches for the-rest in-no-way to-defer to-wish and-when
totus propemodum populus in hoc communiter assentiret,
the-whole nearly people in this commonly agreed
solus Oeneus, ut erat vir in gente sua moderantiæ magnæ
alone Owain as he-was a-man in people his of-moderation great
et sapientiæ, sedato tumultu, demum in hujusmodi verba
and wisdom with-quieted tumult at-last into of-this-kind words
prorupit; "Mea quidem in hanc sententiam non concordat
broke-out my indeed with this view not agrees
opinio; gratulari namque potius ob hoc et gaudere
opinion to-rejoice for rather on-account-of this and to-be-glad
debemus, quia cum Anglis, nisi divino fulciamur auxilio,
we-ought because with the-English unless by-divine we-are-supported help
longe impares viribus sumus, ipsi in hoc facto Deos quoque,
far unequal in-strength we-are they in this deed the-Gods also
qui et se et nos potenter vindicare prævalent, inimicos
who both themselves and us powerfully to-avenge prevail as-enemies
constituere. Proinde et devote Domino compromittamus, nos
have-set-up therefore also devoutly to-the-Lord let-us-promise ourselves
ecclesiis amodo locisque sacris majorem solito reverentiam
to-the-churches henceforth and-to-places holy greater than-usual reverence
exhibituros et honorem." Quo facto, præscriptam nocte
about-to-show and honor which done the-aforesaid on-the-night
sequente divinitus emissam sensit Anglorum exercitus ultionem.
following divinely sent felt of-the-English the-army vengeance

Progressi sumus inde versus Slopesburiam, a Sabrinæ fluvio
advanced we-have thence toward Shrewsbury by of-the-Severn the-river
complexam: ubi et diebus aliquot recreandi respirandique
embraced where also for-days some of-refreshing and-of-breathing
gratia perendinavimus. Et tam ad archiepiscopi monita,
for-the-sake we-stayed and as-much at of-the-archbishop the-warnings
quam gratiosos quoque archidiaconi Menevensis sermones,
as the-gracious also of-the-archdeacon of-St-Davids sermons
ad crucis obsequia multos alleximus. Oeneum quoque de
to of-the-cross the-services many we-enticed Owain also of
Keveiliauc, quia solus inter Gualliæ principes archipræsuli
Cyfeiliog because alone among of-Wales the-princes the-archprelate
cum populo suo non occurrerat, excommunicavimus.
with people his not had-met we-excommunicated
Oeneus iste, præ aliis Kambriæ principibus, et linguæ dicacis
Owain this beyond other of-Wales princes both of-tongue witty
extiterat, et in terræ suæ moderamine ingenii perspicacis. Hic
had-been and in of-land his the-government of-genius perceptive he
cum Anglorum rege Henrico secundo, quoniam primatibus
with of-the-English king Henry second since to-the-chief
gentis suæ viris semper fere contrarius esse, regique
of-people his men always almost contrary to-be and-to-the-king
fidelius adhærere videbatur, familiaritatem contraxerat
more-faithfully to-adhere he-seemed a-familiarity had-contracted
plurimam. Unde et aliquando cum rege apud Slopesburiam
very-great whence also once with the-king at Shrewsbury
in mensa sedens, cum ei de panibus propriis unum,
at table sitting when to-him of loaves his-own one
in honoris, ut assolet, et amoris signum rex misisset,
in of-honor as it-is-wont and of-love sign the-king had-sent
ipse statim in regio conspectu elemosynaria panem in
he at-once in royal the-sight like-an-almoner the-loaf into

frusta concidit; et elemosynarum more primo remotius
pieces cut and of-alms in-the-manner first further-off
exposita, deinde singulatim retracta, comedit universa. Cujus
set-out then one-by-one drawn-back ate all of-which
rei rationem cum rex requisisset, respondens Oeneus
thing the-reason when the-king had-asked answering Owain
sub risus modici simulatione; "Domino," inquit, "meo
under of-a-smile slight the-pretense to-the-lord he-says my
morem in hoc gero:" subtiliter et acute in regem,
the-custom in this I-follow subtly and sharply against the-king
qui ecclesiasticos honores vacantes diutius in manu tenere
who ecclesiastical honors vacant long in hand to-hold
consueverat, ambitus et avaritiæ notam intorquens.
was-accustomed of-ambition and of-avarice the-mark twisting
Notandum hic quoque, quia tres viri tantum nostris diebus,
to-be-noted here also that three men only in-our days
in tribus Gualliæ partibus, justitia, prudentia, principalisque
in three of-Wales parts by-justice prudence and-princely
modestia regiminis emicuere; Oeneus Griphini filii Canani
moderation of-rule shone-forth Owain of-Gruffydd son of-Cynan
filius, in Venedotia; Meredutius nepos ejusdem, filius
son in Gwynedd Maredudd nephew of-the-same son
Griphini, quem fata festina surripuere, in Sudwallia; Oeneus
of-Gruffydd whom the-fates hasty snatched-away in South-Wales Owain
iste de Keveiliauc, in Powisia. Duo vero largitatis eximiæ
this of Cyfeiliog in Powys two however of-generosity exceptional
prærogativa enituere; Kadwaladrus filius Griphini in Venedotia,
by-the-prerogative shone Cadwaladr son of-Gruffydd in Gwynedd
et Griphinus de Bromfeld, filius Madoci, in Powisia. Resus
and Gruffydd of Bromfield son of-Madog in Powys Rhys
autem Griphini filius, in Sudwallia, liberalitate et animositate
however of-Gruffydd son in South-Wales for-liberality and spirit

laudem meruit. In Venedotia vero David Oenei filius, et in
praise deserved in Gwynedd however David of-Owain son and in
Sudwallia, finibus de Morgannoc, Hoelus filius Ierverth de
South-Wales in-the-bounds of Morgannwg Hywel son of-Iorwerth of
urbe Legionum, æqua se inter Kambros et Anglos
the-city of-the-Legions with-equal themselves between the-Welsh and the-English
trutina librantes, fidem integram et opinionem servaverunt.
balance weighing faith whole and reputation preserved

WENLOCK, HEREFORD, AND BALDWIN

On the steep road to Wenlock called Bad Street a Jew once joked that a land whose archdeacon was Sin, whose dean was Devil, and whose archdeaconry ran from Bad Street to Bad Pass was perilous. Through Bromfield, Ludlow, and Leominster the party returned to Hereford, about three thousand having taken the cross, but the emperor's road, the kings' quarrels, and the king of Sicily's death delayed the crusade. Baldwin was dark, modest, and abstinent, but so lenient that he seemed a better monk than abbot, abbot than bishop, and bishop than archbishop, as Pope Urban's greeting implied. He preached the cross, sailed to Acre, and died there strengthening the army.

De transitu per Gueneloc et Bromfeld, castellum de
about the-passage through Wenlock and Bromfield the-castle of
Ludelawe, et Leonis monasterium, usque Herefordiam.
Ludlow and of-Leo the-minster up-to Hereford
Profecti sumus inde versus Gueneloch, per arctam viam
set-out we-have thence toward Wenlock by a-narrow road
et præruptam, quam Malam plateam vocant. Hic autem
and steep which the-Bad street they-call here moreover
contigit nostris diebus, Judæo quodam cum archidiacono
it-happened in-our days with-a-Jew certain with the-archdeacon
loci ejusdem, cui cognomen Peccatum, et decano cui
of-place same to-whom the-surname Sin and the-dean to-whom

agnomen Diabolus, versus Slopesburiam iter agente, cum
the-surname Devil toward Shrewsbury the-journey making when
archidiacono forte referente audiret archidiaconatum suum ab
with-the-archdeacon by-chance relating he-heard archdeaconry his from
hoc loco qui Mala platea dicitur incipere, et usque ad Malum
this place which the-Bad street is-called to-begin and up-to to the-Bad
passum versus Cestriam durare, considerans et colligens quoque
pass toward Chester to-last considering and gathering also
tam archidiaconi cognomen quam et decani agnomen,
as-much of-the-archdeacon the-surname as also of-the-dean the-surname
lepide satis et facete subjecit; "Mirum," inquit, "si ab hac
wittily enough and facetiously added strange he-says if from this
unquam patria me mea sors reducat incolumem, cujus quippe
ever country me my lot bring-back safe of-which indeed
Peccatum archidiaconus, Diabolus decanus, archidiaconatus
Sin the-archdeacon Devil the-dean of-the-archdeaconry
vero Mala platea introitus, et Malus passus exitus."
however the-Bad street the-entrance and the-Bad pass the-exit
Transivimus autem a Gueneloch per cellulam de Brumfeld,
we-passed moreover from Wenlock through the-cell of Bromfield
per nobile castrum de Ludlawe, per Leonis monasterium,
by the-noble castle of Ludlow through of-Leo the-minster
usque Herefordiam; Mailenyth et Elvail a dextra relictis; a
up-to Hereford with-Maelienydd and Elfael on the-right left from
puncto quo per Gualliam laboriosum hoc iter arripuimus,
the-point at-which through Wales laborious this journey we-took
tanquam in circino circueundo, ad punctum denuo jam reversi.
as-if in a-compass by-going-around to the-point again now returned
In hujus itaque legationis longo laudabilique labore, circiter
in of-this therefore legation the-long and-laudable labor about
tria virorum millia crucis signaculo sunt insignita, lanceis
three of-men thousand of-the-cross with-the-sign were marked with-lances

et sagittis expeditissima, martiisque negotiis exercitatissima,
and arrows most-ready and-in-martial affairs most-practiced
solam cum hostibus fidei congrediendi moram communiter
only with the-enemies of-the-faith of-engaging the-delay commonly
accusantia; fructuose quidem Christi obsequiis ac feliciter
accusing fruitfully indeed of-Christ to-the-services and happily
obligata, si salutiferæ crucis expeditio tam expedite fuisset,
bound if of-the-saving cross the-expedition as expeditiously had-been
tantaque maturatione profecta, quanta fuerat tam
and-with-so-great readiness set-out as it-had-been as-much
diligentia quam devotione collecta.
with-diligence as devotion gathered
Porro, occulto Dei judicio sed nunquam injusto, imperatori
moreover by-hidden of-God judgment but never unjust to-the-emperor
Romano viæ, regibusque nostris discordiæ data sunt
Roman of-the-way and-to-kings our of-discord given were
impedimenta; regi Siculo, qui præ cunctis terræ regibus
hindrances to-the-king Sicilian who beyond all of-the-earth kings
terram sacram annonis et alimentis in tantæ desolationis
the-land holy with-grain and provisions in of-so-great desolation
articulo sustentabat, mors inopinata et intempestiva; et mortis
the-crisis sustained death unexpected and untimely and of-death
sequela, [principum] nostrorum gravis ob regni
in-the-sequel of-princes our heavy on-account-of of-the-kingdom
jura decertatio, et publicæ stratæ disturbatio; gravissima
the-rights a-contest and of-the-public road a-disturbance most-grievous
fidelium populi, transmarinis interea partibus fame et
of-the-faithful of-the-people in-overseas meanwhile parts by-famine and
inedia miserabiliter afflicti, medios inter hostes expectatio.
want wretchedly afflicted in-the-midst among the-enemies the-waiting

Verumtamen, ut intellectum forte præbeat vexatio, ut aurum
nevertheless that understanding perhaps may-furnish vexation that gold
igne probetur, et virtus in infirmitate firmetur, hæc
by-fire may-be-tested and strength in weakness be-strengthened these-things
accidere permittuntur. "Adversitas" quippe, Gregorio testante,
to-happen are-permitted adversity indeed with-Gregory witnessing
"quæ bonis votis objicitur, probatio virtutis est, non judicium
which to-good wishes is-opposed a-test of-virtue is not a-judgment
reprobationis. Quis enim nesciat quam prosperum fuit quod
of-reprobation who for does-not-know how prosperous was that
Paulus ad Italias vergebat? Et tamen vehemens naufragium
Paul to the-Italies tended and nevertheless a-vehement shipwreck
pertulit. Sed navis cordis in maris fluctibus integra stetit."
he-suffered but the-ship of-his-heart in of-the-sea the-waves whole stood
Descriptio Cantuariensis archiepiscopi Baldewini.
a-description of-Canterbury archbishop Baldwin
Ejus autem, cujus legationis insignia, et quasi peregrinationis
of-him however of-whose legation the-insignia and as-if of-the-pilgrimage
sanctæ præludia, succincta brevitate prælibavimus, tam
holy preludes with-concise brevity we-have-touched-on as-much
interioris hominis quam exterioris proprietatem exprimere,
of-the-inner man as of-the-outer the-property to-express
præter rem ne putetur.
beside the-point not let-it-be-thought
Erat igitur vir fuscus, vultu simplici ac venusto, statura
he-was therefore a-man dark with-face simple and comely in-stature
modica, pro corporis captu habitudine bona, ad tenuitatem
moderate for of-body the-capacity in-condition good to thinness
tamen quam ad corpulentiam magis accommoda. Erat enim
however than to corpulence more suited he-was for
vir modestus ac sobrius, vir abstinentiæ magnæ, et
a-man modest and sober a-man of-abstinence great and

continentiæ tantæ ut vix unquam in ipsum quicquam
continence so-great that scarcely ever against him anything
sinistrum ausa fuisset fama præsumere, vir sermone parcus,
sinister dared had rumor to-presume a-man in-speech sparing
iracundia serus, cunctis propemodum naturæ motibus [vel
in-anger slow in-all nearly of-nature motions or
dotibus] temperatus. Erat quippe "Velox ad audiendum, tardus
endowments tempered he-was indeed swift to hearing slow
ad loquendum, et tardus ad iram." Literarum studiis a
to speaking and slow to anger of-letters in-the-studies from
puerilibus annis affatim imbutus, et jugum Domini ab
boyish years abundantly steeped and the-yoke of-the-Lord from
adolescentia portans, moribus et vita eminens in populo
youth bearing in-character and in-life eminent among the-people
lucerna fuit. Unde et archilevitæ quem canonice adeptus
a-lamp he-was whence also of-the-archdeaconry which canonically obtained
fuerat cedens honorem et sponte deserens, mundique
he-had yielding the-honor and of-his-own-accord deserting and-of-the-world
pompas alta mente despiciens, Cisterciensis ordinis habitum
the-pomps with-lofty mind despising of-the-Cistercian order the-habit
sancta cum devotione suscepit. Et quoniam moribus olim
holy with devotion took and since in-character once
plusquam monachus extiterat, infra anni terminum abbas
more-than a-monk he-had-been within of-a-year the-term abbot
effectus; et intra paucos postmodum annos in episcopum,
made and within few afterward years to bishop
deinde in archiepiscopum est sublimatus; tanquam super pauca
then to archbishop was raised as-if over few-things
fidelis inventus, et ob hoc supra multa constitutus.
faithful found and on-account-of this over many-things set

Ceterum quoniam, ut ait Tullius, “Nihil simplici in genere
but since as says Tully nothing simple in kind
omni ex parte perfectum natura expolivit,” innatæ benignitatis
in-every from part perfect nature has-polished of-inborn kindness
mansuetudinem, quam privatus exercuerat, in potestate
the-mildness which as-a-private-man he-had-exercised in power
non exuens, tanquam baculo sustentans, et non virga
not putting-off as-if with-the-staff supporting and not with-the-rod
castigans, tanquam ubera dans matris, et non verbera
chastising as-if the-breasts giving of-a-mother and not the-blows
patris, remissionis in publico gravi cum scandalo notam
of-a-father of-remissness in public with-grave with scandal the-mark
incurrit. Adeo nempe lenitatis in ipso tepor ac torpor
he-incurred so-much indeed of-leniency in him the-tepidity and torpor
pastoralem penitus rigorem absumpsit, ut melior monachus
the-pastoral wholly rigor consumed that better a-monk
simplex quam abbas, melior abbas quam episcopus, melior
simple than abbot better abbot than bishop better
episcopus quam archiepiscopus fuisse videretur. Unde et
bishop than archbishop to-have-been he-seemed whence also
eidem Urbanus papa quandoque scripsisse recolitur in hunc
to-him Urban pope once to-have-written is-recalled in this
modum; “Urbanus episcopus, servus servorum Dei, monacho
manner Urban bishop servant of-the-servants of-God to-monk
ferventissimo, abbati calido, episcopo tepido, archiepiscopo
most-fervent abbot warm bishop lukewarm archbishop
remisso, salutem, etc.” Sane, quoniam in Anglicanis finibus
remiss greeting etc truly since in English bounds
inter regnum et sacerdotium frequens esse solet altercatio
between the-kingdom and the-priesthood frequent to-be is-wont a-quarrel
et fere continua, insulari tyrannide semper ingruente,
and almost continuous with-insular tyranny always pressing

tanto notabilior lenitatis hujus eminet excessus, quanto
by-so-much more-notable of-leniency this stands-out the-excess by-as-much
beatum Thomam ejusdem sedis antistitem, pro ecclesiæ
blessed Thomas of-the-same see prelate for of-the-church
libertate usque ad martyrii palmam dimicando, nostris diebus
the-liberty up-to to of-martyrdom the-palm by-fighting in-our days
constat gloriosius triumphasse. Quod itaque martyr insignis,
it-is-agreed more-gloriously to-have-triumphed what therefore the-martyr distinguished
pravas regni consuetudines in ecclesiam Dei pullulantes
the-depraved of-the-kingdom customs in the-church of-God sprouting
extirpando, multis prius allegatis, demum caput allegando
by-extirpating with-many-things first alleged at-last his-head by-alleging
feliciter evicit, hoc Ille, cujus occulta quidem judicia sed
happily won this He whose hidden indeed judgments but
nunquam injusta, per martyris ejusdem primi successoris
never unjust through of-the-martyr same of-the-first successor
remissam liberalitatem, ne dicam ignaviam, recidivo jam
the-remiss liberality not to-say sloth by-a-relapsing now
morbo, redivivaque malitia, quod non absque dolore dicendum
disease and-reviving malice what not without grief to-be-said
vel audiendum, in ecclesiæ suæ damnum enorme, perditum
or to-be-heard to of-the-church his loss enormous lost
ire permisit. Quod utique, secundi istius tempore, contra
to-go permitted which certainly of-the-second of-this in-the-time against
obstinatam nequitiam non lenitate, non patientia dissimulandum,
obstinate wickedness not by-leniency not by-patience to-be-dissembled
sed rigore potius et asperitate, usque ad sanguinis etiam
but by-rigor rather and harshness up-to to of-blood even
si opus fuisset effusionem, denuo fuerat recuperandum.
if need had-been the-shedding anew had-been to-be-recovered

Unde, cum primus martyris ille successor morbo
whence when the-first of-the-martyr that successor with-the-disease
decumberet quo paulo post occubuit, noctu in somno
lay-sick of-which a-little after he-died at-night in sleep
vocem hanc terribilem cœlitus emissam audivit; "Dissipasti
a-voice this terrible from-heaven sent heard you-have-scattered
ecclesiam meam, et ego eradicabo te de terra." Sed
church my and I will-uproot you from the-land but
utinam de terra morientium, et non viventium, de
would-that from the-land of-the-dying and not of-the-living from
terra quam terimus, non terra quam quærimus, de terra
the-land which we-tread not the-land which we-seek from the-land
laboris et sudoris, non de terra dulcoris et decoris.
of-labor and of-sweat not from the-land of-sweetness and of-beauty
Occulta sunt ergo judicia Dei, sed nunquam injusta.
hidden are therefore the-judgments of-God but never unjust
Si talis enim martyri pontifex primo loco vel etiam
if such for to-the-martyr a-pontiff in-the-first place or even
secundo successisset, qui strenue defenderet quod sub
in-the-second had-succeeded who vigorously would-have-defended what under
tanto discrimine, capitisque periculo, sed felici commercio,
so-great hazard and-of-his-head danger but by-happy exchange
vir sanctus evicit et viriliter obtinuit, pro carnali corona
the-man holy won and manfully obtained for a-carnal crown
corrupta in terris incorruptibilem et immarcescibilem sumens
corrupt on earth an-incorruptible and unfading taking
in cœlis, Angliæ clerus, miserrime suppeditatus iterum
in the-heavens of-England the-clergy most-wretchedly trodden-down again
et oppressus, continua debitaque libertate gauderet: quam
and oppressed in-continual and-due liberty would-rejoice which
quidem, nisi per sanguinis iterum pastoralis effusionem,
indeed unless through of-blood again pastoral the-shedding

vix ullo poterit tempore, tyrannica præcipue regnante
scarcely at-any will-it-be-able time with-tyrannical especially reigning
prosapia, recuperare. Fructum itaque grandem hac spontanea
stock recover fruit therefore great by-this voluntary
quasi jactura sibi divina providentia prævidit, ut creditur, in
as-if loss for-itself divine providence foresaw as is-believed into
posterum eliciendum; quatinus ex pontificali denuo constantia,
the-future to-be-drawn-out so-that from pontifical anew constancy
et consecutiva demum martyrii gloria, et fidelium devotio,
and consequent at-last of-martyrdom glory both of-the-faithful the-devotion
jam quasi languescens et sopita, per miracula denuo
now as-if languishing and lulled-asleep through miracles anew
resuscitetur; et fidei fervor, qui jam refrixerat, ut igne
may-be-revived and of-faith the-fervor which now had-grown-cold that by-the-fire
caritatis reflammescat, signis recrebrescentibus et prodigiis
of-charity it-may-blaze-again with-signs growing-frequent-again and prodigies
tanquam follibus quibusdam et ventilabris exagitetur.
as-if with-bellows certain and fans it-may-be-stirred
Inter primos tamen martyris successor hic secundus, audita
among the-first however of-the-martyr successor this second with-heard
Salvatoris et salutiferæ crucis injuria, nostris proh dolor!
of-the-Savior and of-the-saving cross the-injury in-our ah sorrow
diebus per Saladinum irrogata, crucesignatus, in ejusdem
days by Saladin inflicted signed-with-the-cross in his
obsequiis, tam remotis finibus quam propinquis, prædicationis
services as-much in-remote bounds as near of-preaching
officium viriliter assumpsit. Et postmodum iter arripiens,
the-office manfully assumed and afterward the-journey taking
navigioque fungens apud Marsiliam, transcurso tandem pelagi
and-a-voyage performing at Marseilles with-crossed at-length of-the-sea
profundo, in portu Tyrensi incolumis applicuit: et inde
the-deep in the-harbor of-Tyre safe landed and thence

ad exercitum nostrum, [obsidentem pariter et obsessum],
to the-army our besieging equally and besieged
Aconem transivit. Ubi multos ex nostris inveniens, et fere
Acre crossed where many of ours finding and almost
cunctos, principum defectu, in summa desolatione jam
all of-the-princes through-the-failure in highest desolation now
positos et desperatione; alios quidem longa expectatione
placed and despair others indeed by-long waiting
fatigatos, alios fame et inopia graviter afflictos, quosdam
wearied others by-hunger and want gravely afflicted some
vero aeris inclementia distemperatos; diem feliciter in
however of-the-air by-the-inclemency distempered the-day happily in
terra sacra clausurus extremum, singulos pro posse
the-land holy about-to-close last each according-to ability
vinculo caritatis amplectens, sumptibus et impensis, verbis
with-the-bond of-charity embracing with-expenses and outlays with-words
et vitæ meritis, confirmavit. Cujus, cum universo fidelium
and of-life merits he-strengthened whose with all of-the-faithful
cœtu, vias, vitas, et actus dirigat in veritate, et ad
the-company the-ways lives and acts may-He-direct in truth and to
gloriam nominis sui, fideique palmam quam ipse plantavit,
the-glory of-name his and-of-faith the-palm which He-himself planted
manus ipsorum ad prælium doceat, et digitos eorum ad
the-hands their to battle may-He-teach and the-fingers their to
bellum, Ille qui solus via, veritas est, et vita; via sine
war He who alone the-way the-truth is and the-life the-way without
offendiculo, veritas sine ambiguo, vita sine fine. Amen.
stumbling-block the-truth without ambiguity the-life without end amen
Explicit Itinerarium Giraldi.
ends the-Itinerary of-Gerald

GERALD OF WALES

Descriptio Kambriæ

The Description of Wales

Stephano Cantuariensi archiepiscopo. In Kambriæ descriptione præfatio prima

THE FIRST PREFACE

Gerald, author of the Topography*, the* Conquest of Ireland*, and the* Itinerary*, now sends Archbishop Stephen of Canterbury a description of Wales and its people. Some liken him to a painter who paints a hovel instead of a palace, others say his gifts belong to God, not to unlettered princes. He chose the histories of his own land, left unwritten by others, as a prelude to greater works, keeping theology for maturer years once the* Instruction of Princes *and this book are out. Gildas, who wrote of what he saw, is his model.*

Ille ego, qui quondam Hybernicam Topographiam, cum
that I who once the-Irish Topography with
abditis suis et naturæ secretis, in tribus distinctionibus
hidden-things its and of-nature secrets in three distinctions
triennii labore digessi; et Vaticinalem Expugnationis
of-three-years with-labor arranged and the-Prophetic of-the-Conquest
Hybernicæ subsequenter Historiam, duabus distinctionibus,
Irish afterward History in-two distinctions
biennali lucubratione complevi; quique, Itinerarium educens,
by-two-years' lucubration completed and-who the-Itinerary bringing-forth
laboriosam viri sancti per Walliæ fines legationem
the-laborious of-the-man holy through of-Wales the-bounds legation
sub ignorantiæ tenebris perire non permisi; Kambriæ nostræ
under of-ignorance the-darkness to-perish not allowed of-Wales our
descriptionem, gentisque naturam, aliis alienam nationibus
the-description and-of-the-people the-nature to-other foreign nations
et valde diversam, hoc opusculo declarare, tibique, vir inclite,
and very different in-this little-work to-declare and-to-you man renowned
Stephane Cantuariensis archiepiscope, quem religio pariter et
Stephen of-Canterbury archbishop whom religion equally and

literatura commendat, sicut Itinerarium olim, sic præsentem
learning commends as the-Itinerary once so the-present
quoque diligentiæ nostræ laborem vestræ sanctitati destinare
also of-diligence our labor to-your holiness to-send
disposui, quanquam tanto forte viro munus indignum,
have-decided although to-so-great perhaps a-man a-gift unworthy
digno tamen cui digna donentur præsentatum.
to-a-worthy-one nevertheless to-whom worthy-things are-given presented
Objiciunt autem nonnulli, et sub dilectionis specie me
object moreover some and under of-affection the-guise me
pictori assimilant; qui pretiosis abundans coloribus,
to-a-painter liken who with-precious abounding colors
et tanquam Zeusis alter arte præcellens, ubi palatium
and as-if Zeuxis a-second in-art excelling when a-palace
insigne aut templum depingere cum multa expectatione
remarkable or a-temple to-paint with much expectation
sperabatur, tugurium aliquod, seu vile quodcunque in sui
was-hoped-for a-hut some or a-vile anything in its
natura despectumque, tanto artificio tantisque sumptibus
nature and-despised with-so-great art and-so-great expenses
illustrare contendit. Sic etenim inter tantas tam
to-make-illustrious strives so for among so-great so
illustres mundi materias, me finales hos terrarum angulos,
illustrious of-the-world matters me final these of-the-earth corners
Hyberniam scilicet, Kambriam, [et] Britanniam, literis
Ireland namely Wales and Britain with-letters
extollere, rhetoricisque coloribus insignire velle mirantur.
to-extol and-with-rhetorical colors to-adorn to-wish they-wonder
Præterea dicunt alii, et acutius obloquuntur, collatam
moreover say others and more-sharply they-gainsay that-conferred
desuper gratiam non in infimis istis evacuandam; nec in
from-above grace not on lowest these to-be-emptied nor on

principum laudes vana lucubratione consumendam, qui
of-princes the-praises with-vain lucubration to-be-consumed who
hodie, nec literati nec largi, gloriosa literarum studia
today neither lettered nor generous the-glorious of-letters studies
nec remunerare norunt nec laudare; quinimmo, quod de
neither to-reward know nor to-praise nay-rather what from
sursum illabitur, potius ad superna referri, et ejus
above flows-in rather to the-heavenly-things to-be-referred and his
ad gloriam cuncta converti debere, de cujus plenitudine id
to glory all to-be-turned ought from whose fullness that
totum accepimus, ejusque summopere laudibus inservire, a
whole we-have-received and-his to-the-utmost praises to-serve from
quo "Omne datum optimum et omne donum perfectum"
whom every gift best and every boon perfect
tanquam ab indeficienti fonte descendit, cui vere nunquam
as-if from an-unfailing spring descends to-whom truly never
ingrato nihil unquam oblatum transire potest irremuneratum.
ungrateful nothing ever offered to-pass can unrewarded
Sed quoniam nobiles aliarum regionum historiæ, egregiis
but since the-noble of-other regions histories by-excellent
olim editæ scriptoribus, in lucem prodiere, nos, ob
once published writers into light have-come-forth we on-account-of
patriæ favorem et posteritatis, finium nostrorum
of-our-country the-favor and of-posterity of-bounds our
abdita quidem evolvere, et inclite gesta, necdum
the-hidden-things indeed to-unfold and gloriously done-things not-yet
tamen in memoriam luculento labore digesta, tenebris
however into memory with-lucid labor arranged from-the-darkness
exuere, humilemque stilo materiam efferre, nec inutile
to-strip and-a-humble with-the-pen matter to-raise neither useless
quidem nec illaudabile reputavimus. Trojano excidio, Thebis,
indeed nor unpraiseworthy we-reckoned to-the-Trojan destruction to-Thebes

et Athenis, Lavinisque litoribus, impar et inculta quid
and to-Athens and-to-the-Lavinian shores unequal and unpolished what
addere posset opera nostra? Quoniam igitur actum agere
add could work our since therefore what-is-done to-do
quasi nihil agentis opus existeret, malui potius et
as-if nothing of-one-doing the-work would-be I-preferred rather and
longe præelegi pauperes finium nostrorum historias, ab aliis
far chose the-poor of-bounds our histories by others
hactenus omnino fere relictas, industria nostra parentibus
thus-far wholly almost left by-industry our to-my-parents
et patriæ non ingrata declarare; et sic postmodum ad
and to-my-country not ungrateful to-declare and so afterward to
majora pedetentim et paulatim anhelare.
greater-things step-by-step and little-by-little to-aspire
Et ut ex minoribus utcunque liqueat istis, quemadmodum
and that from lesser in-any-way it-may-be-clear these how
majores, cum sors materias obtulerit, noster valeat
greater when fortune matters shall-have-offered our may-be-able
stilus explicare.
pen to-unfold
Ad hæc etiam, quia quædam agenda sunt, et alia
to these-things also because some-things to-be-done are and others
non prætermittenda, rudis adhuc viridisque juventæ conamina
not to-be-omitted of-rude still and-green youth the-attempts
licuit in istis exerceri, ne sub otio penitus, et delicti
it-was-allowed in these to-be-exercised lest under idleness wholly and of-sin
fomite desidia, tempora transierint dulciora.
the-tinder in-sloth the-times should-have-passed sweeter
Hæc igitur, quasi præludia quædam, ad inclitos scientiæ
these therefore as-if preludes certain to the-renowned of-the-science
scientiarum thesauros, quæ sola scit scire, sola scientes
of-sciences treasures which alone knows to-know alone knowing

facere hominem tam regere quam imbuere, quasi præambula
to-make a-man as-much to-rule as to-instruct as-if preambles
prælibavimus: quam solam facultates aliæ tanquam pedissequæ
we-have-touched which alone the-faculties other as-if handmaids
reginam longe sequuntur, et vestigia semper adorant. In
the-queen far follow and her-footsteps always adore in
his itaque, tanto ædificio juvenilibus annis tuta struentes
these therefore for-so-great a-building in-youthful years safe laying
fundamenta, ad eximios tam maturæ tam sacræ scientiæ
foundations for the-exceptional of-so mature so holy science
tractatus postmodum explicandos, maturiores annos, Deo
treatises afterward to-be-unfolded the-maturer years with-God
duce, vitaque comite, reservavimus. "Ardua quippe fides,"
leading and-with-life companion we-have-reserved arduous indeed faith
ut ait poeta, "robustos exigit annos." In aliis itaque, gratia
as says the-poet robust demands years in others therefore for-the-sake
istius, moram facere fas est, sed moderatam; in hac vero
of-that a-delay to-make right it-is but moderate in this however
non solum morari, verum etiam mori desiderabile.
not only to-linger but also to-die desirable
Porro ad hæc aggrediendum inducias petimus, sed
moreover for these-things to-be-undertaken a-truce we-seek but
exiguas; donec, cum libello De Principis Instructione toties
brief until with the-little-book On of-the-Prince the-Instruction so-often
promisso, Kambriæ quam præ manibus habemus Descriptio,
promised of-Wales which in hands we-have the-Description
et Britannica Topographia, in publicam notitiam emanaverint.
and the-British Topography into public notice shall-have-issued
Præ aliis itaque Britanniæ scriptoribus, solus mihi Gildas,
beyond other therefore of-Britain writers alone to-me Gildas
quoties eundem materiæ cursus obtulerit, imitabilis esse
as-often-as him of-the-matter the-course shall-have-offered imitable to-be

videtur. Qui ea quæ vidit et ipse cognovit scripto
seems who those-things which he-saw and he-himself knew to-writing
commendans, excidiumque gentis suæ deplorans potius quam
committing and-the-destruction of-people his deploring rather than
describens, veram magis historiam texuit quam ornatam.
describing true rather history he-wove than ornate
Gildam itaque Giraldus sequitur. Quem utinam moribus
Gildas therefore Gerald follows whom would-that in-character
et vita sequi posset; factus ejusdem plus sapientia quam
and in-life follow he-could made of-the-same more in-wisdom than
eloquentia, plus animo quam calamo, plus zelo quam stilo,
in-eloquence more in-spirit than in-pen more in-zeal than in-style
plus vita quam verbis imitator.
more in-life than in-words an-imitator

Præfatio secunda. Ad eundem

THE SECOND PREFACE

Gerald asks Stephen not to shut his book away in a chest, as great men do, but to have it published, and praises him in lines of Martial and Virgil. Friends say letters no longer lead to advancement, and he admits it, yet the love of letters has held him from boyhood. Writing is hard and its judges harsh, for spoken words fly while writings remain, and history is the light of truth. He would rather be like Jerome than Croesus, and he prefers praise to gain.

Cum inter varia literarum studia ad historias scribendas
when among various of-letters studies to histories to-be-written
studiosæ mentis aciem applicuerim, imprimis patriam,
of-a-studious mind the-edge I-applied first my-country
patriæque vicinas et conterminas ex industria regiones,
and-of-my-country the-neighboring and bordering on purpose regions

ne natali ingratus solo viderer, pro ingenii modulo
lest to-my-native ungrateful soil I-should-seem according-to of-talent the-measure
literis illustrare, et sic seriatim ad ulteriora simul et
with-letters to-illustrate and so in-order to further-things at-once and
utiliora, Deo duce, vitaque comite, quasi salutata
more-useful-things with-God leading and-with-life companion as-if with-saluted
primum patria transire disposui. Sed quoniam nonnulli viri
first my-country to-pass-on I-decided but since some men
magni, quos vidimus et novimus, quibus literæ nauseam
great whom we-have-seen and have-known to-whom letters nausea
creant, libros egregios eis oblatos statim in scriniis
create books excellent to-them offered at-once in chests
recondere, et tanquam perpetuo carceri tradere et retrudere
to-hide and as-if to-perpetual prison to-hand-over and to-thrust-back
solent, a te, vir optime, cui præsens opusculum
are-wont from you man best to-whom the-present little-work
transmitti deproperat, petitum, si placet, et impetratum
to-be-sent hastens sought if it-pleases and obtained
esse cupio; quatinus hæc nostræ diligentiæ monumenta,
to-be I-desire that these of-our diligence monuments
sicut et priora vobis exarata, quanquam in se modica,
as also the-former for-you written although in themselves small
aliquando tamen et aliquibus forsan accepta futura, tenebris
sometimes nevertheless and to-some perhaps welcome about-to-be by-darkness
involvi quæ lucem desiderant non permittas; sed ea
to-be-wrapped which light desire not you-may-permit but them
potius, quæ publicata pulchrius elucescent, voce liberali
rather which published more-beautifully will-shine with-voice liberal
ac libera jubeas in commune deduci. Pretium
and free you-may-order into common to-be-brought-out the-price
quippe laboris et præmium reputem, si, sopitis interdum
indeed of-labor and the-reward I-would-reckon if with-lulled sometimes

orationum instantiis et occupationum curis, vel oculos
of-prayers the-urgencies and of-business with-the-cares either the-eyes
ad hæc quandoque legendum, vel saltem aures ad audiendum
to these sometimes for-reading or at-least the-ears for hearing
accommodes. Nec enim aliam a vobis, cum hodie scripta
you-may-apply nor for another from you since today writings
nemo remuneret, vel expeto, vel exspecto retributionem.
no-one rewards either do-I-seek or expect requital
Quanquam rationi tamen id dissonum minime foret, nisi
although to-reason nevertheless that discordant least would-be unless
a magnatibus hodie quasi conjuratio in auctores facta
by the-magnates today as-if a-conspiracy against authors made
fuisset, si ille, qui tot virtutibus, et tam industriæ
had-been if he who with-so-many virtues and as-much of-industry
quam naturæ dotibus, moribus electis et munificentiis,
as of-nature with-endowments with-character choice and munificences
his nostris diebus longe præeminet et præcellit, et in
in-these our days far is-preeminent and excels and in
hac virtute, ab aliis omnibus derelicta dudum et destituta,
this virtue by others all abandoned long-since and deserted
se quoque spectabilem et quasi singularem exhiberet.
himself also conspicuous and as-if singular should-show

Ille, inquam, ut brevi eloquio laudis ad cumulum multa
he I-say that with-brief speech of-praise to the-heap many-things
concludam, cui versus illi Marcialis ad Trajanum sub
I-may-conclude to-whom verses those of-Martial to Trajan under
Diocliciano militantem digne poterunt adaptari,
Diocletian serving worthily will-be-able to-be-adapted

"Laudari debes, quoniam sub principe duro,
"To-be-praised you-ought, since under a-prince harsh,
Temporibusque malis, ausus es esse bonus;"
And-in-times evil, dared you-have to-be good;"

et illi Maronis ad Mecenatem, principis mansuetudinem
and those of-Maro to Maecenas of-the-prince the-mildness
declarantes,
declaring

"Omnia cum posses, tanto tam clarus amico,
"All-things though you-could, through-so-great so famous a-friend,
Te sensit nemo posse nocere tamen."
You felt no-one to-be-able to-harm nevertheless."

"Ad hæc autem objiciunt multi, et hi præsertim qui
to these-things however object many and these especially who
dicuntur amici, ob studii vehementiam me rebus
are-called friends on-account-of of-study the-vehemence me to-things
secularibus negotiisque familiaribus minus intentum, et
secular and-affairs domestic less intent and
ob hoc segnius in mundanæ dignitatis gradibus
on-account-of this more-slowly in of-worldly dignity the-steps
provehendum; auctorum olim tam historicorum quam
to-be-advanced of-authors once as-much historical as

poeticorum auctoritatem in desuetudinem abiisse; literarum
poetic the-authority into disuse has-gone of-letters
honorem cum literatis principibus præteriisse; aliis hodie
the-honor with lettered princes has-passed-away by-other today
viis ad honorem perveniri. Fateor hæc, equidem fateor; et
ways to honor it-is-come I-confess these-things indeed I-confess and
facile veris acquiesco. Sequuntur enim principes improbi,
easily to-true-things I-assent follow for princes the-wicked
curiam cupidi, codices et pixides ambitiosi. Sed quoniam,
the-court the-greedy the-codices and the-pyxes the-ambitious but since

'Trahit sua quemque voluptas,'
'Draws his-own each pleasure,'

me literarum a pueritia traxit amor, et tanquam deliciarum
me of-letters from boyhood has-drawn the-love and as-if of-delights
omnium caput literatæ studium delectat eloquentiæ. Hoc
all the-head of-lettered the-study delights eloquence with-this
itaque præditus voto, supra coætaneos multos scrutabunda
therefore endowed wish above contemporaries many by-searching
tam naturalium cursus rerum quam excursus inquisitione
as-much of-natural the-course of-things as the-excursion by-inquiry
profeci; et posteritati consulens, inclita nostri temporis
I-have-advanced and for-posterity consulting the-renowned of-our time
acta sub silentio perire non permisi.
deeds under silence to-perish not I-have-allowed
"Nec ista tamen absque labore complentur plurimo, sed
nor these-things however without labor are-completed very-much but
jocundo. Difficilis namque est tam certa rerum singularum
pleasant difficult for is so certain of-things single
indagatio; difficilis inquisitæ simul et exquisitæ veritatis
the-investigation difficult of-the-inquired at-once and exquisite truth

ordinata dispositio; et ab initiali puncto finalem ad usque,
the-ordered disposition and from the-initial point the-final up to
non discrepante materia, recta per medium funis extentio.
not with-discordant matter straight through the-middle of-the-rope the-stretching
Difficilis quoque, quatinus tam verbis quam sententiis
difficult also that as-much in-words as in-sentences
scintillet oratio, ornati sermonis elocutio: quippe cum ad
may-sparkle the-oration of-ornate speech the-utterance indeed since for
explicandam memorandorum seriem, non minus interdum
unfolding of-things-to-be-remembered the-series not less sometimes
elegantium verborum torqueat electio quam vexet inventio.
of-elegant words twists the-choice than vexes the-finding
Tanto namque propensiore opus est opera, tantoque
by-so-much for more-inclined need is work and-by-so-much
singula prius elimanda videntur quam eliminanda, quanto
each-thing first to-be-filed seem than to-be-thrown-out by-as-much
scripto commendata se oculis multorum subjicere non
to-writing committed themselves to-the-eyes of-many to-submit not
formidant, nec solum præsentibus sed futuris, argutorum simul
they-fear nor only to-the-present but to-the-future of-the-sharp at-once
subitura judicium et offensorum. Verba nimirum emissa,
about-to-undergo the-judgment and of-the-offended words indeed uttered
quia statim evolant et evanescunt, nec laudis eorum memoria
because at-once they-fly-off and vanish nor of-praise their the-memory
nec vituperii diuturna. Scripta vero, quoniam edita semel
nor of-blame lasting writings however since published once
et publicata non prætereunt, ad auctoris sui permanentem
and made-public not pass-away to of-author their the-permanent
vel gloriam extant vel ignominiam. Quoniam, ut ait Seneca,
either glory they-stand or ignominy since as says Seneca
‘Lividi lectoris malitia dictionem sanam et insanam
of-the-envious of-the-reader the-malice speech sound and unsound

pari revolvit appetitu; non amplius concupiscens electa
with-equal turns-over appetite not more desiring the-choice-things
quæ laudet, quam despecta quæ rideat.'" Unde poeta:
which it-may-praise than the-despised-things which it-may-laugh-at whence the-poet

"Discit enim citius, meminitque libentius illud,
"Learns for sooner, and-remembers more-gladly that
Quod quis deridet, quam quod probat et veneratur."
Which one derides, than what he-approves and venerates."

"Igitur inter studia laude dignissima, hujus quoque studii
therefore among studies of-praise most-worthy of-this also study
laus non ultima. 'Historia namque,' ut ait Seneca, est
the-praise not last history for as says Seneca is
'antiquitatis auctoritas, testis temporum, lux veritatis,
of-antiquity the-authority the-witness of-the-times the-light of-truth
vita memoriæ, magistra vitæ, nuntia vetustatis.'
the-life of-memory the-mistress of-life the-messenger of-antiquity
"Tanto denique labor hic delectabilior, quanto dignius
by-so-much finally labor this more-delightful by-as-much more-worthily
quam aliena recitare recitanda proferre, quanto
than others'-things to-recite things-to-be-recited to-bring-forth by-as-much
appetibilius ab aliis eligi quam bonus aliorum elector
more-desirable by others to-be-chosen than a-good of-others chooser
videri, quanto laudabilius digne ab aliis in laudem
to-seem by-as-much more-praiseworthy worthily by others into praise
efferri quam dignus aliorum laudator haberi. His itaque
to-be-raised than worthy of-others praiser to-be-held on-these therefore
pascor deliciis, et reficior; Ieronimo malens similis esse
I-feed delights and am-refreshed to-Jerome preferring like to-be
quam Creso, longeque plus opibus cunctis opum approbans
than Croesus and-far more than-riches all of-riches approving

contemptorem. His gratulor divitiis et delector; semper
the-despiser in-these I-rejoice riches and am-delighted always
intemperantiæ modestiam, semper honestam superfluitati
to-intemperance modesty always honest to-superfluity
præferens sufficientiam. Et quoniam illa pereunt, ista perire
preferring sufficiency and since those perish these to-perish
non possunt, illa transeunt, ista cum æternitate contendunt,
not can those pass-away these with eternity contend
semper lucro laudem, semper gazis gloriam anteponens."
always to-gain praise always to-treasures glory preferring

THE SIZE AND DIVISIONS OF WALES

Wales is some two hundred miles long and a hundred wide, so fortified by mountains, woods, and marshes that neither English nor Normans fully conquered it. Rhodri the Great's three sons, Merfyn, Anarawd, and Cadell, divided it into Gwynedd, Powys, and South Wales; the princes of the south and north descend from Cadell and Merfyn, and the bards keep their genealogies back to Adam. Wales has fifty-four cantreds, three royal courts, and four sees, St Davids, Llandaff, Bangor, and St Asaph.

De longitudine Kambriæ, et latitudine; qualitate ejusdem,
about the-length of-Wales and breadth the-quality of-the-same
[æqualitate], et inæqualitate.
evenness and unevenness
Kambria, quæ adulterino vocabulo, usitatoque magis sed
Cambria which by-a-spurious name and-usual more but
proprio minus, modernis diebus Wallia dicitur, ducenta
proper less in-modern days Wales is-called two-hundred
milia passuum in longum, circiter vero centum milia in
thousand of-paces in length about however a-hundred thousand in

latum habet. Longitudo namque, a portu Yoiger in Monia
breadth has the-length for from the-harbor Gwygyr in Anglesey
usque ad portum Eskewin in Winta, quasi per octo dietas
up-to to the-harbor Portskewett in Gwent about over eight days'-journeys
extenditur: latitudo vero, a Porthmaur Meneviæ, id est
extends the-breadth however from Porth-Mawr of-St-Davids that is
Portu magno, usque Ridhelic, quod Britannice Vadum salicis,
the-Port great up-to Rhyd-helig which in-British the-Ford of-the-willow
Anglice vero nunc Wiliford dicitur, quasi per quatuor
in-English however now Willow-Ford is-called about over four
dietas expanditur. Montibus excelsis, vallibus imis, silvis
days'-journeys is-spread-out with-mountains lofty with-valleys deep with-forests
immensis, aquis et paludibus, terra munitissima: adeo ut
immense with-waters and marshes a-land most-fortified so that
a tempore quo Saxones primum insulam occupaverant,
from the-time at-which the-Saxons first the-island had-occupied
reliquiæ Britonum, qui in has partes secesserunt, nec ab
the-remnants of-the-Britons who into these parts withdrew neither by
Anglis olim, nec a Normannis postmodum, expugnari ad
the-English once nor by the-Normans afterward to-be-conquered to
plenum prævaluissent. Illi vero qui ad australem angulum,
the-full had-been-able those however who to the-southern corner
qui a ducis Corinei nomine nomen accepit, se
which from of-the-leader Corineus the-name its-name received themselves
susceperunt, quia terra tam munita non est, adeo rebelles
betook because the-land so fortified not is so rebellious
esse non valuerunt. Tertia namque Britonum extantium pars,
to-be not have-been-able the-third for of-the-Britons surviving part
quæ Armoricum australis Galliæ sinum obtinuit, non post
which the-Armorican of-southern Gaul gulf obtained not after
Britannicum excidium, sed longe ante a Maximo tyranno
the-British destruction but long before by Maximus the-tyrant

translata est: et post multos et graves, quos Britannica
transferred was and after many and heavy which the-British
juventus cum ipso sustinuit, bellicos sudores, ultimis his
youth with him sustained warlike sweats with-last these
Galliarum finibus imperiali munificentia est remunerata.
of-the-Gauls bounds by-imperial munificence was rewarded

De divisione Walliæ totalis in tres partes.
about the-division of-Wales whole into three parts

Divisa est antiquitus Wallia totalis in tres partes tanquam
divided was anciently Wales whole into three parts as-if
æquales; plus equivalentiæ tamen, quam justæ quantitatis et
equal more of-equivalence however than of-just size and
proportionis habita consideratione; Venedotiam scilicet, quæ
proportion with-held consideration Gwynedd namely which
nunc Nortwallia, id est, Borealis Wallia dicitur; Sudwalliam,
now North-Wales that is Northern Wales is-called South-Wales
id est Australem Walliam, quæ Kambrice Deheubarth, id est,
that is Southern Wales which in-Welsh Deheubarth that is
Dextralis pars dicitur; cujus etiam portio septem cantaredis est
the-Right-hand part is-called of-which also a-portion of-seven cantreds is
conserta Demetia; et Powisiam, quasi mediam et orientalem.
made-up Dyfed and Powys as-if the-middle and eastern
Divisionis autem hujus hæc causa suberat. Rothericus magnus,
of-division moreover this this cause lay-beneath Rhodri the-great
qui Britannice Rotheri Maur dicebatur, totique Walliæ
who in-British Rhodri Mawr was-called and-over-the-whole Wales
præsidebat, tres filios habuerat, Mervinum, Anaraut, et Cadelh.
presided three sons had-had Merfyn Anarawd and Cadell
Hi tres totam inter se Walliam diviserunt. Mervino cessit
these three all among themselves Wales divided to-Merfyn fell
Nortwallia, Anaraut Powisia, Cadelh vero, cum populi totius
North-Wales to-Anarawd Powys to-Cadell however with of-the-people whole

et fratrum benedictione, Sudwallia. Ipsa nimirum, quanquam
and of-the-brothers the-blessing South-Wales it indeed although
quantitate longe major, propter nobiles tamen qui Kambrice
in-size far greater on-account-of the-nobles however who in-Welsh
Hucheilwer quasi superiores viri vocantur, quibus abundabat,
uchelwyr as-if higher men are-called in-whom it-abounded
qui et dominis rebelles esse solebant, dominumque ferre
who also to-lords rebellious to-be were-wont and-a-lord to-bear
detrectabant, deterior esse videbatur. Cadelh autem, præmortuis
refused worse to-be seemed Cadell however with-dead-before
fratribus, totius Walliæ demum monarchiam obtinuit; et
brothers of-whole Wales at-last the-monarchy obtained and
successores sui similiter, usque ad Theodorum. Descendentes
successors his likewise up-to to Tewdwr those-descending
enim a Theodoro tantum Sudwalliam obtinuerunt, sicut et
for from Tewdwr only South-Wales obtained as also
pater eorum: hi scilicet, Resus filius Theodori, Griphinus
father their these namely Rhys son of-Tewdwr Gruffydd
filius Resi, et Resus filius Griphini qui hodie præest.
son of-Rhys and Rhys son of-Gruffydd who today presides

De generatione principum Walliæ.
about the-generation of-the-princes of-Wales

Hæc itaque est generatio principum Sudwalliæ: Resus
this therefore is the-generation of-the-princes of-South-Wales Rhys
filius Griphini, Griphinus filius Resi, Resus filius Theodori,
son of-Gruffydd Gruffydd son of-Rhys Rhys son of-Tewdwr
Theodorus filius Cadelh, Cadelh filius Eneæ, Eneas filius
Tewdwr son of-Cadell Cadell son of-Einion Einion son
Oenei, Oeneus filius Hoeli da, id est Hoeli boni, Hoelus
of-Owain Owain son of-Hywel Dda that is of-Hywel the-good Hywel
filius Cadelh, Cadelh filius Roderici magni.
son of-Cadell Cadell son of-Rhodri the-great

De Cadelo igitur, filio Rotherici magni, descenderunt
from Cadell therefore son of-Rhodri the-great descended
principes Sudwalliæ. De Mervino principes Nortwalliæ, in
the-princes of-South-Wales from Merfyn the-princes of-North-Wales in
hunc modum; David filius Oenei, Oeneus filius Griphini,
this manner David son of-Owain Owain son of-Gruffydd
Griphinus filius Canani, Cananus filius Iago, Iago filius
Gruffydd son of-Cynan Cynan son of-Iago Iago son
Ythewal, Ythewal filius Meuric, Meuric filius Anaudrech,
of-Idwal Idwal son of-Meurig Meurig son of-Anarawd
Anaudrech filius Mervini, Mervinus filius Rotherici magni.
Anarawd son of-Merfyn Merfyn son of-Rhodri the-great
De Anaraut autem generatio non provenit. Unde et principes
from Anarawd however a-generation not came-forth whence also the-princes
Powisiæ suam habent per se generationem.
of-Powys their-own have by themselves generation
Hoc etiam mihi notandum videtur, quod bardi Kambrenses,
this also to-me to-be-noted seems that the-bards Welsh
et cantores, seu recitatores, genealogiam habent prædictorum
and singers or reciters the-genealogy have of-the-aforesaid
principum in libris eorum antiquis et authenticis, sed
princes in books their ancient and authentic but
tamen Kambrice scriptam; eandemque memoriter tenent,
nevertheless in-Welsh written and-the-same by-memory they-hold
a Rotherico magno usque ad beatam Virginem, et inde
from Rhodri the-great up-to to the-blessed Virgin and thence
usque ad Silvium, Ascanium, et Eneam; et ab Enea usque
up-to to Silvius Ascanius and Aeneas and from Aeneas up-to
ad Adam generationem linealiter producunt. Sed quoniam
to Adam the-generation in-line they-bring-down but since
tam longinqua, tam remotissima generis enarratio, multis
so long so most-remote of-descent a-recital to-many

trutanica potius quam historica esse videretur, eam huic
trifling rather than historical to-be might-seem it into-this
nostro compendio inserere ex industria supersedimus.
our compendium to-insert on purpose we-have-forborne
Quot cantaredos Wallia contineat, quot curias principales,
how-many cantreds Wales contains how-many courts principal
et quot sedes cathedrales.
and how-many sees cathedral
Continet autem Sudwallia cantaredos viginti novem, Norwallia
contains moreover South-Wales cantreds twenty nine North-Wales
duodecim, Powisia sex: quorum tamen hodie tres ab Anglis
twelve Powys six of-which however today three by the-English
et Francis occupati sunt. Terra namque, quæ Slopesburia
and the-French occupied are the-land for which Shrewsbury
dicitur, olim pars Powisiæ fuerat. Unde et locus, ubi
is-called once part of-Powys had-been whence also the-place where
nunc castrum Slopesburiæ situm est, olim Penguern, id
now the-castle of-Shrewsbury situated is once Pengwern that
est Caput alneti vocabatur.
is the-Head of-the-alder-grove was-called
Tres etenim fuerant Walliæ totius curiæ principales,
three for there-had-been of-Wales whole courts principal
Dynevur in Sudwallia; modernis diebus, antiquitus enim apud
Dinevor in South-Wales in-modern days anciently for at
urbem Legionum erat; Aberfrau in Nordwallia; Penguern in
the-city of-the-Legions it-was Aberffraw in North-Wales Pengwern in
Powisia. Est itaque numerus omnium cantaredorum totius
Powys is therefore the-number of-all the-cantreds of-whole
Walliæ quinquaginta quatuor. Cantaredus autem, id est
Wales fifty four a-cantred moreover that is
Cantref, a Cant quod est centum et Tref villa composito
cantref from cant which is a-hundred and tref township by-a-compound

vocabulo, tam Britannica quam Hybernica lingua dicitur
word as-much in-British as Irish tongue is-called
tanta terræ portio, quanta centum villas continere solet.
so-great of-land a-portion as a-hundred townships to-contain is-wont
Sunt autem in Wallia sedes cathedrales quatuor. In Sudwallia
are moreover in Wales sees cathedral four in South-Wales
Menevensis, super Hybernicum mare; David archiepiscopo
St-Davids above the-Irish sea with-David archbishop
patrocinante. Hæc antiquitus metropolitana fuerat, et
as-patron this anciently metropolitan had-been and
cantaredos continebat viginti quatuor; cum tamen hodie
cantreds contained twenty four although nevertheless today
viginti tribus tantum contenta sit. Ergengel etenim, quæ et
with-twenty three only content it-is Ergyng for which also
Anglice Urchenefeld dicitur, intra diocesim Menevensem olim
in-English Archenfield is-called within the-diocese of-St-Davids once
aliquando, intra Landavensem quoque quandoque fuisse
sometimes within of-Llandaff also sometimes to-have-been
perhibetur. Habuerat autem sedes Menevensis archiepiscopos
is-said had-had moreover the-see of-St-Davids archbishops
successive viginti tres: sublato vero pallio, episcopos
in-succession twenty three with-removed however the-pallium bishops
usque in hodiernum diem viginti quatuor. Quorum nomina
up-to into the-present day twenty four whose names
et ordinem, causamque pallii sublati, si scire volueris,
and order and-the-cause of-the-pallium removed if to-know you-shall-wish
nostrum Itinerarium quæras.
our Itinerary you-may-seek
In eadem quoque australi Wallia sedes Landavensis; super
in the-same also southern Wales the-see of-Llandaff above
mare Sabrinum, juxta nobile castrum de Kairdif; præsule
the-sea Severn near the-noble castle of Cardiff with-prelate

Teliao præsidente; quinque continens cantaredos, et quartam
Teilo presiding five containing cantreds and the-fourth
partem unius, scilicet Seighenith.
part of-one namely Senghennydd
In Nortwallia, inter Moniam et montes Ereri sedes
in North-Wales between Anglesey and the-mountains of-Eryri the-see
Bangorensis, Danielis abbatis patrocinio gaudens, cantaredos
of-Bangor of-Daniel the-abbot in-the-patronage rejoicing cantreds
continens circiter novem.
containing about nine
In eadem, paupercula cathedra Lanelvensis; cui et Powisia
in the-same the-poor-little cathedral of-St-Asaph to-which also Powys
subest, Asaph episcopo præsidente; cantaredos continens
is-subject with-Asaph bishop presiding cantreds containing
quasi sex.
about six

Wales is divided by rivers rising in two mountain ranges, Elennith and Eryri, whose lakes hold a wandering island and one-eyed fish, such as are found in Scotland too. From Elennith flow the Severn, named for the drowned Sabrina, the Wye, the Tywi past Dinevor and Carmarthen, and the Teifi, the one river in Wales with beavers; the Usk rises in Cantref Bychan, and from the Brecknock mountains come the Rhymney, the Taff, the Tawe, and others, while the two Cleddau name Daugleddau. Gerald repeats from the Itinerary *how beavers build their lodges, castrate themselves to escape the hunter, and have tails eaten as fish. From Eryri flow the Dovey, the Conwy, and the Clwyd, and the Dee rises in Pemblemere.*

De duobus montanis; a quibus aquæ nobiles emanantes,
about the-two mountain-ranges from which waters noble flowing
Walliam egregie dividunt et distinguunt.
Wales excellently divide and distinguish
Scinditur autem et distinguitur aquis Wallia nobilibus, quæ
is-cut moreover and distinguished by-waters Wales noble which
ex montanis duobus originem habent; Elennyth scilicet in
from mountain-ranges two their-origin have Elennith namely in
Sudwallia, quæ Angli Moruge vocant, quasi paludum cacumina;
South-Wales which the-English Moruge call as-if of-marshes the-tops
Ereri quoque in Nortwallia, quæ Anglice Snaudune dicuntur,
Eryri also in North-Wales which in-English Snowdon are-called
id est Nivium montes. Hæc tantæ quantitatis et capacitatis
that is of-Snows the-mountains these of-so-great size and capacity
esse perhibentur, quod si cuncta totius Walliæ armenta in
to-be are-said that if all of-whole Wales the-herds into
unum coacta fuerint, eis ad pascua multo tempore
one gathered shall-have-been for-them for pastures for-much time
sufficere possent. In his etiam duo lacus illi esse perhibentur;
suffice they-could in these also two lakes those to-be are-said

quorum alterum insulam erraticam, alterum autem pisces omnes
of-which one an-island wandering the-other however fish all
monoculos certum est continere, sicut in Itinerario declaravimus.
one-eyed certain it-is to-contain as in the-Itinerary we-have-declared
"Notandum hic etiam quod in Albania quoque, duobus in
to-be-noted here also that in Scotland also in-two in
locis, uno ad mare orientale, altero ad occidentale, pisces
places one by the-sea eastern the-other by the-western fish
marini qui Mulvelli dicuntur monoculi reperiuntur; dextrum
of-the-sea which mulvelli are-called one-eyed are-found the-right
similiter oculum habentes, et sinistro carentes."
likewise eye having and the-left lacking
De montanis igitur Elennyth nobilis emanat Sabrinæ fluvius,
from the-mountains therefore of-Elennith the-noble flows of-the-Severn river
castrum Slopesburiæ complectens; deinde per nobile castrum
the-castle of-Sbrewsbury embracing then by the-noble castle
Brugense, per urbem quoque Wigorniæ, per Gloverniam
of-Bridgnorth by the-city also of-Worcester by Gloucester
ferream atque fabrilem; sub qua paucis passuum milibus in
iron-working and smithing below which by-a-few of-paces thousands into
mare descendit, quod et ab ejus quoque nomine Sabrinum
the-sea it-descends which also from its also name the-Severn
mare nomen accepit. Hæc aqua, multis olim temporibus,
sea its-name received this water for-many once times
inter Kambriam et Loegriam, hoc est inter Walliam et
between Cambria and Lloegr that is between Wales and
Angliam, marchia fuit. Hæc Britannice Haveren, a nomine
England the-march was this in-British Hafren from the-name
puellæ, filiæ scilicet Locrini, ibi a noverca submersa,
of-a-girl daughter namely of-Locrinus there by her-stepmother drowned
vocata est. Unde et Latine, mutatione aspirationis in S,
called was whence also in-Latin by-the-change of-the-aspirate into S

ut in distortis a Græco in Latinum fieri solet, dicta
as in words-twisted from Greek into Latin to-be-done is-wont called
est Sabrina. Sicut pro hal, sal; hemi, semi; hepta, septem.
it-is Sabrina as for hal sal hemi semi hepta septem
Waiæ fluvius, ab eisdem quoque montanis [de] Elennyth, per
of-the-Wye the-river from the-same also mountains of Elennith by
Haiæ castrum et Clifordiæ, per urbem Herefordiæ, per castellum
of-Hay the-castle and of-Clifford by the-city of-Hereford by the-castle
de Wiltona et castellum Godricii discurrens, silvam quoque
of Wilton and the-castle of-Goodrich running the-forest also
Danubiæ ferro fertilem atque ferina transpenetrando, usque ad
of-Dean with-iron fertile and with-game piercing up-to to
Strigulense castrum, sub quo et in mare dilabitur, et Angliam
the-Striguil castle below which also into the-sea it-glides and England
ibidem a Wallia separans modernis diebus marchiam facit.
there from Wales separating in-modern days the-march makes
Oscha vero non ab Elennyth, sed a montanis de
the-Usk however not from Elennith but from the-mountains of
Cantrefbochan originem trahens, per principale castrum
Cantref-Bychan its-origin drawing by the-principal castle
de Brecheniauc, quod Aberhotheni dicunt, id est Casum
of Brecknock which Aberhonddu they-call that is the-Fall
Hotheni, scilicet in Oscham; Aber enim Britannice dicitur
of-the-Honddu namely into the-Usk aber for in-British is-called
locus omnis, ubi aqua in aquam cadit; per castrum
a-place every where water into water falls by the-castle
de Abergevenni, per Oschæ castrum, per antiquam et
of Abergavenny by of-the-Usk the-castle by the-ancient and
authenticam Legionum urbem descendens, non procul a
authentic of-the-Legions city descending not far from
Novoburgo in Sabrinum mare demergitur.
Newport into the-Severn sea it-is-sunk

Remni fluvius de montanis de Brecheniauc per castellum
the-Rhymney river from the-mountains of Brecknock by the-castle
et pontem de Remni in mare descendit. Et ab eisdem
and bridge of Rhymney into the-sea descends and from the-same
montanis Taph per sedem cathedralem de Landaf, cui
mountains the-Taff by the-see cathedral of Llandaff to-which
et nomen dedit, usque ad castrum de Kairdif, ubi se
also the-name it-gave up-to to the-castle of Cardiff where itself
mari immiscet, impetuose transcurrit.
with-the-sea it-mingles impetuously runs
De montibus Wlatmorgan, inter egregia Cysterciensis
from the-mountains of-Glamorgan between the-excellent of-the-Cistercian
ordinis cœnobia, de Margan scilicet et Neth, Avennæ
order monasteries of Margam namely and Neath the-Avon
fluvius, et Neth de montibus Brecheniauc, vivo sabulo
river and the-Neath from the-mountains of-Brecknock with-living sand
et absorbente terribiles in mare deproperant. Neth
and swallowing terrible into the-sea hasten with-the-Neath
fluvio juxta castellum de Neth profluente.
river near the-castle of Neath flowing
De montanis quoque de Brecheniauc Tawe fluvius per
from the-mountains also of Brecknock the-Tawe river by
castellum de Abertawe, quod Anglice Sweynesia dicitur,
the-castle of Abertawe which in-English Swansea is-called
Locher per castellum de Loholt, et Wendraith per Kedwely,
the-Loughor by the-castle of Llwchwr and the-Gwendraeth by Kidwelly
in profundum dilabuntur. Ab Elennyth iterum nobile
into the-deep glide from Elennith again the-noble
flumen Tewi, Cantrefmaur et Cantrefbochan ab invicem
river Tywi Cantref-Mawr and Cantref-Bychan from each-other
separans, per castrum Lanamdeveri, per castellum Dynevur
separating by the-castle of-Llandovery by the-castle Dinevor

silvis et situ munitissimum, ubi et principalis Sudwalliæ
by-woods and site most-fortified where also the-principal of-South-Wales
curia fuerat, per nobile castrum de Kairmerdhin, ubi et
court had-been by the-noble castle of Carmarthen where also
Merlinus inventus fuerat, a quo et nomen accepit, usque
Merlin found had-been from whom also its-name it-received up-to
ad castellum de Landestephan in mare transfertur.
to the-castle of Llansteffan into the-sea is-carried
De montanis de Presseleu, non procul ab Albæ domus
from the-mountains of Preseli not far from of-the-White House
monasterio, per castellum de Sancto Claro, non longe ab
the-monastery by the-castle of Saint Clears not far from
Abercorran et Talachar Taph fluvius in mare devolvitur.
Abercorran and Laugharne the-Taf river into the-sea rolls-down
De montanis eisdem duo Cledeu, provinciam de Dugledeu
from the-mountains the-same the-two Cleddau the-province of Daugleddau
complectentes, eique de suo nomine nomen donantes, alter
embracing and-to-it from their name its-name giving one
per castellum de Lanwadein, alter per Haverfordiam, in mare
by the-castle of Llawhaden the-other by Haverford into the-sea
decurrunt. Et dicuntur Britannice Dugledeu, quasi duo gladii.
run-down and they-are-called in-British Daugleddau as-if two swords
A montibus autem Elennith aqua Teivi nobilis emanat,
from the-mountains moreover of-Elennith the-water Teifi noble flows
a superiori parte Cantrefmaur et Kerdigan, non procul
on the-upper side Cantref-Mawr and Cardigan not far
ab armentis opimo de Stratflur monasterio, inferius autem
from with-herds rich of Strata-Florida the-monastery lower however
Demetiam et Kerdigan usque in Hybernicum mare longe
Dyfed and Cardigan up-to into the-Irish sea far
disterminans. Hæc aqua sola in Kambria castores habet. Quorum
bounding this water alone in Wales beavers has whose

miracula si scire volueris, Itinerarium quæras. Salmone
wonders if to-know you-shall-wish the-Itinerary you-may-seek in-salmon
quoque præpingui, præ cunctis Cambriæ fluviis, magis abundat.
also very-fat beyond all of-Wales rivers more it-abounds
Sed quoniam in multorum forte manus liber iste deveniet
but since into of-many perhaps the-hands book this will-come
ad quas non ille, multaque de castoribus specialia reperies
to which not that and-many about beavers special-things you-will-find
et notabilia, quædam et hic interserere præter rem non
and notable some-things also here to-insert beside the-point not
putavi. "De hujus enim bestiæ natura, qualiter a silvis
I-thought about of-this for beast the-nature how from the-woods
ad aquas materiam vehant; quanto artificio ex attracta
to the-waters material they-carry with-how-great art from drawn
materia mediis in fluctibus munimenta connectant; quam
material in-the-middle in the-waves fortifications they-join what
defensionis artem contra venatores in occidente prætendant,
of-defense art against hunters in the-west they-display
quam in oriente; de caudis quoque pisceis, ut aiunt, potius
what in the-east about the-tails also fishy as they-say rather
quam carneis, pauca interserere non inutile reputavi.
than fleshy a-few-things to-insert not useless I-reckoned
"Castores enim, ut castra sibi in fluviis construant,
beavers for that castles for-themselves in rivers they-may-construct
sui generis servis pro rheda utentes, a silvis ad aquas
of-their kind slaves for a-wagon using from the-woods to the-waters
lignea robora miro vecturæ modo contrahunt et
wooden timbers in-a-wonderful of-conveyance manner they-draw-together and
conducunt. Quidam enim ex eis, naturæ imperio servire
bring some for of these of-nature by-the-command to-serve
parati, ligna ab aliis præcisa, ventrique supino imposita,
ready the-timbers by others cut-off and-on-the-belly supine placed

quatuor pedibus complectentes, lignoque in ore ex
with-four feet embracing and-with-wood in the-mouth from
transverso locato, dentibus ab aliis hinc inde cohærentibus,
across placed by-the-teeth by others on-this-side on-that clinging
retrogradeque trahentibus, non absque intuentium admiratione,
and-backward drawing not without of-the-onlookers wonder
simul cum oneribus attrahuntur. Simili quoque naturæ
together with the-loads are-drawn by-like also of-nature
artificio, in scrobium purgatione, quas sibi pedibus in
art in of-their-burrows the-cleaning which for-themselves with-the-feet in
terra fodiendo scalpendoque conformant, meloti utuntur. In
the-earth by-digging and-scraping they-shape badgers use in
utroque vero animalium genere, servi notabiles inveniuntur
each however of-animals kind slaves notable are-found
tam degenerante quadam naturæ deformitate, quam abrasa
as-much by-degenerating a-certain of-nature deformity as by-the-scraped
et attrita dorsorum depilatione.
and worn of-backs hairlessness
“In aliquo vero profundissimo fluvii angulo et pacifico, in
in some however deepest of-the-river corner and peaceful in
castrorum constructione tanto artificio ligna connectunt,
of-castles the-construction with-so-great art the-timbers they-join
ut nec aquæ stilla de facili penetrando subintret, nec
that neither of-water a-drop with ease by-penetrating may-enter nor
procellæ vis labefactando concutiat: nec violentiam quamlibet
of-storm the-force by-shaking may-shake nor violence any
præter humanam, et hanc ferro munitam reformident.
except human and this with-iron fortified do-they-fear
“Ex salicum autem ramis in castrorum constructione
from of-willows moreover the-branches in of-castles the-construction
ligna connectunt; soliisque variis in altum, quantum
the-timbers they-join and-with-floors various on high as-much-as

aqua excrescere solet et ultra, ostiis interius a solio
the-water to-rise is-wont and beyond with-doors inside from floor
in solium aptatis, machinam distinguunt; ut juxta
to floor fitted the-structure they-distinguish that according-to
fluminis incrementa, fluctuantes undas cum voluerint ab
of-the-river the-increases the-fluctuating waves when they-wish from
alto despicere valeant. Ex salicibus autem, ut
on-high to-look-down-on they-may-be-able from willows moreover so-that
per annuos crescendo salicum saltus hispidum exterius
through annual by-growing of-willows the-thicket a-shaggy outside
silvescat arbustum; tota interius arte latente.
may-grow-wild shrubbery with-all inside the-art lying-hidden
"Hoc animal in aquis ad libitum perdurat; et sub eisdem,
this animal in the-waters at will endures and under the-same
more bufonum, velutique phocæ pilosæ quæ fluxum
in-the-manner of-toads and-as-if seals hairy which the-flow
maris atque refluxum lenitate pilorum et hispiditate
of-the-sea and ebb by-the-smoothness of-their-hair and roughness
declarant, halitum fovet.
declare its-breath keeps
"Sub aquis igitur indifferenter et sub divo, tria hæc
under the-waters therefore indifferently and under the-sky three these
animalium genera spiritum trahunt. Suntque tibiis curtis,
of-animals kinds breath draw and-they-are with-legs short
corpore lato, caudis nullis vel quasi mutilatis; et talpis
with-body broad with-tails none or as-if docked and to-moles
quodammodo, sive melotis, in corporis compositione conformia.
in-a-way or badgers in of-the-body the-composition conformable
"Notandum etiam quod quatuor hæc solum dentes bestia
to-be-noted also that four this alone teeth beast
præfert; oris anteriori parte duos supra, et duos inferius
displays of-the-mouth on-the-front part two above and two below

e contra; eisque, latis plurimum et acutis, tanquam
on the-contrary and-them broad very-much and sharp as-if
dolabris utitur ad secandum.
hatchets it-uses for cutting
"Habent autem in proxima castris ripa scrobes subterraneas,
they-have moreover in the-nearest to-their-castles bank burrows underground
latibulaque munitissima in sicco. Ad quæ venator explorans
and-hiding-places most-fortified on dry-land to which the-hunter exploring
dum præacutis sudibus desuper transpenetrare molitur, ictum
while with-sharpened stakes from-above to-pierce he-strives the-blow
audiens, et violentiam timens, quamcitius ad castri
hearing and the-violence fearing as-quickly-as-possible to of-the-castle
munimenta se bestia confert. Sed primo ad ipsum foraminis
the-defenses itself the-beast betakes but first at the-very of-the-hole
ingressum in ripa residens, aquam exsufflat, pedibus
entrance on the-bank sitting the-water it-blows-out with-its-feet
scalpendo terram immiscet, et ex limpida visuique pervia
by-scraping the-earth it-mixes-in and from clear and-to-sight penetrable
turbidam reddit et cœnulentam, ut sic hostis a ripa
muddy it-renders and miry that so of-the-enemy from the-bank
cum fuscina ferrea saltum observantis artem arte deludat.
with a-trident iron the-leap watching the-art by-art it-may-elude
"In eois autem regionibus, cum canes narium sagacitate
in eastern moreover regions when the-dogs of-nostrils by-the-keenness
sequentes se nullatenus effugere posse præsentit, ut damno
pursuing itself in-no-way to-escape be-able it-foresees that with-the-loss
partis totum redimat, partem quam appeti naturali industria
of-a-part the-whole it-may-redeem the-part which to-be-sought by-natural industry
novit projiciendo, venatoris in prospectu seipsam bestia castrat.
it-knows by-throwing-away of-the-hunter in the-sight itself the-beast castrates
Unde et a castrando Castor nomen accepit. Præterea, si
whence also from castrating castor its-name it-has-received moreover if

bestiam præcastratam canes iterum forte persequantur, ad
the-beast castrated-before the-dogs again by-chance pursue to
eminentem se statim conferens locum, coxa in altum
a-prominent itself at-once betaking place with-the-haunch on high
elevata, partem venatori quam appetit præcisam ostendit.
raised the-part to-the-hunter which he-seeks cut-off it-shows
De quibus Cicero in Scauriana; 'Redimunt se ex illa
about which Cicero in the-Scauriana they-redeem themselves with that
parte corporis, propter quam maxime expetuntur.' Juvenalis;
part of-the-body for which most they-are-sought Juvenal

"'Qui se
"'Who himself
Eunuchum ipse facit, cupiens evadere damno
A-eunuch himself makes, desiring to-escape by-the-loss
Testiculi.'
Of-the-testicle.'

"Et Bernardus;
and Bernard

"'Prodit item castor proprio de corpore velox
"'Gives-up likewise the-beaver its-own from body swift
Reddere quas sequitur hostis avarus opes.'
To-render which pursues the-enemy greedy riches.'

"Sic igitur ut hinc pellem, quæ in occidente quæritur,
so therefore that on-this-side the-skin which in the-west is-sought
tueri valeat, illinc partis medicinalis quæ in oriente
to-protect it-may-be-able on-that-side of-the-part medicinal which in the-east
diligitur largitione, totum quanquam tamen non totum
is-prized by-the-giving the-whole although nevertheless not the-whole

conservet, mirabili, ne dicam ingenio, vi quadam
it-may-preserve by-a-wonderful not to-say by-ingenuity by-force a-certain
ingenita et quasi discretiva, venatoris astutiam vitare molitur.
inborn and as-if discerning of-the-hunter the-cunning to-avoid it-strives
"Notandum quoque quod castores caudas habent latas et
to-be-noted also that beavers tails have broad and
non longas, in modum palmæ humanæ spissas; quibus
not long in the-manner of-a-palm human thick with-which
tanquam pro remigio natando funguntur. Cumque totum
as-if for oarage in-swimming they-make-use and-since the-whole
corpus reliquum valde pilosum habeant, hanc partem omni
body remaining very hairy they-have this part of-all
pilositate carentem, in morem phocæ marinæ, planam habent
hairiness lacking in the-manner of-a-seal of-the-sea flat they-have
et levigatam. Unde et in Germania, arctoisque regionibus,
and smooth whence also in Germany and-northern regions
ubi abundant beveres, caudis hujusmodi, piscium ut aiunt
where abound beavers on-tails of-this-kind of-fish as they-say
naturam tam sapore quam colore sortitis, viri etiam
the-nature as-much in-flavor as in-color having-obtained men even
magni et religiosi jejuniorum tempore pro pisce vescuntur."
great and religious of-fasts in-the-time for fish feed
A montibus eisdem Escud erumpit; et superiores
from the-mountains the-same the-Ystwyth bursts-forth and the-upper
Kereticæ regionis partes de Penwethig transpenetrando, sub
of-the-Cardigan region parts of Penweddig piercing below
castro Aberescud in mare descendit.
the-castle of-Aberystwyth into the-sea descends
A niveis autem Ereri montibus nobilis Devi fluvius originem
from the-snowy moreover of-Eryri mountains the-noble Dovey river its-origin
trahens, Sudwalliam a Nortwallia longe discernit et distinguit.
drawing South-Wales from North-Wales far separates and distinguishes

Ab eisdem quoque montibus Mau fluvius magnus emanans,
from the-same also mountains the-Mawddach river great flowing
Trait maur et Trait bochan, id est Tractus Maris major et
Traeth Mawr and Traeth Bychan that is the-Tract of-the-Sea greater and
minor, Dissennyth similiter, et Arthro, per Meirionith et
lesser the-Dysynni likewise and the-Artro through Merioneth and
terram Canani dilabuntur. Cunewe vero de sub Ereri pede
the-land of-Cynan glide the-Conwy however from under of-Eryri the-foot
boreali montis emergens, sub nobili castello Dugannu se
northern of-the-mountain emerging below the-noble castle Deganwy itself
marinis undis immiscet. A latere montis ejusdem, per
with-the-sea waves mingles from the-side of-the-mountain the-same by
castellum Rudhelan, et sic usque in mare Cloid dilabitur. De
the-castle Rhuddlan and so up-to into the-sea the-Clwyd glides from
lacu Pemmelesmere Deverdoe, quam Angli Deiam vocant,
the-lake Pemblemere the-Dyfrdwy which the-English the-Dee call
originem ducens, et per Cestriam currens, longeque a latere
its-origin drawing and through Chester running and-far on the-side
dextro silvam de Coleshulle, Basingeworc, et divitem non
right the-wood of Coleshill Basingwerk and the-rich not
procul inde argenti venam, vivum et absorbens mare influendo
far thence of-silver vein a-living and swallowing the-sea flowing-in
sabulum facit; et inter Angliam et Walliam a parte boreali,
sand makes and between England and Wales on the-side northern
sicut et Waia ab australi, moderno tempore marchiam facit.
as also the-Wye on the-southern in-modern time the-march makes

South Wales is pleasanter, the north stronger and more fertile, with Anglesey the mother of Wales and Merioneth the roughest land, strong in the lance as the south is in the bow. Welsh is purest in the north or in Cardigan, and Cornish and Breton are close to it. Cambria is named for Camber son of Brutus, and Wales from the Saxon word for foreigners, not from Geoffrey's Walo. The Welsh are light, agile, and given wholly to arms; they plow little, live on herds, oats, and milk, fight for country and liberty, and count dying in bed shameful. Lightly armed and often barefoot, they meet mailed men unafraid, as Henry II wrote to the emperor Manuel.

De amœnitate Walliæ et fertilitate.

about the-pleasantness of-Wales and fertility

Totius autem Walliæ, sicut australis pars circa regionem

of-whole moreover Wales as the-southern part around the-region

Kereticam, et præcipue Demetiam, campestri planitie,

of-Cardigan and especially Dyfed by-level flatness

maritimoque litore longe amœnior, sic borealis Venedotia et

and-sea shore far more-pleasant so the-northern Gwynedd both

situ terrarum munitior, et robustis virorum corporibus

in-the-site of-its-lands more-fortified and in-robust of-men bodies

fecundior, uberique gleba fertilior esse dignoscitur. Sicut enim

more-fruitful and-in-rich soil more-fertile to-be is-known as for

montes Ereri cunctis Walliæ totius armentis in unum coactis

the-mountains of-Eryri for-all of-Wales whole the-herds into one gathered

ad pascua, sic insula Moniæ triticei graminis fertilitate toti

for pastures so the-island of-Anglesey of-wheat grass by-the-fertility for-whole

Walliæ fertur aliquamdiu sufficere posse. Unde et Monia

Wales is-said for-some-while to-suffice to-be-able whence also Môn

Mamkembre Britannice, id est Mater Kambriæ, dici solet.

Mam-Cymru in-British that is the-Mother of-Wales to-be-called it-is-wont

Merionyth autem et terra Canani præ aliis omnibus
Merioneth however and the-land of-Cynan beyond others all
hispida nimis est et inacessibilis.
rough too is and inaccessible
Pars ista Walliæ lanceis longis præstat; sicut australis, et
part this of-Wales in-lances long excels as the-southern and
præcipue circa Wintæ fines, arcu solet prævalere.
especially around of-Gwent the-bounds in-the-bow is-wont to-prevail
Notandum etiam, quia in Nortwallia lingua Britannica
to-be-noted also that in North-Wales the-tongue British
delicatior, ornatior, et laudabilior, quanto alienigenis terra illa
more-delicate more-ornate and more-praiseworthy by-as-much with-foreigners land that
impermixtior, esse perhibetur. Kereticam tamen in Sudwallia
more-unmixed to-be is-said the-Cardigan however in South-Wales
regionem, tanquam in medio Kambriæ ac meditullio sitam,
region as-if in the-middle of-Wales and center situated
lingua præcipua uti et laudatissima plerique testantur.
the-tongue foremost to-use and most-praised most testify
Cornubia vero, et Armorica Britannia, lingua utuntur fere
Cornwall however and Armorican Brittany a-tongue use almost
persimili; Kambris tamen, propter originalem convenientiam,
very-similar to-the-Welsh however on-account-of the-original affinity
in multis adhuc et fere cunctis intelligibili. Quæ, quanto
in many-things still and almost all intelligible which by-as-much
delicata minus et incomposita magis, tanto antiquo
delicate less and unpolished more by-so-much to-the-ancient
linguæ Britannicæ idiomati magis, ut arbitror, appropriata.
of-the-tongue British idiom more as I-think suited
Sicut in australibus Angliæ finibus, et præcipue circa
as in the-southern of-England bounds and especially around
Devoniam, Anglica lingua hodie magis videtur incomposita: ea
Devon the-English tongue today more seems unpolished it

tamen, vetustatem longe plus redolens, borealibus insulæ
nevertheless antiquity far more smelling-of with-the-northern of-the-island
partibus per crebras Dacorum et Norwagiensium irruptiones
parts by frequent of-the-Danes and Norwegians irruptions
valde corruptis, originalis linguæ proprietatem, et antiquum
greatly corrupted of-the-original tongue the-property and the-ancient
loquendi modum magis observat. Cujus etiam rei non solum
of-speaking manner more observes of-which also thing not only
argumentum, sed et certitudinem inde habere potes, quod
the-argument but also the-certainty thence to-have you-can that
omnes libros Anglicos Bedæ, Rabani, regis Aeluredi, vel aliorum
all books English of-Bede of-Rabanus of-king Alfred or of-others
quorumlibet, sub hujus idiomatis proprietate scriptos invenies.
any under of-this idiom the-property written you-will-find
Unde dicta sit Kambria, et unde Wallia.
whence called has-been Cambria and whence Wales
Dicta est autem Kambria a duce Kambro, Bruti filio.
called was moreover Cambria from the-leader Camber of-Brutus son
Brutus etenim ab Enea, mediantibus avo Ascanio et
Brutus for from Aeneas with-intervening his-grandfather Ascanius and
patre Silvio, descendens, et Trojanorum reliquias, qui in
his-father Silvius descending and of-the-Trojans the-remnants who in
Grecia detenti fuerant, in occiduam hanc insulam ducens, cum
Greece detained had-been into western this island leading when
annis non paucis feliciter regnasset, et tam terræ quam
for-years not few happily he-had-reigned and as-much to-the-land as
genti de suo nomine nomina dedisset, in extremo tandem
to-the-people from his name names had-given at the-last at-length
positus articulo, tribus filiis suis regnum Britanniæ totale
placed moment to-three sons his the-kingdom of-Britain whole
divisit. Primo et primævo, scilicet Locrino, medium illud et
divided to-the-first and eldest namely Locrinus the-middle that and

meditullium inter Humbrum et Sabrinam; quod et ab ejus
center between the-Humber and the-Severn which also from his
nomine Loegria vocatur. Juniori vero, Albanacto, totam trans
name Lloegr is-called to-the-younger however Albanactus all beyond
Humbrum insulæ partem; quæ et ab ejus nomine Albania
the-Humber of-the-island the-part which also from his name Albany
dicitur. Medio vero, scilicet Kambro, totam trans Sabrinam
is-called to-the-middle however namely Camber all beyond the-Severn
regionem; quæ similiter et ejus nomine Kambria nomen
the-region which likewise also his by-name Cambria its-name
accepit. Hinc igitur proprie et vere patria Kambria, hinc
received hence therefore properly and truly the-country Cambria hence
patriotæ Kambri dicuntur, vel Kambrenses. Eorum autem
the-countrymen Cymry are-called or Cambrians of-those however
qui Kembraec, linguam Kambricam, a Kam Græco, hoc est,
who Cymraeg the-tongue Cambrian from cam the-Greek that is
distorto Græco, propter linguarum affinitatem, quæ ob
twisted Greek on-account-of of-the-tongues the-affinity which on-account-of
diutinam in Grecia moram contracta est, dictam asserunt,
the-long in Greece stay contracted was called assert
probabilis quidem et verisimilis est, minus tamen vera relatio.
probable indeed and likely is less nevertheless true the-account
Wallia vero non a Walone duce, vel Wendoloena regina,
Wales however not from Walo the-leader or Gwendolen the-queen
sicut fabulosa Galfridi Arthuri mentitur historia; quia revera
as the-fabulous of-Geoffrey Arthur lies history because in-truth
neutrum eorum apud Kambros invenies; sed a barbarica
neither of-them among the-Welsh you-will-find but from a-barbarous
potius nuncupatione nomen istud inolevit. Saxones enim,
rather naming name this has-grown-up the-Saxons for
occupato regno Britannico, quoniam lingua sua extraneum
with-occupied the-kingdom British since in-tongue their foreign

omne Wallicum vocant, et gentes has sibi extraneas
all Welsh they-call and peoples these to-themselves foreign
Walenses vocabant. Et inde, usque in hodiernum, barbara
Welsh they-called and thence up-to into today by-barbarous
nuncupatione et homines Walenses, et terra Wallia vocitatur.
naming both the-men Welsh and the-land Wales is-called
Sed quoniam de qualitate terræ et quantitate, de
but since about the-quality of-the-land and size about
generatione principum, origine fluminum, et ratione nominum
the-generation of-the-princes the-origin of-the-rivers and the-reason of-the-names
hactenus explicuimus, naturam gentis et proprietatem
thus-far we-have-unfolded the-nature of-the-people and the-property
evolvere subsequenter aggrediemur.
to-unroll next we-shall-undertake
De gentis hujus natura, moribus, et cultu. Et primo, de
about of-people this the-nature character and culture and first about
audacia ejusdem, agilitate, et animositate.
the-boldness of-the-same agility and courage
Gens igitur hæc gens levis et agilis, gens aspera magis
people therefore this a-people light and agile a-people fierce more
quam robusta, gens armis dedita tota. Non enim nobiles hic
than robust a-people to-arms given wholly not for the-nobles here
solum, sed totus populus ad arma paratus: bellica tuba
only but the-whole people for arms ready with-the-war trumpet
sonante, non segnius ab aratro ruricola, quam aulicus
sounding not more-slowly from the-plow the-countryman than the-courtier
ab aula prorumpit ad arma. Non etenim hic, ut alibi,
from the-court bursts-forth to arms not for here as elsewhere

"Redit agricolis labor actus in orbem."
"Returns to-the-farmers labor driven into a-circle."

Solum quippe Martio et Aprili, solum semel aperiunt
only indeed in-March and April only once do-they-open-up
ad avenas: nec bis in æstate, tertioque in hieme, ad
for oats nor twice in summer and-a-third-time in winter for
tritici trituram terras vertendo laborant. Totus propemodum
of-wheat the-threshing the-lands by-turning do-they-labor the-whole almost
populus armentis pascitur et avenis, lacte, caseo, et butyro.
people on-herds feeds and on-oats on-milk on-cheese and on-butter
Carne plenius, pane parcius vesci solent.
on-meat more-fully on-bread more-sparingly to-feed they-are-wont
Non mercimoniis, non navigiis, non mechanicis artibus, nec
not by-trade not by-ships not by-mechanical arts nor
ullo prorsus nisi martio labore vexantur. Patriæ tantum
by-any at-all except martial labor are-they-troubled of-their-country only
tutelæ student, et libertatis: pro patria pugnant, pro
to-the-defense they-are-devoted and of-liberty for their-country they-fight for
libertate laborant: pro quibus non solum ferro dimicare,
liberty they-labor for which not only with-the-sword to-fight
verum etiam vitam dare dulce videtur. Unde et in toro turpe, in
but also life to-give sweet seems whence also in bed shameful in
bello mori decus reputant. Ac si illud poetæ aperte dixerint:
war to-die an-honor they-reckon as if that of-the-poet openly they-had-said

"Procul hinc avertite pacem:
"Far hence turn-away peace:
Nobilitas cum pace perit."
Nobility with peace perishes."

Nec mirum, si non degenerant. Quorum etenim hi reliquiæ
nor wonder if not they-degenerate of-whom for these the-remnants
olim,
once

"Eneadæ in ferrum pro libertate ruebant."
"The-sons-of-Aeneas into the-sword for liberty rushed."

De his igitur hoc spectabile, quod nudi multoties cum
about these therefore this remarkable that bare many-times with
ferro vestitis, inermes cum armatis, pedestres cum equitibus
with-iron clothed unarmed with armed on-foot with horsemen
congredi non verentur. In quo plerumque conflictu sola
to-engage not they-fear in which mostly conflict by-sole
fiunt agilitate et animositate victores; illis quorum poeta
are-made agility and courage victors to-those of-whom the-poet
sic meminit, sicut situ, sic et natura non dissimiles;
so remembered as in-site so also in-nature not unlike

"Populi quos despicit Arctos,
"The-peoples whom looks-down-on the-Bear,
Felices errore suo; quos ille timorum
Happy in-error their; whom that of-fears
Maximus haud urget leti metus. Inde ruendi
The-greatest not presses of-death the-fear. Thence of-rushing
In ferrum mens prona viris, animæque capaces
Into the-sword a-mind prone in-the-men, and-souls capable
Mortis, et ignavum redituræ parcere vitæ."
Of-death, and cowardly to-the-about-to-return to-spare life."

Armis tamen utuntur levibus, agilitatem non impedientibus;
arms however they-use light agility not hindering
loricis minoribus, sagittarum manipulis, et lanceis longis;
hauberks smaller of-arrows bundles and lances long
galeis, et clipeis, ocreisque ferreis rarius. Equis autem
helmets and shields and-greaves iron more-rarely on-horses however
cursoribus et generosis, quos patria gignit, nobiliores ad
swift and noble which their-country breeds the-nobler to
bella feruntur. Pars autem populi major, propter terras
wars are-borne the-part however of-the-people greater on-account-of the-lands
palustres pariter et inæquales, ad prælia pedestres incedunt.
marshy equally and uneven to battles on-foot go
Equites autem, pro locorum et temporum opportunitate,
the-horsemen moreover for of-places and of-times the-convenience
seu fugiendo seu fugando facile pedites fiunt. Nudis
either by-fleeing or by-putting-to-flight easily foot-soldiers become with-bare
autem pedibus ambulant; vel corio crudo consutis barbaris
moreover feet they-walk or with-hide raw sewn barbarous
pro calciamento peronibus utentes. Pacis quoque et juventutis
for footwear boots using of-peace also and of-youth
tempore, silvas et saltus transpenetrare, montium alta
in-the-time the-woods and glades to-penetrate of-mountains the-heights
transcurrere, dies huic labori noctibus continuare, ex
to-run-across the-days to-this labor with-the-nights to-continue on
industria prædiscunt; et quasi sub pace prælia dum
purpose they-learn-beforehand and as-if under peace battles while
cogitant, nunc lanceando, nunc sagittando, bella præludunt.
they-think now by-lancing now by-shooting wars they-rehearse
Illud autem in hoc loco notandum videtur, quod
that however in this place to-be-noted seems that
Anglorum rex Henricus secundus, diebus nostris, imperatori
of-the-English king Henry second in-our days to-the-emperor

Constantinopolitano Manueli, super insulæ Britannicæ situ
of-Constantinople Manuel about of-the-island British the-site
ac natura, magisque notabilibus, literis et nuntiis inquirenti,
and nature and-more notable-things by-letters and messengers inquiring
inter cetera hoc quasi præcipue notabile rescripsit. In
among other-things this as-if especially notable wrote-back in
quadam insulæ parte sunt gentes, quæ Walenses dicuntur,
a-certain of-the-island part are peoples who Welsh are-called
tantæ audaciæ et audacitatis, ut nudi cum armatis
of-so-great boldness and daring that bare with armed
congredi non vereantur; adeo ut sanguinem pro patria
to-engage not they-fear so-much that blood for their-country
fundere promptissimæ,
to-shed most-ready

"Vitamque velint pro laude pacisci."
"And-life they-would-wish for praise to-bargain."

Quod et mirandum, quia bestiæ per totam propemodum
which also to-be-wondered-at because the-beasts through the-whole nearly
insulæ faciem quasi mansuescunt, homines vero prædicti
of-the-island face as-if grow-tame the-men however aforesaid
bestiales mansuescere nesciunt.
bestial to-grow-tame know-not
In tanta quoque multitudine ob pacem eis indultam
in so-great also a-multitude on-account-of the-peace to-them granted
hic feræ, præcipueque cervi et damæ abundant, ut in
here wild-beasts and-especially stags and does abound that in
borealibus insulæ finibus versus Pech, nostris diebus, canes
the-northern of-the-island bounds toward the-Peak in-our days the-dogs

eorumque duces in impetu numerositatis suæ ad interitum
and-their leaders in the-rush of-number their to the-death
cervi suppeditaverint.
the-stags trampled

SUPPER, HOSPITALITY, GROOMING, AND WIT

The Welsh eat soberly and fast till evening, yet no one among them begs, for every house is open: a guest who gives up his arms and lets his feet be washed is received, entertained by girls and harps, served on rushes and flat bread by hosts who eat last, and sleeps with the household on rushes by the fire. Both sexes cut their hair round, they keep their teeth white with hazel and wool, and the men shave all but the mustache, as Caesar noted. They are quick-witted, skilled in the harp, pipes, and crwth, in pleading, and in verse, with many bards, and they love alliteration, as the English do, though the French ignore it.

De sobria ejusdem cœna, et parcimonia.
about the-sober of-the-same supper and thrift
Præterea, nec crapulæ dediti nec temulentiæ; — quibus
moreover neither to-surfeit given nor to-drunkenness in-whom
nec cœnæ nec vestium ulla sumptuositas, sed in equis
neither of-supper nor of-clothes any sumptuousness but on horses
solum et armis, eorumque apparatibus, tota versatur
only and arms and-their equipment the-whole is-turned
intentio; quibus ad patriæ prædæque tuitionem mens
intention in-whom for of-the-country and-of-plunder the-defense the-mind
semper erecta; — a mane in vesperam jejuni, totum
always erect from morning into evening fasting the-whole
rebus agendis animum, totum consiliis et providentiæ diem
to-things to-be-done mind the-whole to-counsels and providence the-day
donant. Vespere vero cœna sobria. Et si forte nulla vel
they-give in-the-evening however a-supper sober and if by-chance none or

minima fuerit, vesperam alteram patienter exspectant.
very-small it-shall-have-been the-evening next patiently they-await
Et tamen nec fame nec frigore tardati, ad hostiles
and nevertheless neither by-hunger nor by-cold slowed for hostile
irrogandum invasiones noctes tenebrosas diligunt et procellas.
to-be-inflicted invasions nights dark they-love and storms
De hospitalitate et dapsilitate.
about hospitality and lavishness
Nemo in hac gente mendicus. Omnium enim hospitia
no-one in this people a-beggar of-all for the-houses
omnibus sunt communia. Largitatem quippe, et præcipue
to-all are common generosity indeed and especially
dapsilitatem, cunctis virtutibus anteponunt. Adeo nempe
lavishness to-all virtues they-prefer so-much indeed
hospitalis hic gratia communione lætatur, quod itinerantibus
hospitable here the-grace in-community rejoices that to-travelers
ea nec offeratur nec petatur. Tantum etenim, domum
it neither is-offered nor is-sought only for the-house
intrantes, protinus arma custodiæ tradunt: deinde statim
entering at-once their-arms to-keeping they-hand-over then at-once
aquam offerentibus si pedes ablui permiserint, hospitio
water to-those-offering if their-feet to-be-washed they-shall-have-allowed in-hospitality
suscepti sunt: aquæ nimirum pedibus oblatio hospitalis apud
received they-are of-water indeed for-the-feet the-offering hospitable among
hanc gentem est invitatio. Obsequium autem oblatum si
this people is the-invitation the-service however offered if
forte recusant, matutinas recreationes et non hospitia volunt.
by-chance they-refuse morning refreshments and not lodgings they-wish
Per turbas igitur et familias, capite sibi præfecto,
in bands therefore and households with-a-head over-themselves set
gentis hujus juventus incedit; solum armis et otio data,
of-people this the-youth goes only to-arms and leisure given

patriæque defensioni promptissima. Unde et tecta
and-of-their-country to-the-defense most-ready whence also the-roofs
cujuslibet veluti propria secure subintrant.
of-anyone as-if own securely they-enter
Qui matutinis autem horis adveniunt, puellarum affatibus
those-who in-the-morning moreover hours arrive of-girls by-the-talk
et citharарum modulis usque ad vesperam delectantur.
and of-harps by-the-measures up-to to evening are-delighted
Domus enim hic quælibet puellas habet, et citharas, ad hoc
house for here every girls has and harps for this
deputatas. Unde et duo notabilia hic reperies; quia zelotypiæ
assigned whence also two notable-things here you-will-find that of-jealousy
vitio sicut nulla magis quam Hybernica, sic nulla minus
by-the-vice as none more than the-Irish so none less
quam Kambrica gens laborat; omnes quoque de curia seu
than the-Welsh people labors all also of the-court or
familia viri, citra doctrinam omnem, citharizandi per se
household the-men without teaching any of-harping by themselves
peritiam tenent. Vespere vero, cessantibus jam adventantium
skill hold in-the-evening however with-ceasing now of-the-arrivals
turbis, juxta numerum virorum et dignitatem, juxta
the-bands according-to the-number of-the-men and the-dignity according-to
domus quoque facultatem, exhibitio procuratur. Ubi
of-the-house also the-means the-entertainment is-provided where
non ferculis multis, non saporibus et gularum irritamentis
not with-dishes many not with-flavors and of-gullets incitements
coquina gravatur; non mensis, non mappis, non manutergiis,
the-kitchen is-burdened not with-tables not with-cloths not with-napkins
domus ornatur. Naturæ magis student quam nitori. Unde
the-house is-adorned on-nature more they-are-intent than on-elegance whence
cœnantibus, non binis ut alibi, sed ternis, scirpis et herbæ
to-those-dining not by-twos as elsewhere but by-threes on-rushes and on-grass

viridi, scutellis etiam latis et amplis, fercula cuncta simul
green in-dishes also broad and large the-courses all together
apponunt. Pani quoque tenui et lato, quotidiano labore
they-set-before on-bread also thin and broad by-daily labor
decocto, [cujusmodi in veteri instrumento Lagana dici
baked of-which-kind in the-old testament lagana to-be-called
solent], interdum pulmentaria supponunt. Talibus olim usus est
are-wont sometimes the-relishes they-set-under such once used has
mensis puer ille nobilis, de cujus et hi se genere jactant,
tables the-boy that noble from whose also these themselves race boast
et cujus adhuc ex parte mores observant; testante poeta,
and whose still in part manners they-observe with-witnessing the-poet

"Heu mensas consumpsimus, inquit Iulus."
"Alas the-tables we-have-consumed, said Iulus."

Cum autem certatim obsequiis familia tota deserviat, soli
when however vying with-services the-household whole serves alone
præ ceteris hospes et hospita semper astando solicite
beyond the-others the-host and the-hostess always by-standing-by anxiously
cuncta perlustrant; nec unquam, nisi post plenam omnium
all-things survey nor ever except after the-full of-all
refectionem, cibos sumunt; ut si quis forte defectus
refreshment food do-they-take so-that if any by-chance shortfall
accidere debeat, in ipsos cadat.
to-happen should on themselves it-may-fall
Demum autem, hora soporis instante, publico strato per
at-last moreover with-the-hour of-sleep impending on-a-public bed along
latera domus in longum, juncis solum tenuiter insertis,
the-sides of-the-house in length with-rushes on-the-floor thinly strewn
panno quoque duro et aspero, quem patria parit, qui et
with-a-cloth also hard and rough which the-country produces which also

vulgari vocabulo Brachan dicitur, superposito, communiter
by-a-common name brychan is-called laid-over in-common
accumbunt. Nec alius eis nocte cultus quam die: pallio
they-lie-down nor other for-them at-night dress than by-day with-a-cloak
namque tenui et interula solum omni tempore frigora pellunt:
for thin and a-shirt only at-every time the-colds they-repel
igne tamen sicut die, sic et nocte tota, ad pedes accenso,
with-the-fire however as by-day so also by-night all at the-feet lit
propinquoque pariter concubantium calore multum adjuti.
and-by-the-near equally of-those-lying-together warmth much helped
Cum autem vel latus inferius tori duritia lassari, vel
when however either the-side lower of-the-bed by-the-hardness to-be-wearied or
etiam nimio superius algore frigescere cœperit, illico ad
also with-too-great upper cold to-grow-chill has-begun forthwith to
ignem prosiliunt, de cujus beneficio promptissima utriusque
the-fire they-leap-forth of whose benefit most-ready of-each
incommodi remedia quærunt; et sic ad strata revertentes,
discomfort the-remedies they-seek and so to their-beds returning
seque urgente gravamine crebro vertentes, alternis vicibus
and-themselves with-urging burden often turning by-alternate turns
latus unum frigori, alterum vero duritiæ donant.
side one to-the-cold the-other however to-the-hardness they-give
De crinium tonsura, dentium cultu, et barbæ rasura.
about of-the-hair the-cutting of-the-teeth the-care and of-the-beard the-shaving
Tam mulieribus autem in hac gente, quam etiam maribus,
as-much for-the-women moreover in this people as also for-the-men
ad aures et oculos tonsura rotunda. Mulieres autem peplo
to the-ears and eyes the-tonsure round the-women moreover with-a-veil
candido et amplo, more Parthico, in coronam per
white and ample in-the-manner Parthian into a-crown by
gradus erecto capita velant.
steps raised their-heads veil

Dentes vero in utroque sexu, præ omni quam vidimus
the-teeth however in each sex beyond every which we-have-seen
natione, propensius curant: quos assidua coryli viridis
nation more-assiduously they-care-for which by-constant of-hazel green
confricatione, laneique panni purgatione, tanquam eburneos
rubbing and-of-woolen cloth by-cleaning as-if of-ivory
reddunt. Eorundem etiam culturæ gratia, alimentis abstinent
they-render of-the-same also of-the-care for-the-sake from-foods they-abstain
a calidis; frigidis autem, tepidis, et temperatis semper utuntur.
from hot cold however lukewarm and temperate always they-use
Barbam viri, præter gernoboda solum, radere solent. Et
the-beard the-men except the-mustache only to-shave are-wont and
hanc non de novo, sed ab antiquo, longisque retro
this not from new but from of-old and-long back
seculis, consuetudinem tenent: sicut ex libro de gestis
by-ages the-custom they-hold as from the-book about the-deeds
Julii Cesaris, ab ipso conscripto, perpendi potest. Ubi et
of-Julius Caesar by him written to-be-weighed it-can where also
hæc verba reperies; Britonum gens "omni parte corporis
these words you-will-find of-the-Britons the-people in-every part of-the-body
abrasa, præter superius labrum." Solent enim, ut agiliores
shaved except the-upper lip they-are-wont for that more-agile
fierent, etiam comis capita nudare; casum Absolonis,
they-might-become also of-hair their-heads to-bare the-fate of-Absalom
quoniam silvas et nemora sæpe percurrunt, vitare volentes.
since woods and groves often they-run-through to-avoid wishing
Unde et usque in hodiernum gens hæc inferiorem quoque,
whence also up-to into today people this the-lower also
præ gentibus aliis, pilositatem magis abradit.
beyond peoples other hairiness more shaves

Refert etiam Julius, quod Britones temporibus illis, martio
relates also Julius that the-Britons in-times those in-martial
certamine congressuri, facies suas vitreo quodam unguento
contest about-to-engage faces their with-glassy a-certain ointment
liniebant; unde et easdem tam luridas habebant et
smeared whence also them so pale they-had and
perlucidas, ut vix in eorum vultus, præsertim sole
transparent that scarcely on their faces especially with-the-sun
repercusso, hostes aciem intendere prævaluissent.
reflected the-enemies their-sight to-fix had-been-able
De ingenii acumine et subtilitate.
about of-wit the-sharpness and subtlety
Item, ingenii gens subtilis et acuti. Cuicunque studio
likewise of-wit a-people subtle and sharp to-whatever study
animum applicuerint, venæ divitis dote præcellunt.
mind they-shall-have-applied of-vein rich by-the-endowment they-excel
Totaque communiter hæc natio, præ gentibus aliis occiduo
and-all in-common this nation beyond peoples other in-the-western
climate degentibus, arguta nimis est et astuta.
clime living shrewd too is and astute
In musicis instrumentis, tanta sonoritatis dulcedine aures
in musical instruments with-so-great of-sonority sweetness the-ears
deliniunt et demulcent; tanta modulorum celeritate
they-soothe and charm with-so-great of-the-measures speed
pariter et subtilitate feruntur; tantamque discrepantium sub
equally and subtlety they-are-borne and-so-great of-discordant-notes under
tam præcipiti digitorum rapacitate consonantiam præstant;
so headlong of-the-fingers rapidity a-concord they-produce
quantam, ut breviter transeam, in tribus nationibus,
as-much-as that briefly I-may-pass-over in three nations
titulo De musicis instrumentis, Hibernica Topographia
under-the-title On musical instruments Irish Topography

nostra declarat in hæc verba. “Mirum quod, in tanta tamque
our declares in these words wonderful that in so-great and-so
præcipiti digitorum rapacitate, musica servatur proportio;
headlong of-the-fingers rapidity musical is-kept the-proportion
et arte per omnia indemni, inter crispatos modulos,
and with-art in all-things unimpaired among the-quivering measures
organaque multipliciter intricata, tam suavi velocitate, tam
and-the-organa manifoldly intricate with-so sweet speed so
dispari paritate, tam discordi concordia, consona redditur et
unequal parity so discordant concord harmonious is-rendered and
completur melodia. Seu diatessaron seu diapente chordæ
completed the-melody whether the-fourth or the-fifth the-strings
concrepent, semper tamen a B molli incipiunt, et in
sound-together always nevertheless from B flat they-begin and into
idem redeunt, ut cuncta sub jocundæ sonoritatis dulcedine
the-same return that all-things under of-pleasant sonority the-sweetness
compleantur. Tam subtiliter modulos intrant et exeunt; sicque,
may-be-completed so subtly the-measures they-enter and go-out and-thus
sub obtuso grossioris chordæ sonitu, gracilium tinnitus
under the-dull of-the-thicker string sound of-the-slender-strings the-tinklings
licentius ludunt, latentius delectant, lasciviusque demulcent;
more-freely play more-secretly delight and-more-wantonly soothe
ut pars artis maxima videatur artem velare, tanquam
that the-part of-art greatest seems the-art to-veil as-if

“‘Si lateat, prosit; ferat ars deprensa pudorem.’
“‘If it-lie-hid it-may-profit; may-bring art detected shame.’

“Hinc accidit ut ea, quæ subtilius intuentibus, et artis
hence it-happens that those-things which more-subtly to-those-looking and of-art
arcana acute discernentibus, internas et ineffabiles comparant
the-secrets sharply discerning inner and ineffable procure

animi delicias, ea non attendentibus, sed tanquam videndo
of-mind delights those not to-those-attending but as-if by-seeing
non videntibus, et audiendo non intelligentibus, aures potius
not seeing and by-hearing not understanding the-ears rather
onerent quam delectent, et tanquam confuso inordinatoque
burden than delight and as-if by-confused and-disordered
strepitu invitis auditoribus fastidia pariant tædiosa." Tribus
din in-unwilling hearers loathings beget tedious three
autem utuntur instrumentis; cithara, tibiis, et choro.
moreover they-use instruments the-harp pipes and the-crwth
In causis, actionibus, et foro civili, captando, insinuando,
in suits actions and the-forum civil by-capturing by-insinuating
inveniendo, disponendo, refutando, et confirmando, nullas
by-inventing by-disposing by-refuting and by-confirming no
penitus naturalis rhetoricæ partes omittunt.
at-all of-natural rhetoric parts do-they-omit
In cantilenis rhythmicis, et dictamine, tam subtiles
in songs rhythmic and composition so subtle
inveniuntur, ut miræ et exquisitæ inventionis lingua
they-are-found that of-wonderful and exquisite invention in-tongue
propria tam verborum quam sententiarum proferant
own as-much of-words as of-sentences they-bring-forth
exornationes. Unde et poetas, quos Bardos vocant, ad hoc
ornaments whence also poets whom bards they-call for this
deputatos in hac natione multos invenies; juxta illud,
assigned in this nation many you-will-find according-to that

"Plurima concreti fuderunt carmina Bardi."
"Very-many in-company poured-forth songs the-bards."

Præ cunctis tamen rhetoricis exornationibus, annominatione
beyond all however rhetorical ornaments annomination
magis utuntur; eaque præcipue specie, quæ primas
more they-use and-that especially in-the-species which the-first
dictionum literas vel syllabas convenientia jungit.
of-words letters or syllables by-agreement joins
Adeo igitur hoc verborum ornatu duæ nationes, Angli
so-much therefore with-this of-words ornament two nations the-English
scilicet et Kambri, in omni sermone exquisito utuntur, ut nihil
namely and the-Welsh in every speech exquisite use that nothing
ab his eleganter dictum, nullum egregium, nullum nisi rude
by them elegantly said no excellent no except rude
et agreste censeatur eloquium, si non schematis hujus lima
and rustic is-judged eloquence if not of-figure this with-the-file
plene fuerit expolitum. Sicut Britannice in hunc modum;
fully it-shall-have-been polished as in-British in this manner

"Dychaun Dyu da dy unic."
"Can God good to-the lonely-one."
"Erbyn dibuilh puilh paraut."
"Against folly wisdom ready."

Anglice vero sic;
in-English however so

"Godis to gedere gamen and wisdom."
"Good-is to- -gether joy and wisdom."
"Ne halt nocht alsor isaid, ne al sorghe atwite."
"Not holds naught all-sore said, nor all sorrow blame."
"Betere is red thene rap, and liste thene lither streingthe."
"Better is counsel than haste, and craft than wicked strength."

In Latino quoque haud dissimiliter eloquio, eandem
in Latin also not dissimilarly eloquence the-same
exornationem frequens est invenire. In hunc modum Virgilius;
ornament frequent it-is to-find in this manner Virgil

"Tales casus Cassandra canebat."
"Such chances Cassandra sang."

Et illud ejusdem ad Augustum;
and that of-the-same to Augustus

"Dum dubitet natura marem faceretve puellam,
"While should-doubt nature a-male or-should-make a-girl,
Natus es, O pulcher, pene puella, puer."
Born you-are, O handsome, almost a-girl, boy."

In nullis tamen linguis, quas novimus, hæc exornatio adeo
in no however tongues which we-know this ornament so
ut in prioribus duabus est usitata.
as in the-former two is used
Mirum autem quod Gallica lingua, alias tam ornata, hunc
wonderful however that the-French tongue otherwise so ornate this
verborum ornatum, ab aliis tam usitatum, prorsus ignorat.
of-words ornament by others so used wholly does-not-know
Nec ego tamen id crediderim, quod priores populi duo, tam
nor I however that would-believe that the-former peoples two so
diversi ab invicem et adversi, in hoc verborum ornatu ex
different from each-other and opposed in this of-words ornament from
arte conveniant, sed potius ex usu longo: qui, quia placuit
art agree but rather from use long which because it-pleased
solum, et facili similium ad similia transitu aures demulcet,
alone and by-easy of-like-things to like-things passage the-ears soothes

per succedentia tempora inolevit. Sicut Tullius, in libro De
through succeeding times has-grown-up as Tully in the-book On
Elocutione, de talibus qui usum habent et non artem loquitur,
Elocution about such who use have and not art speaks
dicens; "Ceteri, cum legunt orationes bonas, aut poemata,
saying the-others when they-read orations good or poems
probant oratores et poetas; neque intelligunt quare commoti
approve the-orators and poets nor understand why moved
probent; quod eo scire non possunt, ubi sit, aut quid
they-approve because this to-know not they-can where it-may-be or what
sit, quomodo factum sit id, quod eos maxime delectet."
it-may-be how done it-may-be that which them most delights

SINGING, JESTS, AND BOLDNESS

The Welsh sing in many parts at once, and the northern English in two, which Gerald thinks they took from the Danes and Norwegians. The Welsh delight in witty jests and puns, of which Gerald gives examples, as Macrobius gives Cicero's and Hannibal's. All of them, the least as well as the greatest, speak boldly before princes, as Romans and French do and English, Saxons, and Germans do not, from the warmth of their Trojan origin; their names and words keep traces of Greek and Latin.

De symphonicis eorum cantibus, et cantilenis organicis.
about the-symphonic their songs and singing in-parts
In musico modulamine, non uniformiter, ut alibi, sed
in musical measure not uniformly as elsewhere but
multipliciter, multisque modis et modulis, cantilenas emittunt.
manifoldly and-in-many modes and measures songs they-send-forth
Adeo ut in turba canentium, sicut huic genti mos est,
so-much that in a-crowd of-singers as for-this people the-custom is

quot videas capita, tot audias carmina discriminaque
as-many-as you-may-see heads so-many you-may-hear songs and-distinctions
vocum varia, in unam denique sub B mollis dulcedine
of-voices various into one finally under of-B flat the-sweetness
blanda consonantiam, et organicam convenientia melodiam.
smooth a-consonance and organ-like agreeing melody
In borealibus quoque majoris Britanniæ partibus, trans
in the-northern also of-greater Britain parts beyond
Humbriam scilicet, Eboraci finibus, Anglorum populi, qui
the-Humber namely of-York in-the-bounds of-the-English the-peoples who
partes illas inhabitant, simili canendo symphonica utuntur
parts those inhabit with-like in-singing symphonic use
harmonia: binis tamen solummodo tonorum differentiis, et
harmony with-two however only of-tones differences and
vocum modulando varietatibus; una inferius submurmurante,
of-voices by-modulating varieties one below murmuring
altera vero superne demulcente pariter et delectante. Nec
the-other however above soothing equally and delighting not
arte tamen, sed usu longævo, et quasi in naturam mora
by-art however but by-use long-lasting and as-if into nature by-delay
diutina jam converso, hæc vel illa sibi gens hanc specialitatem
long now turned this or that for-itself people this specialty
comparavit. Qui adeo apud utramque invaluit, et altas jam
has-acquired which so-much among both has-prevailed and deep now
radices posuit, ut nihil hic simpliciter, nihil nisi multipliciter
roots has-put that nothing here simply nothing except manifoldly
ut apud priores, vel saltem dupliciter ut apud sequentes,
as among the-former or at-least doubly as among the-latter
melice proferri consueverit: pueris etiam, quod magis
musically to-be-uttered is-wont with-boys even what more

admirandum, et fere infantibus, cum primum a fletibus
to-be-wondered-at and almost infants when first from weeping
in cantus erumpunt, eandem modulationem observantibus.
into song they-break the-same modulation observing
Angli vero, quoniam non generaliter omnes, sed boreales
the-English however since not generally all but the-northern
solum, hujusmodi vocum utuntur modulationibus, credo quod
only of-this-kind of-voices use modulations I-believe that
a Dacis et Norwagiensibus, qui partes illas insulæ
from the-Danes and Norwegians who parts those of-the-island
frequentius occupare, ac diutius obtinere solebant, sicut
more-often to-occupy and longer to-hold were-wont as
loquendi affinitatem, sic et canendi proprietatem contraxerunt.
of-speaking the-affinity so also of-singing the-property they-contracted
De verborum facetia et urbanitate.
about of-words the-wit and urbanity
De curia vero et familia viri, ut et circumstantibus risum
of the-court however and household the-men that both in-the-bystanders laughter
moveant, sibique loquendo laudem comparent, facetiam
they-may-move and-for-themselves by-speaking praise may-procure wit
in sermone plurimam observant; dum vel sales vel lædoria,
in speech very-much they-observe while either witticisms or insults
nunc levi lingua, nunc mordaci, sub æquivocationis vel
now with-light tongue now with-biting under of-equivocation or
amphiboliæ nebula, relatione diversa, transpositione verborum
of-amphiboly the-cloud by-relation diverse by-transposition of-words
et trajectione, subtiles et dicaces emittunt. Unde et
and by-trajection subtle and witty they-send-forth whence also
exempla quædam, explanandi gratia, subsequenter annecti
examples certain of-explaining for-the-sake next to-be-attached
non superfluum reputavi. Tegengel nomen est provinciæ apud
not superfluous I-reckoned Tegeingl the-name is of-a-province in

Venedotiam, cui dominabatur David Oenei filius; quam
Gwynedd over-which ruled David of-Owain son which
et quidam frater ejus quandoque possederat. Hoc idem
also a-certain brother his once had-possessed this same
etiam nomen fuit mulieris cujusdam, quam uterque habuisse
also name was of-a-woman certain whom each to-have-had
dicebatur. Unde et a quodam dictum est; "Injurium est
was-said whence also by a-certain-man said it-was unjust it-is
David Tegengel habere, cum frater ejusdem ante Tegengel
David Tegeingl to-have when brother of-his before Tegeingl
habuerit." Item, cum ecclesiam Menevensem provinciæ
had-had likewise when the-church of-St-Davids of-the-province
princeps, Resus filius Griphini, cum suorum multitudine,
the-prince Rhys son of-Gruffydd with of-his-men a-multitude
peregrinandi causa aliquando devotius adisset, factis
of-pilgrimage for-the-sake once very-devoutly had-approached with-made
oblationibus, et missarum solemnitate completa, accessit ad
offerings and of-masses with-the-solemnity completed approached to
eum juvenis quidam in ipsa ecclesia, seque filium ejus esse
him a-youth certain in the-very church and-himself son his to-be
publice protestando, et ad pedem ipsius se prosternendo,
publicly by-protesting and at the-foot his himself by-prostrating
quatinus eidem rei certitudinem candentis ferri examine
that for-the-same matter the-certainty of-glowing of-iron by-the-test
probare liceret cum lacrimis humiliter imploravit. Quo
to-prove might-be-allowed with tears humbly implored with-which
verbo ad familiam et filios ejusdem duos, qui jam
word to the-household and sons of-the-same two who already
exierant, extra delato, subjecit juvenis quidam; "Nec mirum.
had-gone out carried added a-youth certain nor wonder
Alii enim aurum obtulerunt, alii argentum. Hic autem,
some for gold offered others silver he however

quoniam utroque caruit, quod habuit obtulit, scilicet ferrum;"
since of-both he-lacked what he-had offered namely iron
paupertatis incommodum juveni dicaciter improperans.
of-poverty the-discomfort on-the-youth wittily casting-up
Cum de domo quadam forti, et quasi inexpugnabili, sermo
when about a-house certain strong and as-if impregnable talk
a quibusdam factus fuisset, dixit unus eorum; "Vere domus
by some made had-been said one of-them truly house
hæc fortis est; quia si in ea esca fuerit, nunquam erit
this strong is because if in it food shall-have-been never will-it-be
conquisita:" in dominum domus ambiguo verborum
conquered against the-lord of-the-house by-ambiguous of-words
involucro avaritiæ notam intorquens: potuit enim conquisita
wrapping of-avarice the-mark twisting could for conquered
ad utrumque referri, et ad escam et ad domum.
to both be-referred both to food and to house
Similiter et dominam domus cujusdam quidam avaritiæ
likewise also the-mistress of-a-house certain a-certain-man of-avarice
notans, dixit; "Hoc solum in hospita nostra reprehensibile
marking said this only in hostess our reprehensible
invenio, quod parum butyri ex consuetudine sali
I-find that little of-butter from custom on-the-salt
imponit:" cum accessorium rei principali soleat apponi,
she-puts since the-accessory to-the-thing principal is-wont to-be-added
subtili verborum trajectione, quoniam in quantitate abundare
by-subtle of-words trajection since in quantity to-abound
videbatur, accessorium principale constituens.
seemed the-accessory the-principal making
Similia, in Macrobio De Saturnalibus, philosophorum et
like-things in Macrobius On the-Saturnalia of-philosophers and
magnorum virorum dicta, scripto commendata hæc et
of-great men sayings to-writing committed these and

hujusmodi multa reperies. Cicero "cum Lentulum generum
of-this-kind many you-will-find Cicero when Lentulus son-in-law
suum, exiguæ staturæ hominem, longo gladio accinctum
his of-small stature a-man with-a-long sword girded
vidisset; 'Quis,' inquit, 'generum meum ad gladium alligavit?'"
had-seen who he-says son-in-law my to the-sword has-tied
Accessorium, causa præscripta, in principale convertens.
the-accessory for-the-reason described into the-principal turning
Idem, cum Quinti Ciceronis fratris "imaginem clipeatam
the-same when of-Quintus Cicero his-brother the-portrait on-a-shield
cum ingentibus lineamentis usque ad pectus ex more pictam
with huge lineaments up-to to the-breast from custom painted
vidisset, ait; 'Frater meus dimidius major est quam totus.'"
had-seen said brother my half greater is than whole
Cum soror Fausti mœchum haberet fullonem; "Mirum,"
when the-sister of-Faustus as-lover had a-fuller strange
inquit frater, "sororem meam maculam habere, cum fullonem
he-says brother my sister a-stain to-have when a-fuller
habeat."
she-has
Cum Hanibali Antyochus copias bellatorum et armorum
when to-Hannibal Antiochus forces of-warriors and of-arms
ingentes in campis ostenderet, quas bellum facturus
huge on the-plains showed which a-war about-to-make
populo Romano comparaverat, "Putasne," inquit, "O
on-the-people Roman he-had-prepared do-you-think he-says O
Hanibal, hæc omnia satis esse Romanis?" Hanibal, imbelles
Hannibal these all enough to-be for-the-Romans Hannibal the-unwarlike
militum ejusdem cohortes eludens, "Plane," inquit, "satis
of-soldiers of-his cohorts mocking plainly he-says enough
esse credo Romanis hæc, etsi avari sint." Lepide satis et
to-be I-believe for-the-Romans these even-if greedy they-be wittily enough and

acerbe respondens: cum rex de æstimanda æquiparatione
bitterly answering since the-king about to-be-weighed comparison
quæreret, ille vero de præda dixerit.
asked he however about plunder spoke
De loquendi audacia et securitate.
about of-speaking the-boldness and assurance
Loquendi audaciam, et respondendi fiduciam, coram
of-speaking boldness and of-answering confidence before
principibus et magnatibus, cunctis communiter, etiam
princes and magnates to-all in-common even
minimis in plebe sicut majoribus, in omni negotio natura
to-the-least among the-people as to-the-greater in every business nature
dedit.
gave
Romanos et Francos hanc eandem naturæ dotem habere
the-Romans and the-French this same of-nature endowment to-have
videmus: non autem Anglos, sicut nec Saxones a quibus
we-see not however the-English as nor the-Saxons from whom
descenderant, nec Germanos. Sin autem servitutem causaris in
they-had-descended nor the-Germans if however servitude you-allege in
Anglis, et hunc eis inde defectum assignas; in Saxonibus
the-English and this to-them thence defect you-assign in the-Saxons
et Germanis, qui et libertate gaudent, et eodem tamen
and Germans who both in-liberty rejoice and by-the-same nevertheless
vitio vexantur, ratio non provenit.
vice are-troubled the-reason not comes-out
Saxones igitur et Germani, a gelida poli regione cui
the-Saxons therefore and Germans from the-frozen of-the-pole region which
subjacent, hanc contrahunt et naturæ geliditatem. Angli
they-lie-under this contract also of-nature frigidity the-English
quoque, quanquam olim a regione remoti, originali tamen
also although once from the-region removed by-original however

natura tam exteriorem in candore qualitatem, quam etiam
nature as-much the-outer in whiteness quality as also
interiorem illam geliditatis, eadem ex causa, liquida scilicet et
the-inner that of-frigidity the-same from cause liquid namely and
gelida complexionis natura, proprietatem inseparabiliter tenent.
cold of-complexion nature the-property inseparably hold
Britones autem e diverso ex calida et adusta Dardaniæ
the-Britons however on the-contrary from the-hot and scorched of-Dardania
plaga, quanquam in fines hos temperatos advecti, quia
region although into bounds these temperate brought because

"Cœlum, non animum mutant, qui trans mare currunt,"
"The-sky, not the-mind they-change, who across the-sea run,"

tam exterius fuscum illum cognatumque terræ colorem,
as-much outwardly dark that and-kindred to-the-earth color
quam etiam naturalem interius ex adusto humore calorem,
as also natural inwardly from scorched humor heat
unde securitas, originaliter trahunt.
whence assurance originally they-draw
Tres etenim populi, Romani Enea duce, Franci Antenore,
three for peoples the-Romans with-Aeneas leading the-French with-Antenor
Britones Bruto, post Trojanum excidium,
the-Britons with-Brutus after the-Trojan destruction

"Reliquiæ Danaum atque immitis Achillis,"
"The-remnants of-the-Greeks and of-cruel Achilles,"

ab Asia in Europam varias ad partes profugerunt. Tribus
from Asia into Europe to-various to parts fled to-three
igitur his nationibus hinc animositas, hinc nobilitas, et tanta
therefore these nations hence courage hence nobility and so-great

generositatis antiquitas; hinc perspicacis ingenii subtilitas, et
of-noble-birth antiquity hence of-perceptive wit subtlety and
loquendi securitas.
of-speaking assurance
Inter has autem gentes, quæ Trojani reliquiæ sunt excidii,
among these however peoples who of-the-Trojan the-remnants are destruction
soli Britones, quia multis forte post eversionem patriæ
alone the-Britons because for-many perhaps after the-overthrow of-their-country
annorum curriculis in Grecia detenti, tardius in occiduos
of-years courses in Greece detained more-slowly into western
hos Europæ fines advecti sunt, et primæva gentis suæ
these of-Europe bounds brought were both the-primitive of-people their
vocabula, et originalis linguæ proprietatem abundantius
names and of-the-original tongue the-property more-abundantly
retinuerunt. Invenies etenim in his hæc nomina; Oeneus,
retained you-will-find for among these these names Owain
Resus, Eneas, Hector, Achilles, Eliodorus, Theodorus, Ajax,
Rhys Einion Hector Achilles Elidyr Tewdwr Ajax
Evander, Ulixes, Elena, Elissa, Wendoloena, et alia multa
Evander Ulysses Helen Elissa Gwendolen and others many
in hunc modum antiquitatem redolentia.
in this manner antiquity smelling-of
Notandum etiam, quod verba linguæ Britannicæ omnia
to-be-noted also that the-words of-the-tongue British all
fere vel Græco conveniunt vel Latino. Græci Ydor aquam
almost either with-Greek agree or with-Latin the-Greeks hydor water
vocant, Britones Duur; salem Hal, Britones Halein; Mis,
call the-Britons dwr salt hal the-Britons halen mis
Tis, pro ego et tu, Britones autem Mi, Ti; Onoma,
tis for I and you the-Britons however mi ti onoma
Enou; Penta, Deca, Pimp, Dec. Item Latini frenum dicunt,
enw penta deca pump deg likewise the-Latins frenum say

et tripodem, gladium, et loricam; Britones froin, trebeth,
and tripodem gladium and loricam the-Britons ffrwyn trybedd
cledhif, et lhuric: unico unig, cane can, belua beleu.
cleddyf and llurig unico unig cane can belua bele

ON PROPHECY

Among the Welsh are the awenyddion, who, consulted on a doubt, fall into a frenzy, answer amid rambling speech, must be roused by force, and remember nothing afterward; their gift comes in dreams, like the cup Ezra drank. Prophets are rare outside the Britons and their Trojan forebears, among whom Calchas and Cassandra foretold the fall of Troy, and both Merlins foretold the Saxon and Norman conquests. Gerald holds that such prophecy comes from God's Spirit, which is given even to unbelievers and the wicked, like Balaam and Caiaphas, and he answers the charge of Merlin's frenzy with Saul's among the prophets.

De divinatoribus in hac gente, et quasi arreptitiis.
about the-soothsayers in this people and as-if possessed
Sunt et in hoc Kambriæ populo, quod alibi non reperies,
there-are also in this of-Wales people what elsewhere not you-will-find
viri nonnulli, quos Awennithion vocant, quasi mente ductos.
men some whom awenyddion they-call as-if by-mind led
Hi super aliquo consulti ambiguo, statim frementes spiritu
these about something consulted doubtful at-once raging in-spirit
quasi extra se rapiuntur, et tanquam arreptitii fiunt.
as-if outside themselves are-rapt and as-if possessed they-become
Nec incontinenti tamen quod desideratur edisserunt: sed
nor immediately however what is-desired do-they-set-forth but
per ambages multas, inter varios quibus effluunt sermones,
through windings many among various which they-pour-out speeches
nugatorios magis et vanos quam sibi cohærentes, sed
trifling more and vain than to-themselves cohering but

omnes tamen ornatos, in aliquo demum verbi diverticulo
all nevertheless adorned in some at-last of-a-word turn
qui responsum solerter observat quod petit accipiet
he-who the-answer skillfully watches what he-seeks will-receive
enucleatum. Et sic denique de hac extasi tanquam a
unraveled and so finally from this ecstasy as-if from
somno gravi ab aliis excitantur, et quasi per violentiam
sleep heavy by others they-are-roused and as-if by violence
quandam ad se reverti compelluntur.
a-certain to themselves to-return are-compelled
Ubi et duo notanda reperies; quia post responsum,
where also two-things to-be-noted you-will-find that after the-answer
nisi violenter excitati et revocati, ab hujuscemodi quasi
unless violently roused and recalled from of-this-kind as-if
furore reverti non solent; et quod in se reversi,
frenzy to-return not they-are-wont and that to themselves returned
nihil horum omnium, quæ ab his interim prolata sunt,
nothing of-these all which by them meanwhile uttered were
ad memoriam revocabunt.
to memory will-they-recall
[Unde et, si forte super hoc iterum vel alio consulti
whence also if by-chance about this again or another consulted
dicere debeant, aliis omnino verbis et alienis enuntiabunt:]
to-speak they-should with-other wholly words and foreign they-will-utter
forsan sicut per phanaticos et energumenos spiritus
perhaps as through fanatics and demoniacs spirits
interdum loquuntur, quanquam ignaros.
sometimes speak although ignorant
Solent autem eis hæc dona plerumque in somnis per
are-wont moreover to-them these gifts mostly in sleep through
visiones infundi. Quibusdam enim videtur, quod eis
visions to-be-poured-in to-some for it-seems that to-them

vel lac dulce, vel mel in ore infundatur: aliis autem,
either milk sweet or honey into the-mouth is-poured to-others however
quod eis schedula inscripta ori imponatur. Et statim
that to-them a-little-sheet written on-the-mouth is-placed and at-once
a somno erecti, et canori effecti, se gratiam hanc
from sleep roused and melodious made themselves grace this
suscepisse publice profitentur.
to-have-received publicly they-profess
Tale est illud Esdræ, de se scribentis; "Dixit Dominus mihi,
such is that of-Ezra about himself writing said the-Lord to-me
Aperi os tuum. Et aperui os meum; et ecce, calix plenus
open mouth your and I-opened mouth my and behold a-cup full
aqua, cujus color similis igni. Et cum bibissem, eructavit cor
of-water whose color like to-fire and when I-had-drunk belched heart
meum intellectum, et in pectus meum introivit sapientia."
my understanding and into breast my entered wisdom
Faciunt autem inter ipsa initia invocationes ad Deum vivum
they-make moreover at the-very beginnings invocations to God living
et verum, et ad sanctam Trinitatem, ut peccatorum meritis
and true and to the-holy Trinity that of-their-sins by-the-merits
a veri inventione non impediantur. In aliis autem
from of-the-true the-finding not they-be-hindered in other however
nationibus quam hac Britannica, sicut et olim Trojana de qua
nations than this British as also once the-Trojan from which
descendunt, prophetas hujusmodi raro reperies. Calcas etenim
they-descend prophets of-this-kind rarely you-will-find Calchas for
et Cassandra apud Ylion, nobilis illius obsidionis tempore,
and Cassandra at Ilium of-noble that siege in-the-time
vaticinii spiritum habentes, urbis excidium aperte prædixerunt.
of-prophecy the-spirit having of-the-city the-destruction openly foretold
Unde et Helenus Priami filius, qui archiflamen eorum erat,
whence also Helenus of-Priam son who chief-priest their was

propter vaticiniorum libros quos habebat, tam Calcantis
on-account-of of-the-prophecies the-books which he-had as-much of-Calchas
quam et aliorum longe ante, super patriæ destructione,
as also of-others long before about of-the-country the-destruction
primo statim ad Grecos una cum Calcante se transtulit
first at-once to the-Greeks together with Calchas himself transferred
anno: a quibus et egregie postmodum in Grecia remuneratus
in-the-year by whom also excellently afterward in Greece rewarded
est. Cassandra vero puella, Priami regis filia, quotidie urbis
was Cassandra however the-girl of-Priam king daughter daily of-the-city
eversionem canebat; nec ei tamen, ob superbiam
the-overthrow sang nor to-her nevertheless on-account-of the-pride
Trojanorum nimiam et præsumptionem, fides habebatur.
of-the-Trojans excessive and presumption belief was-had
Nocte quoque qua urbs prodita fuit, proditionem ipsam
on-the-night also on-which the-city betrayed was the-betrayal itself
et modum prodendi manifeste præcinuit. Unde Virgilius;
and the-manner of-betraying manifestly she-foretold whence Virgil

"Tales casus Cassandra canebat."
"Such chances Cassandra sang."

Sicut et olim, extante adhuc Britonum regno,
as also once with-standing still of-the-Britons the-kingdom
gentis excidium, et tam Saxonum primo, quam etiam
of-the-people the-destruction and as-much of-the-Saxons first as also
Normannorum post adventum, Merlinus uterque, tam
of-the-Normans afterward the-coming Merlin each as-much
Celidonius quam Ambrosius, vaticinando declaravit.
Celidonius as Ambrosius by-prophesying declared

Illud quoque, quod de talibus Agellius refert, hic interserere
that also which about such Gellius relates here to-insert
dignum duxi. "Quo Gaius Cesar et Pompeius die
worthy I-thought on-which Gaius Caesar and Pompey on-the-day
per civile bellum collatis signis in Thessalia conflixerunt,
through civil war with-joined standards in Thessaly clashed
in Transpadana Italia memoratu digna res accidit.
in Transpadane Italy of-remembrance worthy a-thing happened
Sacerdos namque Cornelius, et loco nobilis, et sacerdotii
a-priest for Cornelius both by-place noble and of-the-priesthood
religionibus venerandus, et vitæ castitate sanctus, repente,
by-the-religious-rites venerable and of-life by-chastity holy suddenly
mota mente, Cesarem vicisse" proclamavit: "pugnæque
with-moved mind Caesar to-have-conquered proclaimed and-of-the-battle
dies, et exitus, omnesque pugnandi reciprocationes, et
the-day and the-outcome and-all of-fighting the-alternations and
ipsa duorum exercituum conflictatio, ejus vaticinantis
the-very of-the-two armies clash of-him prophesying
motu atque verbis repræsentata est."
by-the-motion and words represented was
Sin autem quo spiritu proferantur hujusmodi, scrupulosus
if however by-what spirit are-uttered things-of-this-kind a-scrupulous
lector inquiras, non dico quod pithonico, non dæmoniaco;
reader you-ask not I-say that by-a-pythonic not by-a-demonic
verum, quia sicut solius est proprium scire futura Dei, sic
but because as of-alone it-is proper to-know the-future of-God so
et futurorum scientiam dare, potius spiritu scientiæ desuper
also of-the-future the-knowledge to-give rather by-the-spirit of-knowledge from-above
et ex gratia dato. "Divisiones quippe gratiarum sunt," ut ait
and from grace given divisions indeed of-graces there-are as says
Apostolus, "unus autem atque idem spiritus." Unde Petrus, in
the-Apostle one however and the-same spirit whence Peter in

epistola secunda; “Non voluntate humana allata est aliquando
the-epistle second not by-will human brought was ever
prophetia; sed Spiritu Sancto inspirati, locuti sunt homines.”
prophecy but by-the-Spirit Holy inspired spoken have men
Ad idem facit illud in Daniele, quod Chaldei regi
to the-same makes that in Daniel which the-Chaldeans to-the-king
Nabugodonosor super somnii sui interpretatione, quam ab
Nebuchadnezzar about of-dream his the-interpretation which from
ipsis extorquere volebat, responderunt. “Non est,” inquiunt,
them to-extort he-wished answered not is they-say
“homo super terram, qui sermonem tuum, rex, possit
a-man upon the-earth who speech your king can
implere: sed neque regum quisquam magnus et potens
fulfill but neither of-kings any great and powerful
verbum hujuscemodi sciscitatur ab omni ariolo, et mago,
a-word of-this-kind asks from every soothsayer and magician
et Caldeo. Sermo enim quem tu, rex, quæris, gravis est; nec
and Chaldean the-speech for which you king seek weighty is nor
reperietur quisquam, qui indicet illum in conspectu regis,
will-be-found anyone who may-show it in the-sight of-the-king
exceptis diis, quorum non est cum hominibus conversatio.”
except the-gods of-whom not is with men converse
Super eundem locum Ieronymus; “Confitentur arioli, et
on the-same passage Jerome confess the-soothsayers and
omnis scientia secularis, præscientiam futurorum solius Dei
all knowledge secular the-foreknowledge of-the-future of-alone God
esse, non hominum. Unde probatur prophetas spiritu Dei
to-be not of-men whence it-is-proved the-prophets by-the-spirit of-God
locutos, qui dixerunt futura.”
to-have-spoken who said the-future

Ad hoc autem, quod objiciunt quidam, quia si spiritu Dei
to this however which object some that if by-the-spirit of-God
ducerentur, quandoque præmitterent, "Hæc dicit Dominus
they-were-led sometimes they-would-set-before these-things says the-Lord
Deus," vel aliquid in hunc modum, more prophetico; et
God or something in this manner in-the-manner prophetic and
quia talis prophetandi modus in Merlino non reperitur, eum
because such of-prophesying a-manner in Merlin not is-found him
potius pithonico spiritu locutum esse plerique conjectant;
rather by-a-pythonic spirit spoken to-have-been many conjecture
et quia etiam de sanctitate ipsius vel devotione, quanquam
and because also about the-holiness his or devotion although
fidelis fuerit, minime legitur: ad quæ respondeo, quod non
faithful he-was least is-it-read to which I-answer that not
solum sanctis, sed etiam infidelibus interdum et gentilibus,
only to-saints but also to-unbelievers sometimes and to-gentiles
sicut Baleæ et Sybillæ, et etiam malis, ut Cayphæ,
as to-Balaam and to-the-Sibyl and also to-the-wicked as to-Caiaphas
sicut et Balaæ, prophetiæ spiritus datus est. Unde Origenes
as also to-Balaam of-prophecy the-spirit given was whence Origen
super Numeri; "Ne mireris si eum, quem diximus scribas et
on Numbers do-not wonder if him whom we-said the-scribes and
pharisæos et doctores populi significare, videas de Christo
pharisees and teachers of-the-people to-signify you-see about Christ
prophetare. Cayphas enim ait; 'Expedit nobis, ut unus
to-prophesy Caiaphas for says it-is-expedient for-us that one
moriatur homo pro populo.' Sed, inquit, 'Quia erat pontifex
should-die man for the-people but he-says because he-was the-high-priest
anni illius, prophetavit.' Nemo ergo extollatur si prophetet,
of-year that he-prophesied no-one therefore be-exalted if he-prophesy
si præscientiam mereatur: quia prophetiæ destruentur,
if foreknowledge he-merit because prophecies will-be-destroyed

cessabunt linguæ, scientia destruetur: permanent autem fides,
will-cease tongues knowledge will-be-destroyed remain however faith
spes, caritas: major autem est caritas, quæ sola nunquam
hope charity greater moreover is charity which alone never
cadit." Et non solum prophetabant, sed virtutes etiam et
falls and not only did-they-prophesy but miracles also and
signa mali quandoque faciebant, quod boni plerique non
signs the-wicked sometimes did which the-good mostly not
poterant. Sicut Johannes Baptista, qui tantus erat, signa non
could as John the-Baptist who so-great was signs not
fecit; sicut Johannes Evangelista testatur, dicens, "Et multi
did as John the-Evangelist testifies saying and many
venerunt ad Jhesum, et dicebant quia Johannes quidem
came to Jesus and said that John indeed
signum fecit nullum," et cetera. De matre quoque Domini
sign did none and so-on about the-mother also of-the-Lord
non legitur quod signum aliquod fecerit. De filiis autem
not it-is-read that sign any she-did about the-sons however
Scevæ legimus in Actibus Apostolorum, quod in nomine
of-Sceva we-read in the-Acts of-the-Apostles that in the-name
Jhesu, quem Paulus prædicabat, dæmonia ejecerunt. Unde in
of-Jesus whom Paul preached demons they-cast-out whence in
Mathæo et Luca reperies; "Multi dicent in illa die mihi,
Matthew and Luke you-will-find many will-say on that day to-me
Domine, Domine, nonne in nomine tuo prophetavimus, et
Lord Lord not in name your did-we-prophesy and
in nomine tuo dæmonia ejecimus, et in nomine tuo virtutes
in name your demons cast-out and in name your miracles
multas fecimus? Et tunc confitebor illis, quia nunquam novi
many did and then I-will-confess to-them that never I-knew
vos." Et alibi; "Respondens autem Joannes dixit; Magister,
you and elsewhere answering moreover John said master

vidimus quemdam in nomine tuo dæmonia ejicientem; et
we-saw a-certain-man in name your demons casting-out and
prohibuimus eum, quia non sequitur nobiscum. Jhesus autem
we-forbade him because not he-follows with-us Jesus however
ait; Nolite prohibere eum: nemo est qui faciat virtutem
said do-not forbid him no-one is who may-do a-miracle
in nomine meo, et possit cito male loqui de me. Qui
in name my and can quickly ill speak of me who
enim non est adversus nos, pro nobis est." Item Alexander
for not is against us for us is likewise Alexander
Macedo, gentilis, montes Caspios transtulit; et decem
the-Macedonian a-gentile the-mountains Caspian moved and the-ten
tribus intra eorundem promontoria, ubi usque in hodiernum
tribes within of-the-same the-promontories where up-to into today
resident, et usque in adventum Heliæ et Enoch residebunt,
they-dwell and up-to to the-coming of-Elijah and Enoch will-dwell
miraculose conclusit. Merlini itaque fidem legimus, prophetiam
miraculously shut-in of-Merlin therefore the-faith we-read the-prophecy
legimus; sanctitatem ejus vel miracula non legimus.
we-read the-holiness his or miracles not we-read
Objiciunt etiam quia prophetæ non extra se fiebant,
they-object also that the-prophets not outside themselves became
quando prophetabant: sicut de Merlino Silvestri legitur, quod
when they-prophesied as about Merlin Silvester is-read that
amens factus prophetabat; et de his similiter quasi arreptitiis,
mad made he-prophesied and about these likewise as-if possessed
de quibus hic locuti sumus. Sed alii per somnia, visiones,
about whom here spoken we-have but some through dreams visions
et ænigmata, ut Ezechiel et Daniel; alii per facta et dicta,
and riddles as Ezekiel and Daniel others through deeds and words
ut Noe in arcæ fabricatione ecclesiam, Abraham in filii
as Noah in of-the-ark the-building the-church Abraham in of-his-son

immolatione Christi passionem, Moyses dicens, “Suscitabit
the-sacrifice of-Christ the-passion Moses saying will-raise-up
vobis Deus prophetam de fratribus vestris; hunc audite,”
for-you God a-prophet from brothers your him hear
et cetera, Christum significavit; alii excellentiore quodam
and so-on Christ signified others in-a-more-excellent certain
modo, per internam scilicet Sancti Spiritus inspirationem
manner through the-inner namely of-the-Holy Spirit inspiration
ac revelationem, ut David. Quibus id solum, quod in libro
and revelation as David to-whom that only which in the-book
Regum primo de Saule legitur David persequente, respondeo:
of-Kings first about Saul is-read David pursuing I-answer
quia cum accepisset Saul David in Abaioth, qui est collis
that when had-heard Saul David into Naioth which is a-hill
in Ramatha, ubi erat cuneus prophetarum, transfugisse, misit
in Ramah where was a-band of-prophets to-have-fled he-sent
lictores in Abaioth ut raperent David; qui cum vidissent
lictors to Naioth that they-might-seize David who when they-had-seen
prophetas, et Samuelem stantem super eos, factus est in illis
the-prophets and Samuel standing over them made was upon them
spiritus Domini, et prophetabant. Misitque Saul secundos et
the-spirit of-the-Lord and they-prophesied and-sent Saul second and
tertios nuntios, qui et ipsi prophetaverunt: et iratus Saul
third messengers who also themselves prophesied and angry Saul
abiit post eos, et antequam veniret in Abaioth ingrediens
went after them and before he-came into Naioth entering
prophetabat, et quasi amens factus, et exutus veste
he-prophesied and as-if mad made and stripped of-his-garment
regia, tota die et nocte canebat cum ceteris, David et
royal all day and night sang with the-others with-David and
Samuele clam videntibus. Nec mirum si illi, qui spiritum
Samuel secretly seeing nor wonder if those who the-spirit

Domini, datamque desuper gratiam tantam subito suscipiunt,
of-the-Lord and-given from-above grace so-great suddenly receive
a terrenæ mentis interim statu alienari videantur.
from of-earthly mind meanwhile the-state to-be-estranged seem

LINEAGE, LIVING, AND FAITH

The Welsh value noble descent above all, recite their genealogies, and avenge every injury. They live scattered in wattled huts at the edges of woods, have no orchards or gardens, plow with a driver walking backward before the oxen, and fish from coracles, which Bledhericus described as horses carried on the back. Long Christian, they give the bread's first corner to the poor, ask any cleric's blessing, give great tithes, and honor relics and churches, whose sanctuary is abused. They would be happy with good prelates and one good prince.

De generositatis amore, et genealogia longe retenta.
about of-noble-birth the-love and genealogy long retained
Generositatem vero, et generis nobilitatem, præ rebus
noble-birth however and of-race nobility beyond things
omnibus magis appetunt. Unde et generosa conjugia plus
all more they-seek whence also noble marriages more
longe cupiunt, quam sumptuosa vel opima. Genealogiam
far they-desire than costly or rich the-genealogy
quoque generis sui etiam de populo quilibet observat;
also of-race his even of the-people anyone observes
et non solum avos, atavos, et tritavos, sed usque
and not only grandfathers forefathers and remote-ancestors but up-to
ad sextam vel septimam, et ultra procul generationem,
to the-sixth or seventh and beyond far generation
memoriter et prompte genus enarrat in hunc modum; Resus
by-memory and readily his-race he-recounts in this manner Rhys

filius Griphini, Griphinus filius Resi, Resus filius Theodori;
son of-Gruffydd Gruffydd son of-Rhys Rhys son of-Tewdwr
et sic deinceps, ut supra de generatione principum.
and so on as above about the-generation of-the-princes
Genus itaque super omnia diligunt; et damna sanguinis atque
race therefore above all-things they-love and the-losses of-blood and
dedecus acriter ulciscuntur. Vindicis enim animi sunt, et
the-disgrace sharply avenge of-avenging for of-mind they-are and
iræ cruentæ; nec solum novas et recentes injurias, verum
of-anger bloody nor only new and fresh injuries but
etiam veteres et antiquas velut instantes vindicare parati.
also old and ancient as-if present to-avenge ready
Non urbe, non vico, non castris cohabitant; sed quasi
not in-city not in-village not in-castles do-they-live-together but as-if
solitarii silvis inhærent. In quarum eisdem margine
solitary to-the-woods they-cling on whose the-same edge
non palatia magna, non sumptuosas et superfluas lapidum
not palaces great not costly and superfluous of-stones
cæmentique structuras in altum erigere, verum tecta viminea,
and-of-mortar structures on high to-raise but roofs wattled
usibus annuis sufficientia, modico tam labore quam
for-uses yearly sufficient with-moderate as-much labor as
sumptu connectere mos est.
cost to-join the-custom is
Non pomeriis utuntur, non hortis. Utrorumque tamen
not orchards do-they-use not gardens of-both however
fructibus, eis aliunde porrectis, libenter vesci solent.
the-fruits to-them from-elsewhere offered gladly to-eat they-are-wont
Agris igitur plurimum utuntur pascuis, parum cultis, floridis
fields therefore very-much they-use for-pastures little tilled flowering
parce, consitis parcissime.
sparingly sown most-sparingly

Boves autem ad aratra vel plaustra binos quidem jungunt
oxen moreover to plows or wagons two-by-two indeed they-yoke
rarius, sed quaternos frequentius; stimulatore præambulo,
more-rarely but four-by-four more-often with-the-driver walking-ahead
sed retrogrado. Quem et pericula plerumque, dum tauri
but backward whom also dangers often while the-bulls
juga detrectant, retro cadendo contingit experiri.
the-yokes refuse backward by-falling it-happens to-experience
Falcibus quoque minus utuntur ad metendum: plus autem et
sickles also less they-use for reaping more however and
expeditius ferro quodam modico, in cultelli modum formato,
more-expeditiously an-iron a-certain small in of-a-knife the-manner formed
baculis binis ad capita laxe et flexibiliter catenato. Sed quoniam
to-sticks two at the-ends loosely and flexibly chained but since

"Segnius irritant animos demissa per aures,
"More-slowly stir minds things-let-down through the-ears,
Quam quæ sunt oculis subjecta fidelibus,"
Than which are to-the-eyes placed-before faithful,"

melius videndo quam audiendo modum attendes.
better by-seeing than by-hearing the-manner you-will-attend
Sunt et his naviculæ ad piscandum, seu flumina
there-are also to-them little-boats for fishing or rivers
transnavigandum, vimineæ; non oblongæ, non rostratæ, sed
sailing-across wicker not oblong not beaked but
quasi rotundæ, vel potius in triangulum formatæ; undique
as-if round or rather into a-triangle formed on-all-sides
coriis animalium crudis non intus sed extra contectæ. Cum
with-hides of-animals raw not inside but outside covered when
autem naviculam salmo injectus forte cauda fortiter
however the-little-boat a-salmon cast-in by-chance with-its-tail strongly

percusserit, non absque periculo plerumque vecturam pariter
has-struck not without danger often the-craft equally
et vectorem evertit. Naviculas istas piscatores, barbaro
and the-carrier it-overturns little-boats these the-fishermen by-barbarous
ritu, ad aquas eundo et redeundo humeris portant.
custom to the-waters by-going and by-returning on-their-shoulders carry
Unde famosus ille fabulator Bledhericus, qui tempora nostra
whence famous that storyteller Bledhericus who times our
paulo prævenit, super hoc casu sic ænigmatice proloqui
a-little preceded about this case thus enigmatically to-speak-out
consueverat: "Sunt apud nos gentes, quæ cum ad prædandum
was-accustomed there-are among us peoples who when to plundering
deproperent, equos humeris impositos usque ad prædam
they-hurry their-horses on-their-shoulders placed up-to to the-plunder
ipsam portant. Ad prædam vero capiendam equis
itself carry for the-plunder however to-be-taken onto-the-horses
insiliunt. Eaque capta, statim equos humeris iterum
they-leap and-with-it taken at-once the-horses on-their-shoulders again
injectos domum redeundo reportant."
put home by-returning they-carry-back
De antiqua fidei fundatione; Christianitatis amore, et
about the-ancient of-the-faith foundation of-Christianity love and
devotione.
devotion
Præterea olim, longeque ante excidium Britannicum, quia
moreover once and-long before the-destruction British because
per annos circiter ducentos, per Faganum et Duvianum,
for years about two-hundred by Fagan and Duvian
ad petitionem Lucii regis ab Eleutherio papa in insulam
at the-petition of-Lucius king by Eleutherius pope into the-island
transmissos, in fide fundati sunt et solidati. Unde a
sent in the-faith founded they-were and strengthened whence from

tempore quo Germanus Altisiodorensis et Lupus Trecensis,
the-time at-which Germanus of-Auxerre and Lupus of-Troyes
propter corruptionem quæ paganorum irruptionibus, Saxonum
on-account-of the-corruption which of-the-pagans by-the-irruptions of-the-Saxons
scilicet, jam irrepserat, et præcipue ad explantandam hæresim
namely already had-crept-in and especially for rooting-out the-heresy
Pelagianam in insulam missi sunt, nihil hæreticum, nihil rectæ
Pelagian into the-island sent were nothing heretical nothing of-right
fidei articulis contrarium sensere. Ab eorundem quoque
faith to-the-articles contrary have-they-held from of-the-same also
doctrina, hæc, ut fertur, usque in hodiernum diem documenta
the-teaching these as is-said up-to into the-present day practices
tenuerunt. De quolibet pane apposito primum fractionis
they-have-held of any bread set-before the-first of-the-breaking
angulum pauperibus donant. Terni quoque, in Trinitatis
corner to-the-poor they-give by-threes also in of-the-Trinity
memoriam, ad prandium sedent. Viro cuilibet religioso,
memory to dinner they-sit to-man any religious
monacho vel clerico, vel cuicunque religionis habitum præferenti,
monk or cleric or anyone of-religion the-habit displaying
cum obviam veniunt, statim projectis armis cernuo capite
when to-meet-him they-come at-once with-thrown-down arms with-bowed head
benedictionem petunt. Episcopalem vero confirmationem, et
a-blessing they-seek the-episcopal however confirmation and
chrismatis qua gratia Spiritus datur inunctionem, præ alia
of-the-chrism by-which the-grace of-the-Spirit is-given the-anointing beyond other
gente totus populus magnopere petit. Omnium quoque rerum
people the-whole people greatly seeks of-all also things
quas possident, animalium, pecorum, et pecudum, interdum
which they-possess of-animals of-herds and of-flocks sometimes
decimas donant: quando videlicet vel uxores sibi maritali
the-tithes they-give when namely either wives for-themselves by-marital

copula jungunt, vel peregrinationis iter arripiunt, aut
bond they-join or of-pilgrimage the-journey they-take or
quamlibet vitæ suæ, ecclesiæ consilio, correctionem assumunt.
any of-life their of-the-church by-the-counsel amendment they-assume
Hanc autem rerum suarum partitionem Decimam magnam
this however of-things their partition the-Tithe great
vocant. Cujus duas partes ecclesiæ suæ baptismali, tertiam
they-call of-which two parts to-church their baptismal the-third
vero episcopo diocesano dare solent.
however to-the-bishop diocesan to-give they-are-wont
Præ omni autem peregrino labore, Romam peregre libentius
beyond every however of-pilgrimage labor to-Rome on-pilgrimage more-gladly
eundo, devotis mentibus Apostolorum limina propensius
by-going with-devout minds of-the-Apostles the-thresholds more-assiduously
adorant.
they-adore
Ecclesiis autem et ecclesiasticis viris, sanctorum quoque
to-churches moreover and to-ecclesiastical men of-the-saints also
reliquiis, baculis, et campanis bajulis, libris textis, et
to-the-relics to-staffs and to-bells portable to-books gospel-books and
cruci, devotam reverentiam exhibere, longeque magis quam
to-the-cross devout reverence to-show and-far more than
aliam gentem his omnibus honorem deferre videmus. Unde
another people to-these all honor to-pay we-see whence
et ecclesiæ istorum longe majorem quam alibi pacem habent.
also the-churches of-these far greater than elsewhere peace have
Non etenim in cemiteriis solum, verum etiam extra procul,
not for in the-cemeteries only but also outside far
per metas et fossas ulteriores, ab episcopis causa pacis
through bounds and ditches further by the-bishops for-the-sake of-peace
impositas et constitutas, animalibus ad pascua pax servatur.
imposed and established for-the-animals for pastures peace is-kept

Ecclesiæ vero majores, quibus majorem antiquitas reverentiam
the-churches however greater to-which greater antiquity reverence
exhibuit, quantum armenta mane ad pascua exire
has-shown as-far-as herds in-the-morning to pastures to-go-out
et vespere redire possunt, pacem præbent. Unde et
and in-the-evening to-return can peace furnish whence also
si cum principe capitales quis inimicitias incurrerit, si
if with the-prince capital anyone enmities shall-have-incurred if
ecclesiæ refugium quæsierit, eadem sibi et suis
of-the-church the-refuge he-shall-have-sought the-same for-himself and his-men
pace gaudebit: adeo ut hac immunitatis indemnitate, longe
peace he-will-enjoy so that by-this of-immunity indemnity far
canonum indulgentiam excedente, qui corpori solum et
of-the-canons the-indulgence exceeding which to-the-body only and
membris tali in casu salutem præstant, multi abutentes,
limbs in-such in case safety furnish many abusing
et audacius ob hanc impunitatem hostiliter excedunt,
and more-boldly on-account-of this impunity hostilely go-forth
et ab his etiam refugii locis, tam patriam undique totam
and from these even of-refuge places as-much the-country on-all-sides whole
quam principem ipsum graviter infestando molestant.
as the-prince himself gravely by-harassing they-molest
Heremitas et anachoritas abstinentiæ majoris, magisque
hermits and anchorites of-abstinence greater and-more
spirituales, alibi non videas. Gens etenim hæc in omni
spiritual elsewhere not you-would-see people for this in every
vehemens est intentione. Unde et sicut malis nusquam
vehement is intention whence also as than-the-bad nowhere
pejores, sic bonis meliores non reperies.
worse so than-the-good better not you-will-find

Felix itaque gens, et fortunata; gens vere utraque sorte
happy therefore people and fortunate a-people truly by-each lot
beata; si prælatos haberent bonos et pastores, unoque
blessed if prelates they-had good and pastors and-by-one
gauderent principe, et illo bono.
rejoiced prince and that good
Explicit liber primus; laudabilium.
ends book first of-the-praiseworthy-things

Incipit liber secundus; illaudabilium. Præfatio secundi libri

BOOK TWO · INCONSTANCY, PERJURY, AND FLIGHT

Gerald turns to the vices of the Welsh, since history without truth loses its name. They are inconstant, keep no oath, perjure themselves in suits, live by plunder, and break peace for gain; Gildas called them neither brave in war nor faithful in peace. Gerald sets against him their victories under Cassivellaunus, Belinus, Ambrosius, and Arthur, blames Maximus for draining the island of its youth, and reports the Britons' claim that Gildas wrote in anger at Arthur, who had killed his brother. Terrible in the first charge, they flee if resisted, yet rally the next day undaunted, easily beaten in battle but hard to conquer in war.

Quoniam, in priore libro, gentis Britannicæ naturam,
since in the-former book of-the-people British the-nature
mores, et modos satis evidenter explicuimus; eaque
the-manners and the-ways sufficiently clearly we-have-unfolded and-those-things
præcipue quæ virtuti consona, et in unum collecta
especially which with-virtue consonant and into one gathered
ad laudem ejus et honorem vere poterant explanari; de
for the-praise its and honor truly could to-be-set-forth for
cetero competens ordo deposcit, ut in sequenti operis
the-rest fitting order demands that in the-following of-the-work
partitione, more historico, ad ea quoque quæ
division in-the-manner historical to those-things also which
virtutis et laudis lineam egredi videntur calamum vertamus:
of-virtue and of-praise the-line to-overstep seem the-pen we-may-turn
"impetrata tamen veritatis explicandæ venia, citra quam
with-obtained however of-truth to-be-unfolded leave without which
omnis historia non solum auctoritatem sed et merito nomen
every history not only authority but also deservedly the-name
historiæ demeretur. Naturam enimvero imitari arte professus
of-history forfeits nature indeed to-imitate by-art professing

auctoritatem pictor amittit, si diligentius apta dum
his-authority the-painter loses if more-diligently the-fitting-things while
protrahit, minus idonea verecunde prætermittit.
he-draws less suitable-things modestly he-passes-over
"Unde et, quoniam
whence also since

"'Vitiis sine nemo nascitur; optimus ille est
"'Vices without no-one is-born; best he is
Qui minimis urgetur,'
Who by-the-least is-pressed,'

nihil humanum a se alienum sapiens putet. Semper
nothing human from himself foreign the-wise-man should-think always
enim mundanis in rebus, quia nulla sub cœlo perfecta felicitas,
for in-worldly in things because no under heaven perfect happiness
et mala sunt vicina bonis, et vitia virtutibus distinguuntur.
both evils are neighbors to-goods and vices from-virtues are-distinguished
Sicut ergo sive naturæ sive industriæ bona mentem bene
as therefore whether of-nature or of-industry the-goods a-mind well
compositam audita delectant, sic recitata bonis contraria
composed heard delight so recited to-goods contrary
non offendant." Corrumpi nimirum ex longo exilio et
not may-offend to-be-corrupted indeed from long exile and
paupertate, pejoresque ad usus gentis hujus natura perverti
poverty and-to-worse to uses of-people this the-nature to-be-perverted
potuit. Sicut enim multa paupertas extinguere vitia solet, sic
could as for much poverty to-extinguish vices is-wont so
nonnulla interdum ex eadem contraria virtutibus adolescunt.
some sometimes from the-same contrary to-virtues grow-up

De inconstantia gentis hujus et instabilitate; fidei quoque
about the-inconstancy of-people this and the-instability of-faith also
sacramentique reverentia nulla.
and-of-oath reverence none
Gens igitur hæc gens fidei tenerrimæ; nec minus animo
people therefore this a-people of-faith most-tender nor less in-mind
levis quam corpore. Gens ad facinus quodlibet sicut facillime
light than in-body a-people to crime any as most-easily
impellitur, sic a proposito seu jam incepto eadem
it-is-driven so from purpose or already begun with-the-same
facilitate revocatur. Gens in omni quidem mobilis actione,
ease it-is-recalled a-people in every indeed mobile action
semper tamen in malo pertinacior: nullius nempe rei præter
always however in evil more-obstinate of-no indeed thing except
inconstantiæ solius constantiam habens.
of-inconstancy alone constancy having
Nullum eis jusjurandum; nulla fidei, nulla veritatis
no to-them oath no of-faith no of-truth
reverentia. Adeo namque fidei fœdus, aliis inviolabile
reverence so-much for of-faith the-bond to-other inviolable
gentibus, parvipendere solent, ut non in seriis solum et
peoples to-value-little they-are-wont that not in serious-things only and
necessariis, verum in ludicris, omnique fere verbo firmando,
necessary but in jests and-every almost word to-be-confirmed
dextræ manus ut mos est porrectione, signo usuali
of-the-right hand as the-custom is by-the-stretching-out with-the-sign usual
dato, fidem gratis effundere consueverint.
given faith gratuitously to-pour-away they-have-been-accustomed
Præterea quicquid commodi, quicquid temporalis emolumenti,
moreover whatever of-advantage whatever of-temporal gain
sacramenti transgressione provenire potest, passim perjurio
of-the-oath by-the-transgression to-come can everywhere by-perjury

parant. Adeo quidem ut in causis tam ecclesiasticis
they-procure so-much indeed that in suits as-much ecclesiastical
quam forensibus, nunc excipiendo, nunc replicando, puta
as civil now by-excepting now by-replying namely
quicquid ad præsens expedire videtur jurare parati, pars
whatever for the-present to-be-expedient seems to-swear ready party
utraque semper agere, semper probare nitatur. Quanquam
each always to-act always to-prove strives although
tamen venerandæ leges, ubi sacramenta sacra putantur,
nevertheless the-venerable laws where oaths sacred are-thought
ubi reverentia veris et honor exhibetur honestis,
where reverence to-true-things and honor is-shown to-honest-things
in rei favorem, et odium actoris, probationem
in of-the-defendant favor and hatred of-the-plaintiff the-proof
actori tanquam onus imponant, porro populo versuto
on-the-plaintiff as-if a-burden impose moreover to-a-people crafty
et versipelli jugum hoc suave et onus leve videtur.
and shifty yoke this sweet and burden light seems
Quod rapto vivunt; et pacis amicitiæque fœdera non
about-that by-plunder they-live and of-peace and-of-friendship the-treaties not
custodiunt.
keep
Ad hæc etiam rapinis insistere, raptoque vivere, furto,
to these-things also on-plunder to-be-intent and-by-plunder to-live by-theft
et latrocinio, non solum ad exteros et hostiles populos,
and robbery not only toward foreign and hostile peoples
verum etiam inter se proprium habent.
but also among themselves as-their-own they-have
Pacis quoque et amicitiæ fœdera, visa nocendi
of-peace also and of-friendship the-treaties with-seen of-harming
opportunitate, non respiciunt: fidei sacramentique religionem
opportunity not they-regard of-faith and-of-oath the-sanctity

turpi postponentes lucro. Quod et Gildas olim in libro De
to-foul postponing gain which also Gildas once in the-book On
excidio Britonum, more historico suæ gentis vitia
the-destruction of-the-Britons in-the-manner historical of-his people the-vices
veritatis amore non supprimens, his verbis declaravit; "Nec
of-truth from-love not suppressing in-these words declared neither
in bello fortes, nec in pace fideles."
in war brave nor in peace faithful
Sed quando Julius Cesar, qui tantus erat quantus et orbis,
but when Julius Caesar who so-great was as-great-as also the-world
sub Cassibelliano duce
under Cassivellaunus leader

"Territa quæsitis ostendit terga Britannis,"
"Terrified to-the-sought showed his-back Britons,"

numquid non fortes fuere? Quid etiam, quando Belinus et
surely not brave were-they what also when Belinus and
Brennius Romanum imperium suis addidere victoriis? Quid
Brennius the-Roman empire to-their added victories what
Helenæ nostræ filii imperatoris tempore Constantini? Quid
of-Helen our of-the-son of-the-emperor in-the-time of-Constantine what
Aurelii Ambrosii regno, quem etiam laudibus Eutropius
of-Aurelius Ambrosius in-the-reign whom also with-praises Eutropius
effert? Et Arturi nostri famosi, ne dicam fabulosi, tempore
extols and of-Arthur our famous not to-say fabulous in-the-time
quanti fuere?
how-great were-they
Sed, e diverso, qui a Scotis et Pictis, populisque tam vilibus,
but on the-contrary who by the-Scots and Picts and-peoples so vile
fere debellati, auxiliatrices Romanas toties vexarunt legiones,
almost subdued the-auxiliary Roman so-often troubled legions

dicentes, sicut ex Gilda colligimus, “Barbari nos ad mare,
saying as from Gildas we-gather the-barbarians us to the-sea
mare autem ad barbaros impellit: hinc submergimur, hinc
the-sea however to the-barbarians drives here we-are-drowned here
trucidamur,” numquid tunc fortes, numquid laudabiles fuere?
we-are-slaughtered surely-not then brave surely-not praiseworthy were-they
A Saxonibus quoque in auxilium vocatis, et stipendiario
by the-Saxons also into help called and with-mercenary
munere locatis, quando expugnati et subacti, numquid
pay hired when conquered and subdued surely-not
fortes? Et quod omnium istorum validius ignaviæ eorum
brave and what of-all these stronger of-cowardice their
argumentum est, quod Gildas, qui vir sanctus erat et
proof is that Gildas who a-man holy was and
de gente eadem, in cunctis quas de gestis eorum scripsit
of people the-same in all which about the-deeds their he-wrote
historiis, nihil unquam egregium de ipsis posteritati reliquit.
histories nothing ever excellent about them to-posterity left
Hujus autem contrarii solutionem, Deo duce, vitaque
of-this however contrary the-solution with-God leading and-with-life
comite, in Britannica promittimus Topographia.
companion in the-British we-promise Topography
Id tamen hic tantillum ad majorem evidentiam addere sufficiat,
this however here so-little for greater evidence to-add let-it-suffice
quod ex quo Maximus ille Britonum princeps, cujus in
that from which Maximus that of-the-Britons prince of-whom in
capite libelli mentionem fecimus, totum armatæ juventutis
the-head of-the-little-book mention we-made all of-armed youth
Britanniæ in transmarina ducendo robur exhauserat, multis
of-Britain into overseas-parts by-leading the-strength had-exhausted for-many
postmodum annis vacua viris et viribus insula piratis et
afterward years empty of-men and strength the-island to-pirates and

prædonibus mansit exposita. Quæ quidem antea incomparabili
robbers remained exposed which indeed before with-incomparable
strenuitatis gloria floruerat; adeo quidem ut per ejus
of-vigor glory had-flourished so-much indeed that through its
alumnos, prædictus ille tyrannus totam fere Cisalpinam Galliam
nurslings the-aforesaid that tyrant all almost Cisalpine Gaul
subjugaverit, ipsumque Romanum imperium armis attemptare
subjugated and-the-very Roman empire with-arms to-attack
præsumpserit. Processu quoque temporis, longa demum
presumed in-the-course also of-time by-long at-last
propagatione multiplicata, et armis instructa, in pristinæ
propagation multiplied and with-arms equipped into of-former
probitatis audaciam Britannica juventus excrevit. Distinguantur
probity the-boldness the-British youth grew let-be-distinguished
igitur in hunc modum tempora, et concordabit scriptura.
therefore in this manner the-times and will-agree scripture
De Gilda vero, qui adeo in gentem suam acriter invehitur,
about Gildas however who so-much against people his sharply inveighs
dicunt Britones, quod propter fratrem suum Albaniæ
say the-Britons that on-account-of brother his of-Scotland
principem, quem rex Arthurus occiderat, offensus hæc
prince whom king Arthur had-killed offended these-things
scripsit. Unde et libros egregios, quos de gestis Arthuri, et
he-wrote whence also the-books excellent which about the-deeds of-Arthur and
gentis suæ laudibus, multos scripserat, audita fratris sui nece,
of-people his the-praises many he-had-written with-heard of-brother his the-killing
omnes, ut asserunt, in mare projecit. Cujus rei causa, nihil
all as they-assert into the-sea he-threw of-which thing for-the-cause nothing
de tanto principe in scriptis authenticis expressum invenies.
about so-great a-prince in writings authentic expressed will-you-find

De martio conflictu invalido; turpique fuga et illaudabili.
about the-martial conflict weak and-the-shameful flight and unpraiseworthy
In bellico conflictu, primo impetu, acrimonia, voce, vultu
in warlike conflict at-the-first onset in-fierceness in-voice in-face
terribiles effecti, tam clamore horrendo cœlum replente,
terrible made as-much by-shouting horrible the-sky filling
tubarumque prælongarum clangore altisono, quam pernici
and-of-trumpets very-long by-the-blare high-sounding as by-swift
pariter ac præcipiti cursu, crebris quoque jaculorum ictibus,
equally and headlong running by-frequent also of-javelins blows
gens asperrima. Porro si suscepta viriliter passa fuerit
a-people most-fierce moreover if received manfully suffered it-shall-have-been
primo repulsam, confusioni facillime data. Statim ut terga
at-first the-repulse to-confusion most-easily given at-once when their-backs
dederint, solum fugæ præsidio, nullique penitus
they-shall-have-given only of-flight in-the-protection and-in-no at-all
confidunt rebellioni. Quod tamen in martiis conflictibus
trust rebellion which however in martial conflicts
reprehensibile poeta non ignoravit, dicens;
reprehensible the-poet not was-ignorant saying

"Ignavum scelus est tantum fuga;"
"Cowardly a-crime is only flight;"

et alibi,
and elsewhere

"In vitium culpæ ducit fuga, si caret arte."
"Into vice of-fault leads flight, if it-lacks art."

Sicut ergo de Theutonicis legitur, sic et istis idem
as therefore about the-Teutons is-read so also to-these the-same
adaptari potest; "In primo impetu majores sunt viris,
to-be-adapted can in the-first onset greater they-are than-men
in secundo vero minores mulieribus." In fuga nimirum
in the-second however lesser than-women in flight indeed
et confectione crebro revertens, et tanquam Parthicis a
and defeat often returning and as-if with-Parthian from
tergo sagittis fugiendo repugnans, animosa virilitas magis
behind arrows by-fleeing fighting-back a-spirited manliness more
apparet. Et tamen, sicut in bellicis successibus ac victoriis,
appears and nevertheless as in warlike successes and victories
etiam ignavi de virtute gloriantur, sic et in pejori fortuna
even cowards of courage boast so also in worse fortune
vix etiam viris sua virtus conceditur.
scarcely even to-men their courage is-granted
Totum itaque vel fugando vel fugiendo certamen eorum.
all therefore either by-putting-to-flight or by-fleeing the-contest their
De plano namque confligere, deque victoria cominus
on the-plain for to-engage and-about victory at-close-quarters
contendere, diuque viriliter dimicare; cujusmodi conflictum
to-contend and-long manfully to-fight of-which-kind a-conflict
poeta describit, dicens,
the-poet describes saying

"Jam clipeo clipeus, umbone repellitur umbo,
"Now by-shield shield, by-boss is-repelled boss,
Ense minax ensis, pede pes, et cuspide cuspis;"
By-sword threatening sword, by-foot foot, and by-point point;"

gens exiliter armata, et agilitate potius quam robustis
a-people slightly armed and in-agility rather than in-robust
viribus confisa, sustinere non potest. Verumtamen hodie
strength trusting to-sustain not can nevertheless today
confecta, et cruentam in fugam turpiter conversa, cras
defeated and bloody into flight shamefully turned tomorrow
nihilominus expeditionem parat, nec damno nec dedecore
nonetheless an-expedition it-prepares neither by-loss nor by-disgrace
retardata. Et si apertis congressibus, belloque indicto forte
slowed and if in-open encounters and-with-war declared perhaps
non prævalet, insidiis saltem et nocturnis irruptionibus
not it-prevails by-ambushes at-least and nocturnal irruptions
hostem gravat. Unde et, quoniam nec fame nec frigore
the-enemy it-burdens whence also since neither by-hunger nor by-cold
gravata, nec martio labore fatigata, nec casibus adversis
burdened nor by-martial labor wearied nor by-mishaps adverse
in desperationem data, sed post lapsum protinus resurgere
into despair given but after a-fall immediately to-rise
prompta, bellique discrimina denuo subire parata, sicut
ready and-of-war the-hazards anew to-undergo prepared as
prælio facile, sic bello difficile vinci solet.
in-battle easily so in-war with-difficulty to-be-conquered it-is-wont

Unde et Claudianus de gentis ejusdem, vel similis, natura
whence also Claudian about of-people the-same or like the-nature
loqui videtur, dicens;
to-speak seems saying

"Dum pereunt, meminere mali; si corda parumper
"While they-perish, they-remember of-the-hurt; if their-hearts for-a-little
Respirare sinas, nullo tot funera sensu
To-breathe you-allow, with-no so-many deaths feeling
Prætereunt; tantique levis jactura cruoris."
They-pass-by; and-of-so-great light the-loss of-blood."

LAND, GREED, INCEST, AND HOPE

The Welsh seize lands by any title and divide them among brothers, which, with the fostering of princes' sons by different nobles, breeds fratricide; they love dead brothers more than living ones. Frugal in want, they are greedy at others' tables. They marry within forbidden degrees, try wives before marrying, and hold churches by inheritance, as Hildebert found in Brittany. Their sins lost them Troy and Britain, and they now trust Merlin's prophecy to regain the island, but Gerald doubts they have done penance: their growth owes more to the Norman kings' cares abroad than to their strength, for Offa, Æthelfrith, and Harold had crushed them.

De ambitiosa terrarum occupatione; et inter fratres divisione.
about the-ambitious of-lands occupation and among brothers division
Finales autem fossas effodere, terminos transponere, et
the-boundary however ditches to-dig-up the-limits to-move and
metas transcurrere, terrasque modis omnibus vel occupare
the-landmarks to-overrun and-lands by-means all either to-occupy
vel dilatare, gens præ gentibus aliis ambitiosa.
or to-extend a-people beyond peoples other ambitious

Adeo quidem hoc ambitionis vitio communi labe laborant,
so-much indeed by-this of-ambition vice with-common stain they-labor
quod terras quascunque seu precario, seu commodato,
that lands whatever either by-grant-at-will or by-loan
locationis, conductionis, emphyteoseos, vel alio quocunque
of-letting of-hiring of-emphyteusis or by-other any
titulo semel ipsos possidere contigerit, sacramentis etiam
title once them to-possess it-shall-have-happened with-oaths even
vero domino ac proprietario super indemnitate ac securitate
to-the-true lord and proprietor about indemnity and security
palam interpositis, nihilominus tamen easdem tanquam
openly interposed nonetheless however the-same as-if
proprias et hereditarias sibi jure perpetuo vindicabunt.
own and hereditary for-themselves by-right perpetual they-will-claim
Hinc itaque lites in curia, et contentiones; hinc cædes et
hence therefore suits in court and contentions hence slaughters and
incendia; hinc crebra fratricidia.
burnings hence frequent fratricides
Ad hæc etiam, quod fratres inter se pro herili terras
to these-things also that brothers among themselves for lordly lands
portione dividunt et distinguunt, antiquus in hac gente mos
portion divide and distinguish an-ancient in this people custom
obtinuit. Accessit et aliud incommodum grave, quod principes
has-prevailed has-come also another discomfort grave that the-princes
filios suos generosis de terra sua viris diversis diversos
sons their to-noble from land their men different different-sons
alendos tradunt: quorum quilibet alumnum suum post
to-be-reared hand-over of-whom each nursling his after
patris obitum extollere, aliisque præferre, toto conamine
of-the-father the-death to-extol and-to-others to-prefer with-all effort
nititur et machinatur. Per quod graves terris eorum
strives and contrives through which grave in-lands their

toties, nec sine cædibus multis et fratricidiis, seu fratrum
so-often nor without slaughters many and fratricides or of-brothers
exoculationibus crebris, virium quoque omnium et successuum
blindings frequent of-strengths also all and of-successions
experientia difficile sedabiles, emergere solent turbationes.
by-the-experience with-difficulty to-be-allayed to-emerge are-wont disturbances
Unde et inter fratres collactaneos quam naturales longe
whence also among brothers foster than natural far
veriores invenies amicitias.
truer you-will-find friendships
Hoc etiam in his notabile, quod fratres plus mortuos diligunt
this also in these notable that brothers more dead they-love
quam vivos. Vivos enim ad mortem persequuntur; mortuos
than living the-living for to death they-pursue the-dead
autem, et ab aliis interemptos, totis viribus ulciscuntur.
however and by others slain with-all strength they-avenge
Quibus et illa Malachiæ verba vere adaptari posse videntur;
to-whom also those of-Malachi words truly to-be-adapted to-be-able seem
"Periit sanctus de terra, et rectus in hominibus
has-perished the-holy-man from the-earth and the-upright among men
non est. Omnes in sanguine insidiantur: vir fratrem suum
not is all in blood lie-in-wait a-man brother his
venatur ad mortem: malum manuum suarum dicunt bonum."
hunts to death the-evil of-hands their they-call good
De gravi eorum exactione, et immoderantia.
about the-heavy their exaction and immoderation
Ubi autem copiam inveniunt, et potestatem exercere possunt,
where however plenty they-find and power exercise can
exactores improbissimi. Cibo namque, potuque præsertim
exactors most-shameless in-food for and-in-drink especially
inebriante, extra briam omnem poni cupientes, modum et
intoxicating outside measure all to-be-set desiring measure and

modestiam minus observant: quasi cum apostolo dicentes,
moderation less they-observe as-if with the-apostle saying
"Scimus et abundare, scimus et penuriam pati;" sed non
we-know both to-abound we-know and want to-suffer but not
cum eodem, "Omnibus omnia facti," ut omnia lucrifaciant
with the-same to-all all-things made that all may-win
Deo. Sicut enim, ingruente necessitate, nimiæ abstinentiæ
for-God as for with-pressing necessity of-too-great abstinence
sunt et parsimoniæ; sic, post longam esuriem, lupis in
they-are and thrift so after long hunger to-wolves in
hoc et aquilæ similes, quia sicut et illi rapto vivunt
this and to-the-eagle like because as also they by-plunder live
et raro reficiuntur, ad alienam præcipue positi mensam,
and rarely are-fed at another's especially placed table
immoderatam appetunt refectionem.
an-immoderate they-seek refreshment
Sunt igitur in penuria parci, in copia superflui. Suam tamen
they-are therefore in want sparing in plenty excessive his-own however
nemo substantiam, sicut in Anglorum gente videmus, ob
no-one substance as in of-the-English the-people we-see on-account-of
gulæ propriæ crapulæque vitium, in damnum fenebre donat.
of-gullet own and-of-surfeit the-vice into loss usurious gives
In sumptibus autem exhibitionis et honore, volunt omnes
in the-expenses however of-entertainment and honor wish all
omnibus, quoniam
with-all since

"Facinus quos inquinat æquat,"
"Crime whom it-stains it-makes-equal,"

prava consuetudine parificari.
by-depraved custom to-be-made-equal

De incestus crimine; ecclesiarum quoque per successiones
about of-incest the-crime of-churches also through successions
et participes abusione.
and sharers the-abuse
Crimen autem incestus adeo apud omnes, tam minores
the-crime moreover of-incest so-much among all as-much the-lesser
in populo quam etiam majores, enormiter invaluit, quod in
in the-people as also the-greater enormously has-prevailed that in
quarto gradu et quinto passim, in tertio quoque plerumque,
the-fourth degree and fifth everywhere in the-third also mostly
quia non est timor Dei ante oculos eorum, consanguineas
because not is the-fear of-God before eyes their kinswomen
ducere nec verecundantur nec verentur. Ad sedandas quippe
to-marry neither are-they-ashamed nor do-they-fear for allaying indeed
inimicitias, quas inter se toties, quia veloces pedes eorum
enmities which among themselves so-often because swift the-feet their
ad effundendum sanguinem, hostiliter incurrunt, hujuscemodi
for shedding blood hostilely they-incur of-this-kind
per se dispensationibus passim abutuntur. Ob
by themselves dispensations everywhere they-abuse on-account-of
generositatis etiam amorem, quam tantopere cupiunt et
of-noble-birth also the-love which so-greatly they-desire and
affectant, suæ genti se jungentes, alienis omnibus,
aspire-to to-their-own people themselves joining to-strangers all
tanquam sanguine et origine, juxta innatæ præsumptionis
as-if in-blood and origin according-to of-inborn presumption
arrogantiam, longe disparibus, modis omnibus copulari recusant.
the-arrogance far unequal by-means all to-be-joined they-refuse
Matrimoniorum autem onera, nisi expertis antea cohabitatione,
of-marriages however the-burdens unless with-tried before cohabitation
commixtione, morum qualitate, et præcipue fecunditate, subire
intercourse of-character quality and especially fertility to-undergo

non solent. Proinde et puellas, sub certo parentibus pecuniæ
not they-are-wont therefore also girls under certain to-the-parents of-money
pretio, et resipiscendi pœna statuta, non ducere quidem in
price and of-repenting penalty established not to-marry indeed at
primis sed quasi conducere, antiquus in hac gente mos obtinuit.
first but as-if to-hire an-ancient in this people custom has-prevailed
Ecclesiæ vero istorum omnes fere tot personas et
the-churches however of-these all almost as-many persons and
participes habent, quot capitalium virorum in parochia
sharers have as-many-as of-chief men in the-parish
genera fuerint.
families there-shall-have-been
Successive quoque, et post patres, filii ecclesias obtinent,
in-succession also and after their-fathers the-sons the-churches obtain
non elective; hereditate possidentes, et polluentes sanctuarium
not by-election by-inheritance possessing and polluting the-sanctuary
Dei. Quia si prælatus alium eligere et instituere forte
of-God because if a-prelate another to-elect and to-institute perhaps
præsumpserit, in instituentem procul dubio, vel institutum,
shall-have-presumed against the-instituter without doubt or the-instituted
genus injuriam vindicaret.
the-family the-injury would-avenge
De duobus autem his excessibus, incestus videlicet et
about two moreover these excesses of-incest namely and
successionis, radicatis olim in Armorica Britannia, necdum
of-succession rooted once in Armorican Brittany not-yet
eradicatis, scribit in quadam epistola sua Ildebertus
uprooted writes in a-certain letter his Hildebert
Cenomanensis episcopus, dicens se concilio interfuisse
of-Le-Mans bishop saying himself at-the-council to-have-been-present
cum clero Britanniæ, ob has enormitates gentis illius
with the-clergy of-Brittany for these enormities of-people that

extirpandas convocato. Ex quibus constare potest utrumque
to-be-extirpated convoked from which to-be-evident can each
vitium toti huic genti, tam cismarinæ quam transmarinæ,
vice to-all this people as-much on-this-side-of-the-sea as overseas
ab antiquo commune fuisse. Unde et illud psalmistæ
from of-old common to-have-been whence also that of-the-psalmist
David non incompetenter huic populo adaptari posse videtur;
David not unfittingly to-this people to-be-adapted can seems
"Corrupti sunt, et abominabiles facti sunt in studiis suis. Non
corrupted they-are and abominable made they-are in pursuits their not
est qui faciat bonum; non est, usque ad unum. Omnes
is-there one-who may-do good not is-there up-to to one all
declinaverunt: simul inutiles facti sunt; non est qui faciat
have-turned-aside together useless made they-are not is-there one-who may-do
bonum, non est usque ad unum. Sepulchrum patens est
good not is-there up-to to one a-sepulcher open is
guttur eorum; linguis suis dolose agebant; venenum aspidum
throat their with-tongues their deceitfully they-acted the-venom of-asps
sub labiis eorum. Quorum os maledictione et amaritudine
under lips their whose mouth of-cursing and of-bitterness
plenum est: veloces pedes eorum ad effundendum sanguinem.
full is swift the-feet their for shedding blood
Contritio et infelicitas in viis eorum; et viam pacis non
destruction and unhappiness in ways their and the-way of-peace not
cognoverunt. Non est timor Dei ante oculos eorum."
they-have-known not is the-fear of-God before eyes their
Similiter et illud Salomonis; "Fili mi, ne ambules cum eis;
likewise also that of-Solomon son my do-not walk with them
prohibe pedem tuum a semitis eorum. Pedes enim illorum
restrain foot your from paths their the-feet for of-them
ad malum currunt; et festinant ut effundant sanguinem."
to evil run and hasten that they-may-shed blood

De peccatis eorum; et tam Britanniæ quam Trojæ, meritis
about sins their and as-much of-Britain as of-Troy with-merits
urgentibus, amissione.
pressing the-loss
Præterea, peccatis urgentibus, et præcipue detestabili illo et
moreover with-sins pressing and especially detestable that and
nefando Sodomitico, divina ultione tam olim Trojam quam
unspeakable Sodomitic by-divine vengeance as-much once Troy as
postea Britanniam amiserunt. Legitur enim, quia Constantinus
afterward Britain they-lost it-is-read for that Constantine
imperator, occidentali imperio beato Silvestro et successoribus
the-emperor with-the-western empire to-blessed Silvester and successors
suis cum urbe relicto, Trojam reædificare proponens, ibique
his with the-city left Troy to-rebuild proposing and-there
orientalis imperii caput erigere volens, audivit hanc vocem,
of-the-eastern empire the-head to-raise wishing heard this voice
"Vadis reædificare Sodomam;" et statim mutato consilio
you-go to-rebuild Sodom and at-once with-changed counsel
versus Bizantium vela pariter et vexilla convertit; ibique
toward Byzantium the-sails equally and the-standards turned and-there
imperii sui caput constituens, urbem eandem felici suo
of-empire his the-head establishing city the-same with-happy his
nomine decoravit. De Mailgone quoque Britonum rege, aliisque
name adorned about Maelgwn also of-the-Britons king and-others
plurimis, in historia Britonum legitur, eodem vitio laborantibus.
very-many in the-history of-the-Britons it-is-read by-the-same vice laboring
Verumtamen multo jam tempore adeo a Britonibus
nevertheless for-much now time so-much from the-Britons
enormitas illa prorsus evanuit, ut ejus etiam memoria jam
enormity that wholly has-vanished that its even the-memory now
apud eos vix habeatur. Proinde, quasi pœnitentia jam fere
among them scarcely is-had therefore as-if the-penance now almost

peracta, et quoniam numero præter solitum et multitudine,
completed and since in-number beyond the-usual and multitude
viribus et armis, bellorum quoque successibus, et terrarum
in-strength and arms of-wars also in-successes and of-lands
incrementis, nostris plurimum diebus adaucti sunt,
in-increases in-our very-much days increased they-have-been
gloriantur ad invicem, prædicant, et confidentissime jactant,
they-boast to each-other they-proclaim and most-confidently boast
toto quod mirum est in hac spe populo manente,
with-the-whole what wonderful is in this hope people remaining
quoniam in brevi cives in insulam revertentur; et
that in short the-citizens into the-island will-return and
juxta Merlini sui vaticinia, exterorum tam natione
according-to of-Merlin their the-prophecies of-the-foreigners as-much with-the-nation
pereunte quam nuncupatione, antiquo in insula tam
perishing as the-naming in-the-ancient in the-island as-much
nomine quam omine Britones exultabunt.
in-name as in-omen the-Britons will-exult

Sed mihi quidem longe aliter visum est. Quoniam enimvero
but to-me indeed far otherwise seen it-is since indeed

"Luxuriant animi rebus plerumque secundis,
"Grow-wanton minds in-things mostly prosperous,
Nec facile est æqua commoda mente pati;"
Nor easy is-it with-even good-fortune mind to-bear;"

et quia
and because

"Non habet unde suum paupertas pascat amorem;"
"Not has whence its poverty may-feed love;"
"Divitiis alitur luxuriosus amor;"
"By-riches is-nourished wanton love;"

ut paupertati potius in hoc exilio, quo extorres fere facti
that to-poverty rather in this exile in-which banished almost made
sunt a regno, attribuenda sit vitii illius, quo in divitiis
they-are from the-kingdom to-be-attributed is of-vice that which in riches
carere nescierant, illa carentia, quam virtuti. Qualiter etiam
to-be-without they-did-not-know that lack than to-virtue how also
pœnitentiam egisse, nedum peregisse dicentur, quos
penance to-have-done not-to-say to-have-completed will-they-be-said whom
tot peccatis vitiorumque voragini datos, perjuriis puta,
to-so-many sins and-of-vices to-the-abyss given to-perjuries namely
furtis, latrociniis, rapinis, homicidiis et fratricidiis, adulteriis
thefts robberies plunderings homicides and fratricides adulteries
et incestibus, obstinata de die in diem amplius malitia
and incests with-obstinate from day into day more malice
implicitos videmus et irretitos? Adeo quidem ut verbis Osee
entangled we-see and ensnared so-much indeed that the-words of-Hosea

prophetæ in ipsos uti vere quis possit; "Non est veritas,
prophet against them use truly anyone could not is truth
et non est misericordia, et non est scientia Domini in
and not is mercy and not is knowledge of-the-Lord in
eis. Maledictum, et mendacium, et homicidium, et furtum,
them cursing and lying and homicide and theft
et adulterium inundaverunt; et sanguis sanguinem tetigit.
and adultery have-overflowed and blood blood has-touched
Propter quod lugebit terra eorum, et infirmabitur omnis
on-account-of which will-mourn land their and will-be-weakened every-one
qui habitat in ea." "Et populus non intelligens vapulabit."
who dwells in it and the-people not understanding will-be-beaten
Alia quoque, de quibus jactant, operosis regum
other-things also of which they-boast to-the-laborious of-the-kings
Normannorum curis, quibus Francorum superbiæ in
Norman cares with-which of-the-French to-the-pride in
transmarinis tantopere indulgent, longe verius quam vel
overseas-parts so-much they-indulge far more-truly than either
eorum viribus magnis vel potentiis sunt assignanda.
to-their strength great or powers are to-be-assigned
Hujus autem rei si certitudinem quæris, respice reges
of-this however thing if the-certainty you-seek look-at the-kings
Anglicos Normannis priores. Qui, quoniam hac solum
English than-the-Normans earlier who since with-this only
insula Britannica contenti fuerant, et tantum his
island British content they-had-been and only to-these
debellandis operam dabant, eosdem pene penitus sæpe
to-be-subdued effort gave them almost wholly often
deleverant. Sicut rex Offa suo in tempore; qui et fossa
they-had-destroyed as king Offa in-his in time who also with-a-ditch
finali, in longum extensa, Britones ab Anglis exclusit;
boundary in length extended the-Britons from the-English shut-out

Ethelfridus quoque, qui nobilem Legionum urbem destruxit,
Æthelfrith also who the-noble of-the-Legions city destroyed
et egregii illius Bangornensis monasterii monachos, in
and of-the-excellent that of-Bangor monastery the-monks to
auxilium orando vocatos, gladiis interemit. Et sicut longe
help by-praying called with-swords killed and as far
plenius Haroldus ultimus: qui, pedes ipse, cumque pedestri
more-fully Harold the-last who on-foot himself and-with on-foot
turba, et levibus armis, victuque patriæ conformi, tam
band and light arms and-with-food to-the-country conformable so
valide totam Kambriam et circuivit, et transpenetravit, ut
strongly all Wales both went-around and pierced that
in eadem fere mingentem ad parietem non reliquerit.
in the-same almost one-pissing against the-wall not he-left
In cujus victoriæ signum, perpetuamque memoriam, lapides in
in of-which victory the-sign and-perpetual memory stones in
Wallia more antiquo in titulum erectos, locis plerisque
Wales in-the-manner ancient into a-title erected in-places very-many
in quibus victor extiterat, literas hujusmodi insculptas habentes
in which victor he-had-been letters of-this-kind carved having
plurimos invenies, HIC FUIT VICTOR HAROLDUS.
very-many you-will-find here was victor Harold
Ob has igitur tam cruentas tamque recentes Anglorum
on-account-of these therefore so bloody and-so recent of-the-English
de hac gente victorias, primi tres Normannorum reges in
over this people victories the-first three of-the-Normans kings in
tanta subjectione tamque pacificam suis diebus Walliam
so-great subjection and-so peaceful in-their days Wales
tenuere. Quorum temporibus gens hæc in numero plurimum
held of-whom in-the-times people this in number very-much
adaucta, armis etiam et equis a Normannis et Anglis, quos
increased in-arms also and horses by the-Normans and English whom

et curiam sequendo et obsides dando jam frequentaverant,
both the-court by-following and hostages by-giving already they-had-frequented
edocta paulatim et assueta, trium sequentium tempore,
taught little-by-little and accustomed of-the-three following in-the-time
propter majores, ut diximus, quibus transmarinas ad partes
on-account-of the-greater as we-have-said by-which overseas to parts
tenebantur curas, cervicem erigentes, et terras occupantes,
they-were-held cares their-neck raising and lands occupying
pristinum ferre jugum omnino respuerunt.
the-former to-bear yoke wholly they-refused

HOW WALES MAY BE CONQUERED

A prince who would conquer the Welsh must give the task at least a year, divide them by gifts, stock castles in autumn, cut off their iron, cloth, salt, and grain by land and sea, and in late winter send strong light-armed foot into their woods, with knights behind and fresh troops in relays, since his paid soldiers can be replaced and theirs cannot. He should heed marcher counsel and use marcher-bred troops, for French warfare does not suit Welsh woods and marshes, where light armor serves best. The towns along the Severn, Shropshire, and Chester should be granted liberties and kept in arms, and lost revenue would be repaid by peace.

Qualiter gens ista sit expugnanda.
how people this is to-be-conquered
Porro qui gentem hanc subjugare, pacificamque tenere
moreover who people this to-subjugate and-peaceful to-hold
voluerit, hac arte utatur. In primis operam ad minus
shall-wish this art let-him-use in the-first effort at least
annuam, operosamque curam et assiduam, huic adhibere
yearly and-laborious care and assiduous to-this to-apply
negotio princeps in animo fixum habeat. Gens etenim, quæ
business the-prince in mind fixed let-him-have a-people for which

nec in campo contra exercitum armatum consertis viribus
neither in the-field against an-army armed with-joined forces
aperte congreditur, nec in castellis obsidionem exspectat, non
openly engages nor in castles a-siege awaits not
impetu primo, sed per moram diligentem et vacationem est
by-onset the-first but through delay diligent and leisure is
expugnanda. Deinde vires eorum dividat, et quosdam ex
to-be-conquered then the-forces their let-him-divide and some of
ipsis ad alios confundendos, quia se invicem odio et
them for others to-be-confounded because themselves mutually with-hatred and
invidia persequi solent, donariis alliciat tam præmissis
envy to-pursue they-are-wont with-gifts let-him-entice as-much given-beforehand
quam promissis. Et sic, autumnali in tempore, non solum
as promised and so in-autumn in time not only
marchia, sed etiam terra interior locis idoneis, castellis,
the-march but also the-land inner in-places suitable with-castles
alimentis copiose refertis et familiis bonis, bene muniatur.
with-provisions copiously stuffed and with-households good well let-be-fortified
Interim autem cuncta mercimonia ferri, panni, salis, et bladi,
meanwhile moreover all trade of-iron of-cloth of-salt and of-corn
quibus ab Anglicana copia sustentari solent, arctius
by-which from the-English plenty to-be-sustained they-are-wont more-strictly
eis inhibeantur. Naves quoque, validis plenæ viris, ne
to-them let-be-forbidden ships also with-strong full men lest
per Hybernicum vel Sabrinum mare eis prædicta navigio
by the-Irish or Severn sea to-them the-aforesaid by-ship
deferri possint, aliquot ad tutelam adhibeantur: quibus et
to-be-brought could some for protection let-be-applied by-which both
ab hostibus arceantur, et suis victualia deferantur.
from the-enemies they-may-be-kept and to-their-own-men provisions be-brought

Subsequenter autem, hieme ingruente majore, vel potius
afterward moreover with-winter pressing greater or rather
ejusdem fine, Martio videlicet et Februario, cum et
of-the-same at-the-end in-March namely and February when both
foliis silvæ, et pascuis montana caruerint, prædis
of-leaves the-woods and of-pastures the-mountains shall-have-been-bare with-plunder
abductis, ipsisque jam per familias et crebros undique
carried-off and-themselves already by households and frequent on-all-sides
castrensium impetus plurimum afflictis, cum exercitu pedestri
of-the-garrisons attacks very-much afflicted with an-army on-foot
valido, mediocriter et non ad onus armato, usque ad
strong moderately and not for burden armed up-to to
eorum latibula, silvarumque condensa, et arborum confraga,
their hiding-places and-of-the-woods thickets and of-trees tangles
viriliter transpenetretur. Semper autem pedestribus turmis
manfully let-them-be-penetrated always moreover to-the-foot troops
e vestigio sequentes, ad fortitudinem et refugium, milites
from the-track following for strength and refuge knights
aliquot adjiciantur. Et sic, per crebras confligentium
some let-be-added and so through frequent of-the-fighters
mutationes, ut fatigatis semper turmis novæ succedant,
changes so-that to-the-wearied always troops new may-succeed
per cædes quoque et strages multas, si casus obtulerit,
through slaughters also and carnages many if chance shall-have-offered
expugnentur. Non enim his sine, nec absque periculo
let-them-be-conquered not for these without nor without danger
multorum et damno, gens poterit inimica debellari.
of-many and loss the-people will-be-able hostile to-be-subdued
Sed licet hodie de Anglorum exercitu stipendiarii multi
but though today from of-the-English the-army mercenaries many
ceciderint, cras nihilominus ad eadem discrimina totidem vel
have-fallen tomorrow nonetheless for the-same hazards as-many or

plures moneta dabit. De Kambrensibus autem, quoniam nec
more money will-give of the-Welsh however since neither
alienigenas nec stipendiarios habent, quicunque ceciderint,
foreigners nor mercenaries they-have whoever shall-have-fallen
damnum eis inpræsentiarum irreparabile fiet.
the-loss to-them for-the-present irreparable will-become
In hoc itaque negotio, sicut artifici credendum est in sua
in this therefore business as to-the-craftsman to-be-believed it-is in his
facultate, sic horum præcipue standum est consilio, qui, circa
skill so of-these especially to-be-stood it-is by-the-counsel who around
similia patriæ negotia conversati diutius et usitati, mores
like of-the-country affairs having-dealt long and practiced the-manners
gentis et modos agnoscunt; quorumque magnopere refert,
of-the-people and ways recognize and-to-whom greatly it-matters
ut gens inimica, quacum ex crebris belli diutini conflictibus
that the-people hostile with-which from frequent of-war long conflicts
hostilitatem plurimam et odium implacabile contraxerunt,
hostility very-much and hatred implacable they-have-contracted
eorundem opera vel debilitari possit vel deleri.
by-their work either to-be-weakened can or to-be-destroyed
Felices dixerim Kambriæ fines, quos Anglorum gens
happy I-would-call of-Wales the-bounds which of-the-English the-people
inhabitat, si reges eorundem, in partibus illis gubernandis,
inhabits if the-kings of-the-same in parts those to-be-governed
et propulsandis inimicæ gentis injuriis, plus marchionum
and to-be-repelled of-the-hostile people the-injuries more of-the-marchers
et baronum patriæ quam Andegavorum et Normannorum
and barons of-the-country than of-the-Angevins and Normans
consiliis et dispositionibus olim usi fuissent.
the-counsels and dispositions once used had

In hac autem expeditione, sicut et in alia qualibet sive
in this however expedition as also in another any either
Hybernica sive Kambrica, gens in Kambriæ marchia nutrita,
Irish or Welsh a-people in of-Wales the-march nursed
gens hostilibus partium illarum conflictibus exercitata,
a-people in-hostile of-parts those conflicts trained
competentissima; puta, formatis a convictu moribus, audax
most-fitting namely with-formed from living-together manners bold
et expedita; cum alea Martis exegerit, nunc equis
and unencumbered when the-die of-Mars shall-have-demanded now on-horse
habilis, nunc pedibus agilis inventa; cibo potuque non
able now on-foot agile found in-food and-in-drink not
delicata, tam Cerere quam Baccho, causis urgentibus,
delicate as-much from-Ceres as from-Bacchus with-causes pressing
abstinere parata. Talibus tam Hybernia quam Kambria
to-abstain ready by-such as-much Ireland as Wales
viris initium habuit expugnationis: talibus quoque, vel nullis,
men beginning had of-conquest by-such also or by-none
consummabilis finem habitura conquisitionis. Flandrenses
to-be-consummated an-end about-to-have of-acquisition the-Flemings
quippe, Normanni, Coterelli, et Bragmanni, quanquam suis
indeed Normans Coterels and Brabanters although in-their
in terris milites egregii sint, et armis instructissimi, Gallica
in lands knights excellent they-be and with-arms most-equipped French
tamen militia multum a Kambrica, sicut ab Hybernica,
nevertheless soldiery much from the-Welsh as from the-Irish
distare dignoscitur. Ibi namque plana petuntur, hic aspera;
to-differ is-known there for plains are-sought here rough-places
ibi campestria, hic silvestria; ibi arma honori, hic oneri;
there fields here woods there arms for-honor here for-burden

ibi stabilitate vincitur, hic agilitate; ibi capiuntur milites,
there by-stability one-conquers here by-agility there are-captured knights
hic decapitantur; ibi redimuntur, hic perimuntur.
here are-beheaded there are-ransomed here are-killed
Sicut igitur, ubi militares acies de plano conveniunt, gravis
as therefore where military battle-lines on the-plain meet heavy
illa et multiplex armatura, tam linea scilicet quam ferrea,
that and manifold armor as-much of-linen namely as of-iron
milites egregie munit et ornat, sic, ubi solum in arcto
knights excellently fortifies and adorns so where only in a-narrow-place
confligitur, seu loco silvestri seu palustri, ubi pedites
one-fights either in-a-place wooded or marshy where foot-soldiers
potius quam equites locum habent, longe levis armatura
rather than horsemen place have far light armor
præstantior. Contra inermes namque viros, quibus semper in
more-excellent against unarmed for men for-whom always in
primo fere impetu vel parta est statim vel perdita victoria,
the-first almost onset either won is at-once or lost victory
expeditiora satis arma sufficiunt; ubi fugitivam et agilem
more-unencumbered enough arms suffice where the-fleeing and agile
per arcta vel aspera gentem sola necesse est gravi
through narrows or rough-places people alone necessary it-is by-heavy
quadam et armata mediocriter agilitate confundi. Cum illa
a-certain and armed moderately agility to-be-confounded with that
nimirum armatura multiplici, sellisque recurvis et altis,
indeed armor manifold and-with-saddles curved and high
difficile descenditur, difficilius ascenditur, difficillime,
with-difficulty it-is-dismounted with-more-difficulty it-is-mounted with-most-difficulty
cum opus est, pedibus itur.
when need is on-foot one-goes

Ut igitur
so therefore

"Singula quæque locum teneant sortita decenter,"
"Each every place let-hold allotted fittingly,"

contra graves et armatos, solumque virium robore et
against heavy and armed and-only of-strength in-the-vigor and
armorum ope confisos, de plano dimicare victoriamque
of-arms in-the-help trusting on the-plain to-fight and-victory
vi obtinere contendentes, armatis quoque viris et viribus
by-force to-obtain striving armed also men and strength
opus ibi esse proculdubio protestamur: contra leves autem et
need there to-be without-doubt we-protest against light however and
agiles, et aspera petentes, levis armaturæ viri, taliumque
agile and rough-places seeking of-light armor men and-of-such
præsertim exercitati congressibus, adhibendi.
especially trained in-encounters are-to-be-applied
Urbes autem et castra quæ Sabrina perlabitur, totaque
the-cities however and castles which the-Severn flows-through and-the-whole
terra ab occidua ejusdem parte versus Walliam ab Anglis
land on the-western of-it side toward Wales by the-English
occupata, necnon et Slopesburiæ provincia, et Cestria tota,
occupied and-also also of-Shrewsbury the-province and Chester whole
communiæ viribus et armis, vel alio quovis speciali
of-commune by-strength and arms or by-other any special
libertatis honore, provida principis largitione lætentur.
of-liberty honor by-provident of-the-prince generosity let-them-rejoice
Ubi et annis singulis, per viros probos et discretos ad
where also in-years each by men upright and discreet for
hoc deputatos, qui patriæ tutelæ et defensioni,
this deputed who of-the-country to-the-protection and defense

non rapinis intendant et destructioni, bellici apparatus,
not to-plunderings let-them-attend and destruction of-warlike equipment
armorum scilicet et equorum, visio fiat. Barones
of-arms namely and of-horses an-inspection let-be-made the-barons
quoque partium illarum super unanimi gentis hostilis
also of-parts those about the-unanimous of-the-people hostile
expugnatione sacramentis arctissime constringantur: quatinus
conquest by-oaths most-strictly let-be-bound so-that
ibidem tam militibus et civibus, quam servientibus populoque
there as-much with-knights and citizens as with-servants and-the-people
toto, armis instructis et assuetis, et libertati in hunc modum
whole with-arms equipped and accustomed both to-liberty in this manner
libertas opponatur, et per superbiam superbia retundatur.
liberty may-be-opposed and by pride pride may-be-blunted
Kambri nimirum, quia nec laboriosis oneribus opprimuntur,
the-Welsh indeed because neither by-laborious burdens are-oppressed
nec servilibus operibus atteruntur, nec dominorum exactionibus
nor by-servile works are-worn nor of-lords by-exactions
ullis molestantur, hinc eis ad propulsandas injurias cervix
any are-troubled hence to-them for repelling injuries the-neck
erecta, hinc ad patriæ tutelam audacia tanta, hinc armis
erect hence for of-the-country the-protection boldness so-great hence for-arms
semper et rebellionibus gens parata. Nihil est etenim quod
always and rebellions a-people ready nothing is for which
adeo corda virorum ad probitatem excitet, erigat, et invitet,
so the-hearts of-men to probity rouses raises and invites
ut libertatis hilaritas; nihil adeo deprimit et deterret, ut
as of-liberty the-cheerfulness nothing so depresses and deters as
servitutis oppressio.
of-servitude the-oppression

Poterit etiam hæc regni particula, armis et animositate
will-be-able also this of-the-kingdom little-part with-arms and courage
munita, non solum in finibus istis, verum et alibi, in
fortified not only in bounds these but also elsewhere in
necessitatis articulis, tam remotis partibus quam propinquis,
of-necessity the-crises as-much in-remote parts as near
egregie principi militare.
excellently for-the-prince to-soldier
Et si forte a provinciis istis, annuis vectigalibus fiscali
and if perhaps from provinces these in-yearly revenues to-the-fiscal
minus ærario proveniat, regni pace et regis honore
less treasury come of-the-kingdom by-the-peace and of-the-king the-honor
plene et abunde defectus iste compensetur. Præsertim etiam
fully and abundantly defect that let-be-compensated especially also
cum expeditionis unius ad Walliarum partes gravis admodum
since of-expedition one to of-Wales the-parts heavy very
et periculosa sumptuositas multorum soleat annorum fiscales
and dangerous costliness of-many is-wont of-years the-fiscal
finium illorum reditus æquiparare.
of-bounds those revenues to-equal

Conquered Wales should be ruled by firm men who honor the Welsh in peace and punish revolt at once, building castles, widening forest roads, and keeping good men, and trusting them with neither life nor castle, for their treachery is more to be feared than their war. A prince sparing blood can blockade them and set them against each other. Three things destroy the Welsh: divided inheritance, fosterage, and refusal of one ruler. Turning to counsel the Welsh, Gerald says that armed in the French manner and united under one good prince they could hardly be conquered, and an old man of Pencader told Henry II that only God's anger would destroy them.

Qualiter, expugnata, sit gubernanda.
how conquered it-is to-be-governed

Gens igitur hæc, sicut per industriam prædicto tenore est
people therefore this as through industry in-the-aforesaid tenor is

expugnanda, sic, expugnata, moderato in hunc modum regimine
to-be-conquered so conquered by-moderate in this manner rule

est gubernanda. Constantis et vindicis animi viris cura
is to-be-governed of-constant and avenging mind to-men the-care

regiminis committatur: qui et pacis tempore, dum legibus
of-rule let-be-committed who both of-peace in-the-time while the-laws

obtemperat, et servire non recusat, ipsam interim stabili
it-obeys and to-serve not refuses it meanwhile with-stable

conventione deliniat, et honore præveniat. Gens etenim hæc,
agreement may-soothe and with-honor may-anticipate a-people for this

sicut et gens barbara quævis, quanquam honorem nesciant,
as also a-people barbarous any although honor they-know-not

honorari tamen super omnia quærunt; et veritatem, quam
to-be-honored nevertheless above all-things they-seek and truth which

in se non habent, in aliis approbant et venerantur.
in themselves not they-have in others they-approve and venerate

Cum autem innatæ levitatis indicio a pace resilire
when however of-inborn levity by-the-sign from peace to-spring-back
præsumpserint, dissimulata prorsus mansuetudine, continuo
they-shall-have-presumed with-dissembled wholly mildness immediately
vitium vindicta sequatur. Cum iterum ad pacem reversi
the-vice vengeance let-follow when again to peace returned
fuerint, condigna delicti satisfactione secuta, quoniam
they-shall-have-been with-worthy of-the-offense satisfaction following since

"Post inimicitias iræ meminisse malorum est,"
"After enmities of-anger to-remember of-evil-men it-is,"

quamdiu fideliter steterint dissimulata prorsus injuria
as-long-as faithfully they-shall-have-stood with-dissembled wholly injury
pristina, [statim] tam securitate gaudeant quam honore:
the-former at-once as-much in-security let-them-rejoice as in-honor
quatinus tam ad obsequendum, quam ad pacis bona
so-that as-much to obeying as to of-peace the-goods
sequendum, et præmium invitet, et a temerariis ausibus
following both reward may-invite and from rash daring
secutura semper pœna deterreat.
about-to-follow always the-penalty may-deter
Porro, qui ista confundunt, in delictis deferendo, in obsequiis
moreover who these-things confound in offenses by-deferring in services
deprimendo, in guerra blandiendo, in pace deprædando, imbelles
by-oppressing in war by-flattering in peace by-plundering the-unwarlike
spoliando, rebelles venerando, sicut plerosque vidimus, et
by-despoiling the-rebels by-revering as most we-have-seen and
finium illorum cura commissa abusos novimus, hi, confusa
of-bounds those with-the-care entrusted abusing we-know these confused
sub se cuncta reddentes, demum et ipsi confunduntur.
under themselves all-things rendering at-last also themselves are-confounded

Præterea, quia minus ea lædere solent quæ prævidentur,
moreover because less those-things to-harm are-wont which are-foreseen
et quia felix est illa civitas quæ in pace bellum cogitat,
and because happy is that city which in peace war thinks-of
pacis tempore contra imminentia Martis incommoda, tam
of-peace in-the-time against the-impending of-Mars troubles as-much
castrorum constructione, quam silvestrium viarum ampliatione,
of-castles by-the-construction as of-woodland roads by-the-widening
necnon et familiæ bonæ retentione, vir bonus et prudens
and-also also of-household good by-the-retaining a-man good and prudent
præmuniatur et præparetur. Qui enim in pace servantur et
should-be-forearmed and prepared who for in peace are-kept and
sustentantur, hi longe promptius, securius, atque fidelius,
sustained these far more-promptly more-securely and more-faithfully
urgentibus incommodis, ad bella vocantur. Et quoniam
with-pressing troubles to wars are-called and since
semper insidias sub amicitiæ fuco gens vi subacta
always ambushes under of-friendship the-dye a-people by-force subdued
molitur, princeps aut præfectus nunquam eorum caput suum
contrives the-prince or prefect never of-them head his
aut castrum fidei donet. Quoniam enimvero, insignium
or castle to-the-faith should-give since indeed of-distinguished
virorum exemplis, quorum quosdam crudeliter extinctos,
men by-the-examples of-whom some cruelly extinguished
alios autem castris et honore privatos, per talem incuriam
others however of-castles and honor deprived through such carelessness
vidimus et negligentiam; nationis enim subdolæ longe
we-have-seen and negligence of-a-nation for subtle far
fortius timenda est ars quam Mars, pax quam fax, mel quam
more-strongly to-be-feared is art than Mars peace than torch honey than
fel, malitia quam militia, proditio quam expeditio, amicitia
gall malice than soldiery treachery than expedition friendship

præfucata quam inimicitia despicata; expedit itaque viro
dyed-over than enmity despised it-is-expedient therefore for-a-man
prudenti ac provido alienis in malis fugienda contemplari.
prudent and provident in-others' in ills things-to-be-fled to-contemplate
Indemnis etenim est castigatio, quam prædocent exemplaria:
harmless for is the-chastening which teach-beforehand examples
quoniam, ut ait Enodius, "Ruina præcedentium posteros
since as says Ennodius the-ruin of-predecessors posterity
docet, et cautio est semper in reliquum lapsus anterior."
teaches and caution is always for the-rest the-fall former
Citra conflictum autem et sanguinis effusionem tanta
without conflict however and of-blood shedding so-great
expedire negotia pius princeps si præelegerit, marchia
to-dispatch affairs a-pious prince if he-shall-have-preferred with-the-march
ut diximus per omnia latera bene munita, commerciis quoque
as we-have-said on all sides well fortified with-trade also
per mare per terras districte prohibitis, quidam Kambrensium
by sea by lands strictly forbidden some of-the-Welsh
in alios, stipendiis datis, terrisque aliorum in alios
against others with-pay given and-with-the-lands of-some on others
collatis, letalibus exitiis excitentur; ut sic demum tam
conferred by-deadly destructions let-them-be-roused so-that thus at-last as-much
fame et inedia, cunctorumque fere ingruente penuria
by-hunger and want and-of-all almost with-pressing scarcity
necessariorum, quam cædibus inter se creberrimis, et
of-necessities as by-slaughters among themselves most-frequent and
inimicitiis implacabilibus demum afflicti, infra non longum
enmities implacable at-last afflicted within not long
tempus ad deditionem proculdubio compellantur.
time to surrender without-doubt they-may-be-compelled

Tria sunt enim quæ gentem hanc destruunt, et fructuosæ
three there-are for which people this destroy and of-fruitful
propaginis gaudia percipere non permittunt. Quod paternam
offspring the-joys to-perceive not permit that the-paternal
hereditatem filii inter se, tam naturales quam legitimi,
inheritance the-sons among themselves as-much natural as legitimate
herili portione dividere contendunt: propter quod et
in-lordly portion to-divide strive on-account-of which also
fratricidia, ut diximus, crebra contingunt. Et quod fortibus
fratricides as we-have-said frequent happen and that to-strong
et generosis provinciæ viris filii traduntur alendi: quorum
and noble of-the-province men sons are-handed-over to-be-reared of-whom
quilibet, defunctis patribus, suum modis omnibus, unde cædes
each with-dead fathers his-own by-means all whence slaughters
et incendia tot, patriæque destructio tota, anteponere
and burnings so-many and-of-the-country destruction whole to-prefer
conatur alumnum. Et hoc præcipue, quod, aliarum gentium
tries nursling and this especially that of-other peoples
more quæ feliciter vivunt, unius regis consilio, unique
in-the-manner which happily live of-one king to-the-counsel and-to-one
subjici dominio, obstinata pariter et elata mente recusant.
to-be-subject lordship with-obstinate equally and haughty mind they-refuse
Qualiter eadem resistere valeat, et rebellare.
how the-same to-resist may-be-able and to-rebel
Sed quoniam pro Anglis hactenus diligenter admodum et
but since for the-English thus-far diligently very and
exquisite disseruimus, sicut autem ex utraque gente originem
exquisitely we-have-discoursed as however from each people origin
duximus, sic æque pro utraque disputandum ratio dictat, ad
we-have-drawn so equally for each to-be-argued reason dictates to

Kambros denuo, in calce libelli, stilum vertamus, eosque
the-Welsh anew at the-heel of-the-little-book the-pen let-us-turn and-them
de arte rebellandi breviter sed tamen efficaciter instruamus.
about the-art of-rebelling briefly but nevertheless effectively let-us-instruct
Si ergo armatura Gallica Kambri plenius et communius
if therefore the-armor French the-Welsh more-fully and more-commonly
uti consueverint, stabilique magis pugnæ quam agilitati
to-use shall-have-grown-accustomed and-on-steady more battle than agility
dimicando confisi fuerint; item si principes eorum unanimes
in-fighting relied shall-have likewise if princes their unanimous
in defensione et inseparabiles esse voluerint; vel potius, si
in defense and inseparable to-be shall-have-wished or rather if
uno gauderent principe, et illo bono; in terra tam hispida,
by-one they-rejoiced prince and that good in a-land so rough
tam munitissima, gens prævalida vinci ad plenum
so most-fortified a-people very-strong to-be-conquered to the-full
vix valeret.
scarcely would-be-able
Si igitur inseparabiles fieri vellent, et insuperabiles valde
if therefore inseparable to-become they-wished also insuperable greatly
fieri possent; præcipue tribus adjuti, terra scilicet in
to-become they-could especially by-three helped by-a-land namely in
se munita, parvoque vivere gente tam consueta quam
itself fortified and-on-little to-live with-a-people as-much accustomed as
contenta, et plebe tota sicut et nobilibus armis
content and with-the-common-people whole as also the-nobles with-arms
instructa.
equipped
Præsertim etiam cum Angli pro cupiditate certent, Kambri
especially also since the-English for greed strive the-Welsh
pro libertate; illi de lucro captando, isti de damno
for liberty those about gain to-be-taken these about loss

vitando; stipendiarii eorum pro pecunia, isti pro patria;
to-be-avoided the-mercenaries of-those for money these for their-country
illi, inquam, ut hos ab insula prorsus expellant, totamque
those I-say that these from the-island wholly they-may-expel and-the-whole
terræ faciem simul obtineant, isti vero ut qui universo
of-the-land face together obtain these however that who over-the-whole
tamdiu regno soli præsidebant, in hoc saltem ejusdem angulo
so-long kingdom alone presided in this at-least of-it corner
pessimo, silvis, montibus, et paludibus conserto delitescant,
the-worst with-woods mountains and marshes made-up they-may-lie-hid
et quasi pro delictis huc relegati, præscriptisque divitiarum
and as-if for offenses hither banished and-for-the-aforesaid of-riches
excessibus, usque ad præfinitum tempus in paupertate et
excesses up-to to an-appointed time in poverty and
inedia pœnitentiam agant.
want penance may-do
Plurimam quippe animositatis scintillam exprimere, plurimam
very-great indeed of-courage a-spark to-strike very-great
rebellionis audaciam imprimere potest continua pristinæ
of-rebellion boldness to-impress can the-continual of-former
nobilitatis memoria; et non solum Trojanæ generositatis,
nobility memory and not only of-Trojan noble-birth
verum etiam regni Britannici tantæ et tam diuturnæ
but also of-the-kingdom British of-so-great and so long-lasting
regiæ majestatis recordatio.
royal majesty the-recollection
Unde et Anglorum rege Henrico secundo in australem
whence also of-the-English with-the-king Henry second into southern
Walliam apud Pencadeyr, quod Caput cathedræ sonat, nostris
Wales at Pencader which the-Head of-the-chair sounds in-our
diebus in hanc gentem expeditionem agente, consultus
days against this people an-expedition making consulted

ab eo senior quidam populi ejusdem, qui contra alios
by him an-old-man certain of-people the-same who against the-others
tamen vitio gentis eidem adhæserat, super exercitu regio,
however by-the-vice of-the-people to-him had-adhered about the-army royal
populoque rebelli si resistere posset, quid ei videretur,
and-the-people rebellious if to-resist it-could what to-him seemed
bellicique eventus suam ut ei declararet opinionem,
and-of-the-warlike event his that to-him he-might-declare opinion
respondit; "Gravari quidem, plurimaque ex parte destrui
answered to-be-burdened indeed and-in-great by part to-be-destroyed
et debilitari vestris, rex, aliorumque viribus, nunc ut
and to-be-weakened by-your king and-of-others the-strength now as
olim et pluries, meritorum exigentia, gens ista valebit. Ad
once and often of-its-merits by-the-demand people this will-be-able to
plenum autem, propter hominis iram, nisi et ira Dei
the-full however on-account-of of-man the-anger unless also the-anger of-God
concurrerit, non delebitur. Nec alia, ut arbitror, gens
shall-have-concurred not it-will-be-destroyed nor other as I-think people
quam hæc Kambrica, aliave lingua, in die districti examinis
than this Welsh or-other tongue on the-day of-the-strict examination
coram Judice supremo, quicquid de ampliori contingat, pro
before the-Judge supreme whatever about the-greater may-happen for
hoc terrarum angulo respondebit."
this of-the-earth corner will-answer